



Indira Gandhi  
National Open University  
School of Computer and  
Information Sciences

Block

# 1

## INTRODUCTION TO OPERATING SYSTEMS AND PROCESS MANAGEMENT

### UNIT 1

#### Operating System: An Overview

7

### UNIT 2

#### Processes

29

### UNIT 3

#### Interprocess Communication and Synchronization

57

### UNIT 4

#### Deadlocks

81

## PROGRAMME/COURSE DESIGN COMMITTEE

Prof. Sanjeev K. Aggarwal, IIT, Kanpur	Shri Sanjeev Thakur Amity School of Computer Sciences, Noida
Shri Navneet Aggarwal Trinity BPM, New Delhi	Shri Amrit Nath Thulal Amity School of Engineering and Technology New Delhi
Prof. M. Balakrishnan, IIT, Delhi	Dr. Om Vikas(Retd), Ex-Sr. Director, Ministry of ICT, Delhi
Prof. Pandurangan, C., IIT, Madras	Shri Vishwakarma Amity School of Engineering and Technology New Delhi
Ms. Bhoomi Gupta Sirifort College of Computer and Technology Management, New Delhi	Prof (Retd) S. K. Gupta, IIT Delhi
Shri Manoj Kumar Gupta Keane India Ltd., New Delhi	Prof. T.V. Vijaya Kumar, Dean, SC&SS, JNU, New Delhi
Shri Sachin Gupta Delhi Institute of Advanced Studies, New Delhi	Prof. Ela Kumar, Dean, CSE, IGDTUW, Delhi
Prof. Harish Karnick, IIT, Kanpur	Prof. Gayatri Dhingra, GVMITM, Sonipat
Shri Anil Kumar Amity School of Engineering and Technology New Delhi	Sh. Milind Mahajani Vice President, Impressico Business Solutions, Noida, UP
Dr. Kapil Kumar, IIMT, Meerut	Prof. V. V. Subrahmanyam, Director SOCIS, New Delhi
Dr. Sachin Kumar, CCS University, Meerut	Prof. P. V. Suresh, SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi
Ms. Manjulata Amity School of Engineering and Technology New Delhi	Dr. Shashi Bhushan SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi
Shri Ajay Rana Amity School of Computer Sciences, Noida	Shri Akshay Kumar, Associate Prof. SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi
Dr. Divya Sharma Bharati College, Delhi	Shri M. P. Mishra, Associate Prof. SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi
Shri Neeraj Sharma Harvard Institute of Management Technology Noida	Dr. Sudhansh Sharma, Asst. Prof SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi

## BLOCK PREPARATION TEAM

Prof. D.P. Vidyarthi ( <i>Content Editor</i> ) Jawaharlal Nehru University New Delhi	Shri Sachin Gupta Delhi Institute of Advanced Studies New Delhi
Shri Akash Bajpai Dept. of Technical Education Uttar Pradesh	Prof. V. V. Subrahmanyam SOCIS, IGNOU
Shri Kapil Kumar IIMT, Meerut	Dr. Nandini Sahu & Ms. Malathy. A School of Humanities IGNOU
	} ( <i>Language Editors</i> )

**Course Coordinator:** Prof. V. V. Subrahmanyam

(The Units of Block-1, Unit 1 to Unit-4 were adapted from MCS-041 Operating Systems)

## PRINT PRODUCTION

**Mr. Tilak Raj**  
Asst. Registrar (Pub.)  
MPDD, IGNOU, New Delhi

**Mr. Yashpal**  
Section Officer (Pub.)  
MPDD, IGNOU, New Delhi

March, 2021

© Indira Gandhi National Open University, 2021

All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced in any form, by mimeograph or any other means, without permission in writing from the Indira Gandhi National Open University.

Further information on the Indira Gandhi National Open University courses may be obtained from the University's office at Maidan Garhi, New Delhi-110068.

Printed and published on behalf of the Indira Gandhi National Open University, New Delhi by the MPDD, IGNOU, New Delhi

Laser Typesetting : Akashdeep Printers, 20-Ansari Road, Daryaganj, New Delhi-110002

## COURSE INTRODUCTION

---

The most fundamental of all system programs is the operating system, which controls computer's resources and provides the base on which application programs may be written. A modern operating system manages one or more processors, processes, files, a hierarchy of memory, clocks, disks, network interfaces, I/O devices, protection and security. The operating system's purpose is to provide an orderly and controlled allocation of all of these resources among the programs competing for them.

This is a core course on Operating Systems covering the broader perspective of its operation. Each unit includes presentation of the contents with examples and solved problems. This course introduces the key mechanisms of the operating system like process management, memory management, file systems, I/O management and protection and security. The whole course is organised into 4 Blocks.

**Block 1** covers the Introduction to Operating Systems, the role of processes, their creation, process scheduling, interprocess communication and synchronization and deadlocks.

**Block 2** covers the study of storage management: static and dynamic allocation, paging and segmentation, virtual memory and demand paging, page replacement of algorithms and memory caches and their effect on performance followed by the File management concepts, such as input/output hardware and software, files, directories and access mechanisms, file allocation and access algorithms and performance. Finally, the increasingly important areas of protection and security are discussed like the goals, authentication, access mechanisms, protection domains, access control lists and capabilities, and monitoring.

**Block 3** covers the advanced topics in Operating Systems like Multiprocessor systems, Distributed systems and Mobile Operating Systems.

**Block 4** covers the case studies on Windows 10, Linux, Android and iOS.

There is a lab component associated with this course (i.e., Section-1 Windows 10 and Section-2 Linux of MCSL-204 course).



## BLOCK INTRODUCTION

---

The objective of this block is to familiarise you with the issues involved in the design and implementation of modern operating systems. The course does not concentrate on any particular operating system or hardware platform. The concepts discussed are applicable to a variety of systems.

The block is organised into 4 units:

**Unit 1** covers the introduction to operating systems;

**Unit 2** covers the concept of processes, process states, process switch, threads, CPU scheduling, various scheduling algorithms and their performance criteria;

**Unit 3** covers the interprocess communication, concurrency and synchronization aspects of the processes, and

**Unit 4** covers the deadlocks, conditions for the deadlock, deadlock prevention, avoidance and recovery.





---

# **UNIT 1 OPERATING SYSTEM : AN OVERVIEW**

---

## **Structure**

- 1.1 Introduction
- 1.2 Objectives
- 1.3 What is an Operating System?
- 1.4 Goals of an Operating System
- 1.5 Generations of Operating Systems
  - 1.5.1 0<sup>th</sup> Generation
  - 1.5.2 First Generation (1951-1956)
  - 1.5.3 Second Generation (1956-1964)
  - 1.5.4 Third Generation (1964-1979)
  - 1.5.5 Fourth Generation (1979-Present)
- 1.6 Types of Operating Systems
  - 1.6.1 Batch Processing Operating System
  - 1.6.2 Time Sharing
  - 1.6.3 Real Time Operating System (RTOS)
  - 1.6.4 Multiprogramming Operating System
  - 1.6.5 Multiprocessing System
  - 1.6.6 Networking Operating System
  - 1.6.7 Distributed Operating System
  - 1.6.8 Operating Systems for Embedded Devices
- 1.7 Desirable Qualities of OS
- 1.8 Operating Systems : Some Examples
  - 1.8.1 DOS
  - 1.8.2 UNIX
  - 1.8.3 Windows
  - 1.8.4 Macintosh
- 1.9 Functions of OS
  - 1.9.1 Process Management
  - 1.9.2 Memory Management
  - 1.9.3 Secondary Storage Management
  - 1.9.4 I/O Management
  - 1.9.5 File Management
  - 1.9.6 Protection
  - 1.9.7 Networking
  - 1.9.8 Command Interpretation
- 1.10 Summary
- 1.11 Solutions/Answers
- 1.12 Further Readings

ignou  
THE PEOPLE'S  
UNIVERSITY

## 1.1 INTRODUCTION

---

Computer software can be divided into two main categories: application software and system software. Application software consists of the programs for performing tasks particular to the machine's utilization. This software is designed to solve a particular problem for users. Examples of application software include spreadsheets, database systems, desktop publishing systems, program development software, and games.

On the other hand, system software is more transparent and less noticed by the typical computer user. This software provides a general programming environment in which programmers can create specific applications to suit their needs. This environment provides new functions that are not available at the hardware level and performs tasks related to executing the application program. System software acts as an interface between the hardware of the computer and the application software that users need to run on the computer. The most important type of system software is the operating system.

An **Operating System** (OS) is a collection of programs that acts as an interface between a user of a computer and the computer hardware. The purpose of an operating system is to provide an environment in which a user may execute the programs. Operating Systems are viewed as resource managers. The main resource is the computer hardware in the form of processors, storage, input/output devices, communication devices, and data. Some of the operating system functions are: implementing the user interface, sharing hardware among users, allowing users to share data among themselves, preventing users from interfering with one another, scheduling resources among users, facilitating input/output, recovering from errors, accounting for resource usage, facilitating parallel operations, organizing data for secure and rapid access, and handling network communications.

This unit presents the definition of the operating system, goals of the operating system, generations of OS, different types of OS and functions of OS.

## 1.2 OBJECTIVES

---

After going through this unit, you should be able to:

- understand the purpose of an operating system;
- describe the general goals of an operating system;
- discuss the evolution of operating systems;
- describe various functions performed by the OS;
- list, discuss and compare various types of OS, and
- describe various structures of operating system.

## 1.3 WHAT IS AN OPERATING SYSTEM?

---

In a computer system, we find four main components: the hardware, the operating system, the application software and the users. In a computer system the hardware provides the basic computing resources. The applications programs define the way in

which these resources are used to solve the computing problems of the users. The operating system controls and coordinates the use of the hardware among the various systems programs and application programs for the various users.

We can view an operating system as a **resource allocator**. A computer system has many resources (hardware and software) that may be required to solve a problem: CPU time, memory space, files storage space, input/output devices etc. The operating system acts as the manager of these resources and allocates them to specific programs and users as necessary for their tasks. Since there may be many, possibly conflicting, requests for resources, the operating system must decide which requests are allocated resources to operate the computer system fairly and efficiently.

An operating system is a **control program**. This program controls the execution of user programs to prevent errors and improper use of the computer. Operating systems exist because: they are a reasonable way to solve the problem of creating a usable computing system. The fundamental goal of a computer system is to execute user programs and solve user problems.

While there is no universally agreed upon definition of the concept of an operating system, the following is a reasonable starting point:

A computer's operating system is a group of programs designed to serve two basic purposes:

- To control the allocation and use of the computing system's resources among the various users and tasks, and
- To provide an interface between the computer hardware and the programmer that simplifies and makes feasible the creation, coding, debugging, and maintenance of application programs.

An effective operating system should accomplish the following functions:

- Should act as a command interpreter by providing a user friendly environment.
- Should facilitate communication with other users.
- Facilitate the directory/file creation along with the security option.
- Provide routines that handle the intricate details of I/O programming.
- Provide access to compilers to translate programs from high-level languages to machine language
- Provide a loader program to move the compiled program code to the computer's memory for execution.
- Assure that when there are several active processes in the computer, each will get fair and non-interfering access to the central processing unit for execution.
- Take care of storage and device allocation.
- Provide for long term storage of user information in the form of files.
- Permit system resources to be shared among users when appropriate, and be protected from unauthorised or mischievous intervention as necessary.

Though systems programs such as editors and translators and the various utility programs (such as sort and file transfer program) are not usually considered part of the operating system, the operating system is responsible for providing access to these system resources.

The abstract view of the components of a computer system and the positioning of OS is shown in the *Figure 1*.

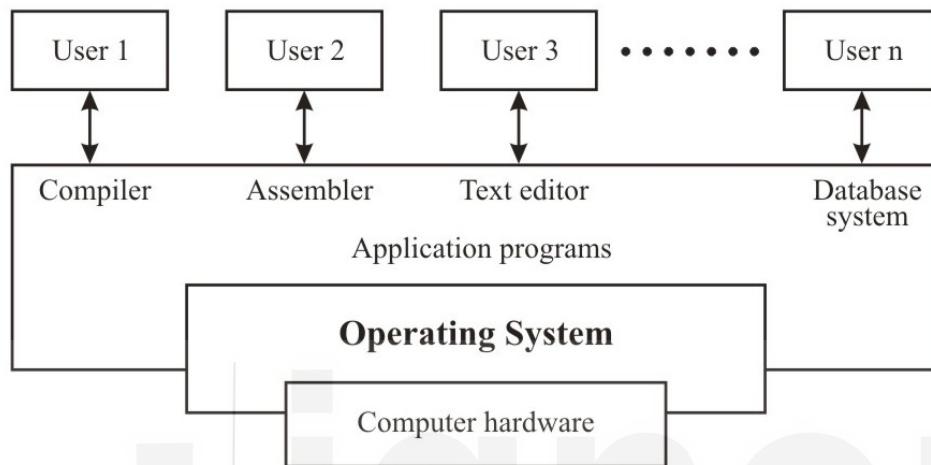


Figure 1: Abstract View of the Components of a Computer System

## 1.4 GOALS OF AN OPERATING SYSTEM

The primary objective of a computer is to execute an instruction in an efficient manner and to increase the productivity of processing resources attached with the computer system such as hardware resources, software resources and the users. In other words, we can say that maximum CPU utilisation is the main objective, because it is the main device which is to be used for the execution of the programs or instructions. We can brief the goals as:

- The primary goal of an operating system is to make the computer **convenient** to use.
- The secondary goal is to use the hardware in an **efficient** manner.

## 1.5 GENERATIONS OF OPERATING SYSTEMS

We have studied the definition and the goals of the operating systems.

Operating systems have been evolving over the years. We will briefly look at this development of the operating systems with respect to the evolution of the hardware / architecture of the computer systems in this section. Since operating systems have historically been closely tied with the architecture of the computers on which they run, we will look at successive generations of computers to see what their operating systems were like. We may not exactly map the operating systems generations to the generations of the computer, but roughly it provides the idea behind them.

#### **1.4.1 0<sup>th</sup> Generation**

The term 0<sup>th</sup> generation is used to refer to the period of development of computing, which predated the commercial production and sale of computer equipment. We consider that the period might be way back when Charles Babbage invented the Analytical Engine. Afterwards the computers by John Atanasoff in 1940; the Mark I, built by Howard Aiken and a group of IBM engineers at Harvard in 1944; the ENIAC, designed and constructed at the University of Pennsylvania by Wallace Eckert and John Mauchly and the EDVAC, developed in 1944-46 by John Von Neumann, Arthur Burks, and Herman Goldstine (which was the first to fully implement the idea of the stored program and serial execution of instructions) were designed. The development of EDVAC set the stage for the evolution of commercial computing and operating system software. The hardware component technology of this period was *electronic vacuum tubes*.

The actual operation of these early computers took place **without the benefit of an operating system**. Early programs were written in machine language and each contained code for initiating operation of the computer itself.

The mode of operation was called “open-shop” and this meant that users signed up for computer time and when a user’s time arrived, the entire (in those days quite large) computer system was turned over to the user. The individual user (programmer) was responsible for all machine set up and operation, and subsequent clean-up and preparation for the next user. This system was clearly inefficient and dependent on the varying competencies of the individual programmer as operators.

#### **1.4.2 First Generation (1951-1956)**

The first generation marked the beginning of commercial computing, including the introduction of Eckert and Mauchly’s UNIVAC I in early 1951, and a bit later, the IBM 701 which was also known as the Defence Calculator. The first generation was characterised again by the vacuum tube as the active component technology.

Operation continued without the benefit of an operating system for a time. The mode was called “closed shop” and was characterised by the appearance of hired operators who would select the job to be run, initial program load the system, run the user’s program, and then select another job, and so forth. Programs began to be written in higher level, procedure-oriented languages, and thus the operator’s routine expanded. The operator now selected a job, ran the translation program to assemble or compile the source program, and combined the translated object program along with any existing library programs that the program might need for input to the linking program, loaded and ran the composite linked program, and then handled the next job in a similar fashion.

Application programs were run one at a time, and were translated with absolute computer addresses that bound them to be loaded and run from these reassigned storage addresses set by the translator, obtaining their data from specific physical I/O device. There was no provision for moving a program to different location in storage for any reason. Similarly, a program bound to specific devices could not be run at all if any of these devices were busy or broken.

The inefficiencies inherent in the above methods of operation led to the development of the ***mono-programmed operating system***, which eliminated some of the human intervention in running job and provided programmers with a number of desirable functions. The OS consisted of a permanently resident kernel in main storage, and a job scheduler and a number of utility programs kept in secondary storage. User application programs were preceded by control or specification cards (in those day, computer program were submitted on data cards) which informed the OS of what system resources (software resources such as compilers and loaders; and hardware resources such as tape drives and printer) were needed to run a particular application. The systems were designed to be operated as batch processing system.

These systems continued to operate under the control of a human operator who initiated operation by mounting a magnetic tape that contained the operating system executable code onto a “boot device”, and then pushing the IPL (Initial Program Load) or “boot” button to initiate the bootstrap loading of the operating system. Once the system was loaded, the operator entered the date and time, and then initiated the operation of the job scheduler program which read and interpreted the control statements, secured the needed resources, executed the first user program, recorded timing and accounting information, and then went back to begin processing of another user program, and so on, as long as there were programs waiting in the input queue to be executed.

The first generation saw the evolution from hands-on operation to closed shop operation to the development of mono-programmed operating systems. At the same time, the development of programming languages was moving away from the basic machine languages; first to assembly language, and later to procedure oriented languages, the most significant being the development of FORTRAN by John W. Backus in 1956. Several problems remained, however, the most obvious was the inefficient use of system resources, which was most evident when the CPU waited while the relatively slower, mechanical I/O devices were reading or writing program data. In addition, system protection was a problem because the operating system kernel was not protected from being overwritten by an erroneous application program. Moreover, other user programs in the queue were not protected from destruction by executing programs.

#### 1.4.3 Second Generation (1956-1964)

The second generation of computer hardware was most notably characterised by ***transistors*** replacing vacuum tubes as the hardware component technology. In addition, some very important changes in hardware and software architectures occurred during this period. For the most part, computer systems remained card and tape-oriented systems. Significant use of random access devices, that is, disks, did not appear until towards the end of the second generation. Program processing was, for the most part, provided by large centralised computers operated under ***mono-programmed batch processing operating systems***.

The most significant innovations addressed the problem of excessive central processor delay due to waiting for input/output operations. Recall that programs were executed by processing the machine instructions in a strictly sequential order. As a result, the CPU, with its high speed electronic component, was often forced to wait for completion of I/O operations which involved mechanical devices (card readers and tape drives) that were order of magnitude slower. This problem led to the introduction of the data channel, an integral and special-purpose computer with its own instruction set, registers, and control unit designed to process input/output operations separately and

asynchronously from the operation of the computer's main CPU near the end of the first generation, and its widespread adoption in the second generation.

The data channel allowed some I/O to be buffered. That is, a program's input data could be read "ahead" from data cards or tape into a special block of memory called a buffer. Then, when the user's program came to an input statement, the data could be transferred from the buffer locations at the faster main memory access speed rather than the slower I/O device speed. Similarly, a program's output could be written another buffer and later moved from the buffer to the printer, tape, or card punch. What made this all work was the data channel's ability to work asynchronously and concurrently with the main processor. Thus, the slower mechanical I/O could be happening concurrently with main program processing. This process was called I/O overlap.

The data channel was controlled by a channel program set up by the operating system I/O control routines and initiated by a special instruction executed by the CPU. Then, the channel independently processed data to or from the buffer. This provided communication from the CPU to the data channel to initiate an I/O operation. It remained for the channel to communicate to the CPU such events as data errors and the completion of a transmission. At first, this communication was handled by polling – the CPU stopped its work periodically and polled the channel to determine if there is any message.

Polling was obviously inefficient (imagine stopping your work periodically to go to the post office to see if an expected letter has arrived) and led to another significant innovation of the second generation – the interrupt. The data channel was able to interrupt the CPU with a message – usually "I/O complete." In fact, the interrupt idea was later extended from I/O to allow signalling of number of exceptional conditions such as arithmetic overflow, division by zero and time-run-out. Of course, interval clocks were added in conjunction with the latter, and thus operating system came to have a way of regaining control from an exceptionally long or indefinitely looping program.

These hardware developments led to enhancements of the operating system. I/O and data channel communication and control became functions of the operating system, both to relieve the application programmer from the difficult details of I/O programming and to protect the integrity of the system to provide improved service to users by segmenting jobs and running shorter jobs first (during "prime time") and relegating longer jobs to lower priority or night time runs. System libraries became more widely available and more comprehensive as new utilities and application software components were available to programmers.

In order to further mitigate the I/O wait problem, systems were set up to spool the input batch from slower I/O devices such as the card reader to the much higher speed tape drive and similarly, the output from the higher speed tape to the slower printer. In this scenario, the user submitted a job at a window, a batch of jobs was accumulated and spooled from cards to tape "off line," the tape was moved to the main computer, the jobs were run, and their output was collected on another tape that later was taken to a satellite computer for off line tape-to-printer output. User then picked up their output at the submission windows.

Toward the end of this period, as random access devices became available, tape-oriented operating system began to be replaced by disk-oriented systems. With the more sophisticated disk hardware and the operating system supporting a greater portion of the programmer's work, the computer system that users saw was more and more removed from the actual hardware-users saw a virtual machine.

The second generation was a period of ***intense operating system development***. Also it was the period for sequential batch processing. But the sequential processing of one job at a time remained a significant limitation. Thus, there continued to be low CPU utilisation for I/O bound jobs and low I/O device utilisation for CPU bound jobs. This was a major concern, since computers were still very large (room-size) and expensive machines. Researchers began to experiment with multiprogramming and multiprocessing in their computing services called the time-sharing system. A noteworthy example is the Compatible Time Sharing System (CTSS), developed at MIT during the early 1960s.

#### 1.4.4 Third Generation (1964-1979)

The third generation officially began in April 1964 with IBM's announcement of its System/360 family of computers. Hardware technology began to use integrated circuits (ICs) which yielded significant advantages in both speed and economy.

Operating system development continued with the introduction and widespread adoption of multiprogramming. This marked first by the appearance of more sophisticated I/O buffering in the form of spooling operating systems, such as the HASP (Houston Automatic Spooling) system that accompanied the IBM OS/360 system. These systems worked by introducing two new systems programs, a system reader to move input jobs from cards to disk, and a system writer to move job output from disk to printer, tape, or cards. Operation of spooling system was, as before, transparent to the computer user who perceived input as coming directly from the cards and output going directly to the printer.

The idea of taking fuller advantage of the computer's data channel I/O capabilities continued to develop. That is, designers recognised that I/O needed only to be initiated by a CPU instruction – the actual I/O data transmission could take place under control of separate and asynchronously operating channel program. Thus, by switching control of the CPU between the currently executing user program, the system reader program, and the system writer program, it was possible to keep the slower mechanical I/O device running and minimizes the amount of time the CPU spent waiting for I/O completion. The net result was an increase in system throughput and resource utilisation, to the benefit of both user and providers of computer services.

This concurrent operation of three programs (more properly, apparent concurrent operation, since systems had only one CPU, and could, therefore execute just one instruction at a time) required that additional features and complexity be added to the operating system. First, the fact that the input queue was now on disk, a direct access device, freed the system scheduler from the first-come-first-served policy so that it could select the “best” next job to enter the system (looking for either the shortest job or the highest priority job in the queue). Second, since the CPU was to be shared by the user program, the system reader, and the system writer, some processor allocation rule or policy was needed. Since the goal of spooling was to increase resource utilization by enabling the slower I/O devices to run asynchronously with user program processing, and since I/O processing required the CPU only for short periods to initiate data channel instructions, the CPU was dispatched to the reader, the writer, and the program in that order. Moreover, if the writer or the user program was executing when something became available to read, the reader program would preempt the currently executing program to regain control of the CPU for its initiation instruction, and the writer program would preempt the user program for the same purpose. This rule, called the static

priority rule with preemption, was implemented in the operating system as a system dispatcher program.

The spooling operating system in fact had multiprogramming since more than one program was resident in main storage at the same time. Later this basic idea of multiprogramming was extended to include more than one active user program in memory at time. To accommodate this extension, both the scheduler and the dispatcher were enhanced. The scheduler became able to manage the diverse resource needs of the several concurrently active used programs, and the dispatcher included policies for allocating processor resources among the competing user programs. In addition, memory management became more sophisticated in order to assure that the program code for each job or at least that part of the code being executed, was resident in main storage.

The advent of large-scale multiprogramming was made possible by several important hardware innovations such as:

- The widespread availability of large capacity, high-speed disk units to accommodate the spooled input streams and the memory overflow together with the maintenance of several concurrently active program in execution.
- Relocation hardware which facilitated the moving of blocks of code within memory without any undue overhead penalty.
- The availability of storage protection hardware to ensure that user jobs are protected from one another and that the operating system itself is protected from user programs.
- Some of these hardware innovations involved extensions to the interrupt system in order to handle a variety of external conditions such as program malfunctions, storage protection violations, and machine checks in addition to I/O interrupts. In addition, the interrupt system became the technique for the user program to request services from the operating system kernel.
- The advent of privileged instructions allowed the operating system to maintain coordination and control over the multiple activities now going on with in the system.

Successful implementation of multiprogramming opened the way for the development of a new way of delivering computing services-time-sharing. In this environment, several terminals, sometimes up to 200 of them, were attached (hard wired or via telephone lines) to a central computer. Users at their terminals, “logged in” to the central system, and worked interactively with the system. The system’s apparent concurrency was enabled by the multiprogramming operating system. Users shared not only the system hardware but also its software resources and file system disk space.

The third generation was an exciting time, indeed, for the development of both computer hardware and the accompanying operating system. During this period, the topic of operating systems became, in reality, a major element of the discipline of computing.

#### **1.4.5 Fourth Generation (1979 – Present)**

The fourth generation is characterized by the appearance of the personal computer and the workstation. Miniaturization of electronic circuits and components continued and large scale integration (LSI), the component technology of the third generation, was replaced by very large scale integration (VLSI), which characterizes the fourth

generation. VLSI with its capacity for containing thousands of transistors on a small chip, made possible the development of desktop computers with capabilities exceeding those that filled entire rooms and floors of building just twenty years earlier.

The operating systems that control these desktop machines have brought us back in a full circle, to the open shop type of environment where each user occupies an entire computer for the duration of a job's execution. This works better now, not only because the progress made over the years has made the virtual computer resulting from the operating system/hardware combination so much easier to use, or, in the words of the popular press "user-friendly."

However, improvements in hardware miniaturisation and technology have evolved so fast that we now have inexpensive workstation – class computers capable of supporting multiprogramming and time-sharing. Hence the operating systems that supports today's personal computers and workstations look much like those which were available for the minicomputers of the third generation. Examples are Microsoft's DOS for IBM-compatible personal computers and UNIX for workstation.

However, many of these desktop computers are now connected as networked or distributed systems. Computers in a networked system each have their operating systems augmented with communication capabilities that enable users to remotely log into any system on the network and transfer information among machines that are connected to the network. The machines that make up distributed system operate as a virtual single processor system from the user's point of view; a central operating system controls and makes transparent the location in the system of the particular processor or processors and file systems that are handling any given program.

#### ☛ Check Your Progress 1

- 1) What are the main responsibilities of an Operating System?
- .....  
.....  
.....  
.....

---

## 1.5 TYPES OF OPERATING SYSTEMS

---

In this section we will discuss about the different types of operating systems.

Modern computer operating systems may be classified into three groups, which are distinguished by the nature of interaction that takes place between the computer user and his or her program during its processing. The three groups are called batch, time-sharing and real-time operating systems.

### 1.5.1 Batch Processing Operating System

In a batch processing operating system environment users submit jobs to a central place where these jobs are collected into a batch, and subsequently placed on an input

queue at the computer where they will be run. In this case, the user has no interaction with the job during its processing, and the computer's response time is the turnaround time-the time from submission of the job until execution is complete, and the results are ready for return to the person who submitted the job.

### 1.5.2 Time Sharing

Another mode for delivering computing services is provided by time sharing operating systems. In this environment a computer provides computing services to several or many users concurrently on-line. Here, the various users are sharing the central processor, the memory, and other resources of the computer system in a manner facilitated, controlled, and monitored by the operating system. The user, in this environment, has nearly full interaction with the program during its execution, and the computer's response time may be expected to be no more than a few second.

### 1.5.3 Real Time Operating System (RTOS)

The third class is the real time operating systems, which are designed to service those applications where response time is of the essence in order to prevent error, misrepresentation or even disaster. Examples of real time operating systems are those which handle airlines reservations, machine tool control, and monitoring of a nuclear power station. The systems, in this case, are designed to be interrupted by external signals that require the immediate attention of the computer system.

These real time operating systems are used to control machinery, scientific instruments and industrial systems. An RTOS typically has very little user-interface capability, and no end-user utilities. A very important part of an RTOS is managing the resources of the computer so that a particular operation executes in precisely the same amount of time every time it occurs. In a complex machine, having a part move more quickly just because system resources are available may be just as catastrophic as having it not move at all because the system is busy.

A number of *other definitions* are important to gain an understanding of operating systems:

### 1.5.4 Multiprogramming Operating System

A multiprogramming operating system is a system that allows more than one active user program (or part of user program) to be stored in main memory simultaneously. Thus, it is evident that a time-sharing system is a multiprogramming system, but note that a multiprogramming system is not necessarily a time-sharing system. A batch or real time operating system could, and indeed usually does, have more than one active user program simultaneously in main storage. Another important, and all too similar, term is "multiprocessing".

### 1.5.5 Multiprocessing System

A multiprocessing system is a computer hardware configuration that includes more than one independent processing unit. The term multiprocessing is generally used to refer to large computer hardware complexes found in major scientific or commercial applications. More on multiprocessor system can be studied in Unit-1 of Block-3 of this course.

### 1.5.6 Networking Operating System

A networked computing system is a collection of physical interconnected computers. The operating system of each of the interconnected computers must contain, in addition to its own stand-alone functionality, provisions for handling communication and transfer of program and data among the other computers with which it is connected.

Network operating systems are not fundamentally different from single processor operating systems. They obviously need a network interface controller and some low-level software to drive it, as well as programs to achieve remote login and remote files access, but these additions do not change the essential structure of the operating systems.

### 1.5.7 Distributed Operating System

A distributed computing system consists of a number of computers that are connected and managed so that they automatically share the job processing load among the constituent computers, or separate the job load as appropriate particularly configured processors. Such a system requires an operating system which, in addition to the typical stand-alone functionality, provides coordination of the operations and information flow among the component computers. The networked and distributed computing environments and their respective operating systems are designed with more complex functional capabilities. In a network operating system, the users are aware of the existence of multiple computers, and can log in to remote machines and copy files from one machine to another. Each machine runs its own local operating system and has its own user (or users).

A distributed operating system, in contrast, is one that appears to its users as a traditional uni-processor system, even though it is actually composed of multiple processors. In a true distributed system, users should not be aware of where their programs are being run or where their files are located; that should all be handled automatically and efficiently by the operating system.

True distributed operating systems require more than just adding a little code to a uni-processor operating system, because distributed and centralised systems differ in critical ways. Distributed systems, for example, often allow program to run on several processors at the same time, thus requiring more complex processor scheduling algorithms in order to optimise the amount of parallelism achieved. More on distributed systems can be studied in Unit-2 of Block-3 of this course.

### 1.5.8 Operating Systems for Embedded Devices

As embedded systems (PDAs, cellphones, point-of-sale devices, VCR's, industrial robot control, or even your toaster) become more complex hardware-wise with every generation, and more features are put into them day-by-day, applications they run require more and more to run on actual operating system code in order to keep the development time reasonable. Some of the popular OS are:

- Nexus's Conix - an embedded operating system for ARM processors.
- Sun's Java OS - a standalone virtual machine not running on top of any other OS; mainly targeted at embedded systems.
- Palm Computing's Palm OS - Currently the leader OS for PDAs, has many applications and supporting companies.

- Microsoft's Windows CE and Windows NT Embedded OS.

## 1.6 DESIRABLE QUALITIES OF OS

The desirable qualities of an operating system are in terms of: Usability, Facilities, Cost, and Adaptability.

- Usability:
  - Robustness
  - *Accept all valid inputs and can handle them.*
  - Consistency
  - Proportionality
  - Convenience
  - Powerful with high level facilities.
- Facilities:
  - Sufficient for intended use
  - Complete
  - Appropriate.
- Costs:
  - Want low cost and efficient services.
  - Good algorithms.  
*Make use of space/time tradeoffs, special hardware.*
  - Low overhead.  
*Cost of doing nothing should be low. E.g., idle time at a terminal.*
  - Low maintenance cost.  
*System should not require constant attention.*
- Adaptability:
  - Tailored to the environment.  
*Support necessary activities. Do not impose unnecessary restrictions.*  
*What are the things people do most — make them easy.*
  - Changeable over time.  
*Adapt as needs and resources change. e.g., expanding memory and new devices, or new user population.*
  - Extendible-Extensible  
*Adding new facilities and features - which look like the old ones.*

## 1.7 OPERATING SYSTEMS: SOME EXAMPLES

In the earlier section we had seen the types of operating systems. In this section we will study some popular operating systems.

### 1.7.1 DOS

DOS (Disk Operating System) was the first widely-installed operating system for personal computers. It is a master control program that is automatically run when you start your personal computer (PC). DOS stays in the computer all the time letting you run a program and manage files. It is a single-user operating system from Microsoft for the PC. It was the first OS for the PC and is the underlying control program for Windows 3.1, 95, 98 and ME. Windows NT, 2000 and XP emulate DOS in order to support existing DOS applications.

### 1.7.2 UNIX

UNIX operating systems are used in widely-sold workstation products from Sun Microsystems, Silicon Graphics, IBM, and a number of other companies. The UNIX environment and the client/server program model were important elements in the development of the Internet and the reshaping of computing as centered in networks rather than in individual computers. Linux, a UNIX derivative available in both “free software” and commercial versions, is increasing in popularity as an alternative to proprietary operating systems.

UNIX is written in C. Both UNIX and C were developed by AT&T and freely distributed to government and academic institutions, causing it to be ported to a wider variety of machine families than any other operating system. As a result, UNIX became synonymous with “open systems”.

UNIX is made up of the kernel, file system and shell (command line interface). The major shells are the Bourne shell (original), C shell and Korn shell. The UNIX vocabulary is exhaustive with more than 600 commands that manipulate data and text in every way conceivable. Many commands are cryptic, but just as Windows hid the DOS prompt, the Motif GUI presents a friendlier image to UNIX users. Even with its many versions, UNIX is widely used in mission critical applications for client/server and transaction processing systems. The UNIX versions that are widely used are Sun’s Solaris, Digital’s UNIX, HP’s HP-UX, IBM’s AIX and SCO’s UnixWare. A large number of IBM mainframes also run UNIX applications, because the UNIX interfaces were added to MVS and OS/390, which have obtained UNIX branding. Linux, another variant of UNIX, is also gaining enormous popularity. More details can be studied in Unit-3 of Block-3 of this course.

### 1.7.3 WINDOWS

Windows is a personal computer operating system from Microsoft that, together with some commonly used business applications such as Microsoft Word and Excel, has become a *de facto* “standard” for individual users in most corporations as well as in most homes. Windows contains built-in networking, which allows users to share files and applications with each other if their PC’s are connected to a network. In large enterprises, Windows clients are often connected to a network of UNIX and NetWare servers. The server versions of Windows NT and 2000 are gaining market share,

providing a Windows-only solution for both the client and server. Windows is supported by Microsoft, the largest software company in the world, as well as the Windows industry at large, which includes tens of thousands of software developers.

This networking support is the reason why Windows became successful in the first place. However, Windows 95, 98, ME, NT, 2000 and XP are complicated operating environments. Certain combinations of hardware and software running together can cause problems, and troubleshooting can be daunting. Each new version of Windows has interface changes that constantly confuse users and keep support people busy, and Installing Windows applications is problematic too. Microsoft has worked hard to make Windows 2000 and Windows XP more resilient to installation of problems and crashes in general. More details on Windows 2000 can be studied in Unit-4 of Block -3 of this course.

#### **1.7.4 MACINTOSH**

The Macintosh (often called “the Mac”), introduced in 1984 by Apple Computer, was the first widely-sold personal computer with a graphical user interface (GUI). The Mac was designed to provide users with a natural, intuitively understandable, and, in general, “user-friendly” computer interface. This includes the mouse, the use of icons or small visual images to represent objects or actions, the point-and-click and click-and-drag actions, and a number of window operation ideas. Microsoft was successful in adapting user interface concepts first made popular by the Mac in its first Windows operating system. The primary disadvantage of the Mac is that there are fewer Mac applications on the market than for Windows. However, all the fundamental applications are available, and the Macintosh is a perfectly useful machine for almost everybody. Data compatibility between Windows and Mac is an issue, although it is often overblown and readily solved.

The Macintosh has its own operating system, Mac OS which, in its latest version is called Mac OS X. Originally built on Motorola’s 68000 series microprocessors, Mac versions today are powered by the PowerPC microprocessor, which was developed jointly by Apple, Motorola, and IBM. While Mac users represent only about 5% of the total numbers of personal computer users, Macs are highly popular and almost a cultural necessity among graphic designers and online visual artists and the companies they work for.

In this section we will discuss some services of the operating system used by its users. Users of operating system can be divided into two broad classes: command language users and system call users. Command language users are those who can interact with operating systems using the commands. On the other hand system call users invoke services of the operating system by means of run time system calls during the execution of programs.

More can be read from Block-4 of MCS-203 Operating Systems.

#### **☞ Check Your Progress 2**

- 1) Discuss different views of the Operating Systems.

.....  
.....

- 2) Summarise the characteristics of the following operating systems:

- Batch Processing

- Time Sharing
  - Realtime
- 
- 

## **1.8 FUNCTIONS OF OS**

The main functions of an operating system are as follows:

- Process Management
- Memory Management
- Secondary Storage Management
- I/O Management
- File Management
- Protection
- Networking Management
- Command Interpretation.

### **1.8.1 Process Management**

The CPU executes a large number of programs. While its main concern is the execution of user programs, the CPU is also needed for other system activities. These activities are called processes. A process is a program in execution. Typically, a batch job is a process. A time-shared user program is a process. A system task, such as spooling, is also a process. For now, a process may be considered as a job or a time-shared program, but the concept is actually more general.

The operating system is responsible for the following activities in connection with processes management:

- The creation and deletion of both user and system processes
- The suspension and resumption of processes.
- The provision of mechanisms for process synchronization
- The provision of mechanisms for deadlock handling.

More details can be studied in the Unit-2 of this course.

### **1.8.2 Memory Management**

Memory is the most expensive part in the computer system. Memory is a large array of words or bytes, each with its own address. Interaction is achieved through a sequence of reads or writes of specific memory address. The CPU fetches from and stores in memory.

There are various algorithms that depend on the particular situation to manage the memory. Selection of a memory management scheme for a specific system depends

upon many factors, but especially upon the hardware design of the system. Each algorithm requires its own hardware support.

The operating system is responsible for the following activities in connection with memory management.

- Keep track of which parts of memory are currently being used and by whom.
- Decide which processes are to be loaded into memory when memory space becomes available.
- Allocate and deallocate memory space as needed.

Memory management techniques will be discussed in great detail in Unit-1 of Block-2 of this course.

### **1.8.3 Secondary Storage Management**

The main purpose of a computer system is to execute programs. These programs, together with the data they access, must be in main memory during execution. Since the main memory is too small to permanently accommodate all data and program, the computer system must provide secondary storage to backup main memory. Most modern computer systems use disks as the primary on-line storage of information, of both programs and data. Most programs, like compilers, assemblers, sort routines, editors, formatters, and so on, are stored on the disk until loaded into memory, and then use the disk as both the source and destination of their processing. Hence the proper management of disk storage is of central importance to a computer system.

There are few alternatives. Magnetic tape systems are generally too slow. In addition, they are limited to sequential access. Thus tapes are more suited for storing infrequently used files, where speed is not a primary concern.

The operating system is responsible for the following activities in connection with disk management:

- Free space management
- Storage allocation
- Disk scheduling.

More details can be studied in Unit-3 of Block-2 of this course.

### **1.8.4 I/O Management**

One of the purposes of an operating system is to hide the peculiarities or specific hardware devices from the user. For example, in UNIX, the peculiarities of I/O devices are hidden from the bulk of the operating system itself by the I/O system. The operating system is responsible for the following activities in connection to I/O management:

- A buffer caching system
- To activate a general device driver code
- To run the driver software for specific hardware devices as and when required.

More details can be studied in the Unit-3 of Block-2 of this course.

### 1.8.5 File Management

File management is one of the most visible services of an operating system. Computers can store information in several different physical forms: magnetic tape, disk, and drum are the most common forms. Each of these devices has its own characteristics and physical organisation.

For convenient use of the computer system, the operating system provides a uniform logical view of information storage. The operating system abstracts from the physical properties of its storage devices to define a logical storage unit, the file. Files are mapped, by the operating system, onto physical devices.

A file is a collection of related information defined by its creator. Commonly, files represent programs (both source and object forms) and data. Data files may be numeric, alphabetic or alphanumeric. Files may be free-form, such as text files, or may be rigidly formatted. In general a file is a sequence of bits, bytes, lines or records whose meaning is defined by its creator and user. It is a very general concept.

The operating system implements the abstract concept of the file by managing mass storage device, such as tapes and disks. Also files are normally organised into directories to ease their use. Finally, when multiple users have access to files, it may be desirable to control by whom and in what ways files may be accessed.

The operating system is responsible for the following activities in connection to the file management:

- The creation and deletion of files.
- The creation and deletion of directory.
- The support of primitives for manipulating files and directories.
- The mapping of files onto disk storage.
- Backup of files on stable (non volatile) storage.
- Protection and security of the files.

### 1.8.6 Protection

The various processes in an operating system must be protected from each other's activities. For that purpose, various mechanisms which can be used to ensure that the files, memory segment, CPU and other resources can be operated on only by those processes that have gained proper authorisation from the operating system.

For example, memory addressing hardware ensures that a process can only execute within its own address space. The timer ensures that no process can gain control of the CPU without relinquishing it. Finally, no process is allowed to do its own I/O, to protect the integrity of the various peripheral devices. Protection refers to a mechanism for controlling the access of programs, processes, or users to the resources defined by a computer controls to be imposed, together with some means of enforcement.

Protection can improve reliability by detecting latent errors at the interfaces between component subsystems. Early detection of interface errors can often prevent contamination of a healthy subsystem by a subsystem that is malfunctioning. An

unprotected resource cannot defend against use (or misuse) by an unauthorised or incompetent user. More on protection and security can be studied in Unit-4 of Block-3.

### 1.8.7 Networking

A distributed system is a collection of processors that do not share memory or a clock. Instead, each processor has its own local memory, and the processors communicate with each other through various communication lines, such as high speed buses or telephone lines. Distributed systems vary in size and function. They may involve microprocessors, workstations, minicomputers, and large general purpose computer systems.

The processors in the system are connected through a communication network, which can be configured in the number of different ways. The network may be fully or partially connected. The communication network design must consider routing and connection strategies and the problems of connection and security.

A distributed system provides the user with access to the various resources the system maintains. Access to a shared resource allows computation speed-up, data availability, and reliability.

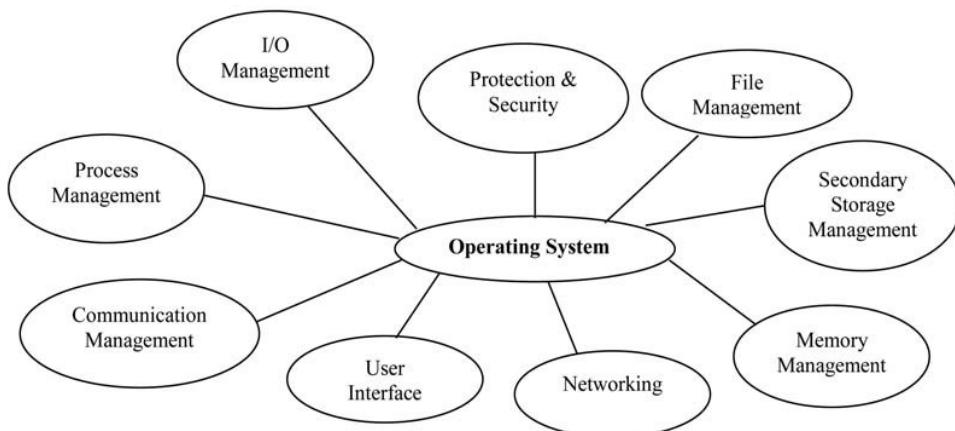
### 1.8.8 Command Interpretation

One of the most important components of an operating system is its command interpreter. The command interpreter is the primary interface between the user and the rest of the system.

Many commands are given to the operating system by control statements. When a new job is started in a batch system or when a user logs-in to a time-shared system, a program which reads and interprets control statements is automatically executed. This program is variously called (1) the control card interpreter, (2) the command line interpreter, (3) the shell (in Unix), and so on. Its function is quite simple: get the next command statement, and execute it.

The command statements themselves deal with process management, I/O handling, secondary storage management, main memory management, file system access, protection, and networking.

The *Figure 2* depicts the role of the operating system in coordinating all the functions.



**Figure 2: Functions Coordinated by the Operating System**

### ☛ Check Your Progress 3

- 1) Mention the advantages and limitations of Multiuser Operating Systems

.....  
.....  
.....

- 2) What is a Multitasking system and mention its advantages.

.....  
.....  
.....

- 3) Illustrate a simple operating system for a security control system.

.....  
.....  
.....

---

## 1.9 SUMMARY

---

This Unit presented the principle operation of an operating system. In this unit we had briefly described about the history, the generations and the types of operating systems.

An operating system is a program that acts as an interface between a user of a computer and the computer hardware. The purpose of an operating system is to provide an environment in which a user may execute programs. The primary goal of an operating system is to make the computer **convenient** to use. And the secondary goal is to use the hardware in an **efficient** manner.

Operating systems may be classified by both how many tasks they can perform “simultaneously” and by how many users can be using the system “simultaneously”. That is: *single-user* or *multi-user* and *single-task* or *multi-tasking*. A multi-user system must clearly be multi-tasking. In the next unit we will discuss the concept of processes and their management by the OS.

---

## 1.10 SOLUTIONS/ANSWERS

---

### Check Your Progress 1

- 1) The most important type of system software is the operating system. An operating system has three main responsibilities:
- Perform basic tasks, such as recognising input from the keyboard, sending output to the display screen, keeping track of files and directories on the disk, and controlling peripheral devices such as disk drives and printers.
  - Ensure that different programs and users running at the same time do not interfere with each other.

- Provide a software platform on top of which other programs (i.e., application software) can run.

The first two responsibilities address the need for managing the computer hardware and the application programs that use the hardware. The third responsibility focuses on providing an interface between application software and hardware so that application software can be efficiently developed. Since the operating system is already responsible for managing the hardware, it should provide a programming interface for application developers.

### **Check Your Progress 2**

- 1) The following are the different views of the operating system.

#### **As a scheduler/allocator:**

- The operating system has resources for which it is in charge.
- Responsible for handing them out (and later recovering them).
- Resources include CPU, memory, I/O devices, and disk space.

#### **As a virtual machine:**

- Operating system provides a “new” machine.
  - This machine could be the same as the underlying machine. Allows many users to believe they have an entire piece of hardware to themselves.
  - This could implement a different, perhaps more powerful, machine. Or just a different machine entirely. It may be useful to be able to completely simulate another machine with your current hardware.

#### **As a multiplexer:**

- Allows sharing of resources, and provides protection from interference.
- Provides for a level of cooperation between users.
- Economic reasons: we have to take turns.

- 2) **Batch Processing:** This strategy involves reading a series of jobs (called a batch) into the machine and then executing the programs for each job in the batch. This approach does not allow users to interact with programs while they operate.

**Time Sharing:** This strategy supports multiple interactive users. Rather than preparing a job for execution ahead of time, users establish an interactive session with the computer and then provide commands, programs and data as they are needed during the session.

**Real Time:** This strategy supports real-time and process control systems. These are the types of systems which control satellites, robots, and air-traffic control. The dedicated strategy must guarantee certain response times for particular computing tasks or the application is useless.

### **Check Your Progress 3**

- 1) The advantage of having a multi-user operating system is that normally the hardware is very expensive, and it lets a number of users share this expensive resource. This

means the cost is divided amongst the users. It also makes better use of the resources. Since the resources are shared, they are more likely to be in use than sitting idle being unproductive.

One limitation with multi-user computer systems is that as more users access it, the performance becomes slower and slower. Another limitation is the cost of hardware, as a multi-user operating system requires a lot of disk space and memory. In addition, the actual software for multi-user operating systems tend to cost more than single-user operating systems.

- 2) A multi-tasking operating system provides the ability to run more than one program at once. For example, a user could be running a word processing package, printing a document, copying files to the floppy disk and backing up selected files to a tape unit. Each of these tasks the user is doing appears to be running at the same time.

A multi-tasking operating system has the advantage of letting the user run more than one task at once, so this leads to increased productivity. The disadvantage is that more programs that are run by the user, the more memory is required.

- 3) An operating system for a security control system (such as a home alarm system) would consist of a number of programs. One of these programs would gain control of the computer system when it is powered on, and initialise the system. The first task of this initialise program would be to reset (and probably test) the hardware sensors and alarms. Once the hardware initialisation was complete, the operating system would enter a continual monitoring routine of all the input sensors. If the state of any input sensor is changed, it would branch to an alarm generation routine.

---

## **1.11 FURTHER READINGS**

---

- 1) Madnick and Donovan, *Operating systems – Concepts and design*, McGrawHill Intl. Education.
- 2) Milan Milenkovic, *Operating Systems, Concepts and Design*, TMGH, 2000.
- 3) D.M. Dhamdhere, *Operating Systems, A concept-based approach*, TMGH, 2002.
- 4) Abraham Silberschatz and James L, *Operating System Concepts*. Peterson, Addition Wesley Publishing Company.
- 5) Harvay M. Deital, *Introduction to Operating Systems*, Addition Wesley Publishing Company.
- 6) Andrew S. Tanenbaum, *Operating System Design and Implementation*, PHI.

---

## **UNIT 2 PROCESSES**

---

### **Structure**

- 2.1 Introduction
- 2.2 Objectives
- 2.3 The Concept of Process
  - 2.3.1 Implicit and Explicit Tasking
  - 2.3.2 Processes Relationship
  - 2.3.3 Process States
  - 2.3.4 Implementation of Processes
  - 2.3.5 Process Hierarchy
  - 2.3.6 Threads
  - 2.3.7 Levels of Threads
- 2.4 System Calls for Process Management
- 2.5 Process Scheduling
  - 2.5.1 Scheduling Objectives
  - 2.5.2 Types of Schedulers
  - 2.5.3 Scheduling Criteria
- 2.6 Scheduling Algorithms
  - 2.6.1 First Come First Serve (FCFS)
  - 2.6.2 Shortest Job First (SJF)
  - 2.6.3 Round Robin (RR)
  - 2.6.4 Shortest Remaining Time Next (SRTN)
  - 2.6.5 Priority Based Scheduling or Event Driven (ED) Scheduling
- 2.7 Performance Evaluation of the Scheduling Algorithms
- 2.8 Summary
- 2.9 Solutions/Answers
- 2.10 Further Readings

---

### **2.1 INTRODUCTION**

---

In the earlier unit we have studied the overview and the functions of an operating system. In this unit we will have detailed discussion on the processes and their management by the operating system. The other resource management features of operating systems will be discussed in the subsequent units.

The CPU executes a large number of programs. While its main concern is the execution of user programs, the CPU is also needed for other system activities. These activities are called processes. A process is a program in execution. Typically, a batch job is a process. A time-shared user program is a process. A system task, such as spooling, is also a process. For now, a process may be considered as a job or a time-shared program, but the concept is actually more general.

In general, a process will need certain resources such as CPU time, memory, files, I/O devices, etc., to accomplish its task. These resources are given to the process when it

is created. In addition to the various physical and logical resources that a process obtains when it is created, some initialisation data (input) may be passed along. For example, a process whose function is to display the status of a file, say F1, on the screen, will get the name of the file F1 as an input and execute the appropriate program to obtain the desired information.

We emphasize that a program by itself is not a process; a program is a passive entity, while a process is an active entity. It is known that two processes may be associated with the same program; they are nevertheless considered two separate execution sequences.

A process is the unit of work in a system. Such a system consists of a collection of processes, some of which are operating system processes, those that execute system code, and the rest being user processes, those that execute user code. All of those processes can potentially execute concurrently.

The operating system is responsible for the following activities in connection with processes managed.

- The creation and deletion of both user and system processes;
- The suspension and resumption of processes;
- The provision of mechanisms for process synchronization, and
- The provision of mechanisms for deadlock handling.

We will learn the operating system view of the processes, types of schedulers, different types of scheduling algorithms, in the subsequent sections of this unit.

---

## **2.2 OBJECTIVES**

---

After going through this unit, you should be able to:

- understand the concepts of process, various states in the process and their scheduling;
- define a process control block;
- classify different types of schedulers;
- understand various types of scheduling algorithms, and
- compare the performance evaluation of the scheduling algorithms.

---

## **2.3 THE CONCEPT OF PROCESS**

---

The term “process” was first used by the operating system designers of the MULTICS system way back in 1960s. There are different definitions to explain the concept of process. Some of these are, a process is:

- An instance of a program in execution
- An asynchronous activity
- The “animated spirit” of a procedure

- The “locus of control” of a procedure in execution
- The “dispatchable” unit
- Unit of work individually schedulable by an operating system.

Formally, we can define a **process** is an executing program, including the current values of the program counter, registers, and variables. The subtle difference between a process and a program is that the program is a group of instructions whereas the process is the activity.

In multiprogramming systems, processes are performed in a pseudo-parallelism as if each process has its own processor. In fact, there is only one processor but it switches back and forth from process to process. Henceforth, by saying *execution* of a process, we mean the processor’s operations on the process like changing its variables, etc. and *I/O work* means the interaction of the process with the I/O operations like reading something or writing to somewhere. They may also be named as “*processor (CPU) burst*” and “*I/O burst*” respectively. According to these definitions, we classify programs as:

- **Processor- bound program:** A program having long processor bursts (execution instants)
- **I/O-bound program:** A program having short processor bursts.

The operating system works as the computer system software that assists hardware in performing process management functions. Operating system keeps track of all the active processes and allocates system resources to them according to policies devised to meet design performance objectives. To meet process requirements OS must maintain many data structures efficiently. The process abstraction is fundamental means for the OS to manage concurrent program execution. OS must interleave the execution of a number of processes to maximize processor use while providing reasonable response time. It must allocate resources to processes in conformance with a specific policy. In general, a process will need certain resources such as CPU time, memory, files, I/O devices etc. to accomplish its tasks. These resources are allocated to the process when it is created. A single processor may be shared among several processes with some scheduling algorithm being used to determine when to stop work on one process and provide service to a different one which we will discuss later in this unit.

Operating systems must provide some way to create all the processes needed. In simple systems, it may be possible to have all the processes that will ever be needed be present when the system comes up. In almost all systems however, some way is needed to create and destroy processes as needed during operations. In UNIX, for instant, processes are created by the *fork* system call, which makes an identical copy of the calling process. In other systems, system calls exist to create a process, load its memory, and start it running. In general, processes need a way to create other processes. Each process has one parent process, but zero, one, two, or more children processes.

For an OS, the process management functions include:

- Process creation
- Termination of the process

- Controlling the progress of the process
- Process Scheduling
- Dispatching
- Interrupt handling / Exceptional handling
- Switching between the processes
- Process synchronization
- Interprocess communication support
- Management of Process Control Blocks.

### **2.2.1 Implicit and Explicit Tasking**

A separate process at run time can be either–

- Implicit tasking and
- Explicit tasking.

Implicit tasking means that processes are defined by the system. It is commonly encountered in general purpose multiprogramming systems. In this approach, each program submitted for execution is treated by the operating system as an independent process. Processes created in this manner are usually transient in the sense that they are destroyed and disposed of by the system after each run.

Explicit tasking means that programs explicitly define each process and some of its attributes. To improve the performance, a single logical application is divided into various related processes. Explicit tasking is used in situations where high performance in desired system programs such as parts of the operating system and real time applications are common examples of programs defined processes. After dividing process into several independent processes, a system programs defines the confines of each individual process. A parent process is then commonly added to create the environment for and to control execution of individual processes.

Common reasons for and uses of explicit tasking include:

- **Speedup:** Explicit tasking can result in faster execution of applications.
- **Driving I/O devices that have latency:** While one task is waiting for I/O to complete, another portion of the application can make progress towards completion if it contains other tasks that can do useful work in the interim.
- **User convenience:** By creating tasks to handle individual actions, a graphical interface can allow users to launch several operations concurrently by clicking on action icons before completion of previous commands.
- **Multiprocessing and multicompacting:** A program coded as a collection of tasks can be relatively easily posted to a multiprocessor system, where individual tasks may be executed on different processors in parallel.

Distributed computing network server can handle multiple concurrent client sessions by dedicating an individual task to each active client session.

## 2.2.2 Processes Relationship

In the concurrent environment basically processes have two relationships, ***competition and cooperation***. In the concurrent environment, processes compete with each other for allocation of system resources to execute their instructions. In addition, a collection of related processes that collectively represent a single logical application cooperate with each other. There should be a proper operating system to support these relations. In the competition, there should be proper resource allocation and protection in address generation.

We distinguish between *independent process* and *cooperating process*. A process is independent if it cannot affect or be affected by other processes executing in the system.

***Independent process:*** These type of processes have following features:

- Their state is not shared in any way by any other process.
- Their execution is deterministic, i.e., the results of execution depend only on the input values.
- Their execution is reproducible, i.e., the results of execution will always be the same for the same input.
- Their execution can be stopped and restarted without any negative effect.

***Cooperating process:*** In contrast to independent processes, cooperating processes can affect or be affected by other processes executing the system. They are characterised by:

- Their states are shared by other processes.
- Their execution is not deterministic, i.e., the results of execution depend on relative execution sequence and cannot be predicted in advance.

Their execution is irreproducible, i.e., the results of execution are not always the same for the same input.

## 2.2.3 Process States

As defined, a process is an independent entity with its own input values, output values, and internal state. A process often needs to interact with other processes. One process may generate some outputs that other process uses as input. For example, in the shell command

`cat file1 file2 file3 | grep tree`

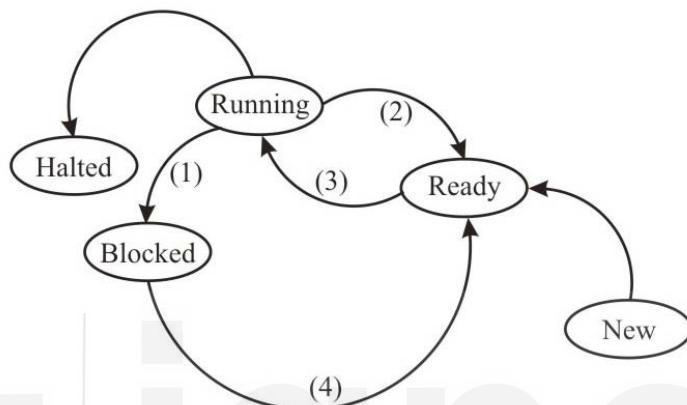
The first process, running *cat*, concatenates and outputs three files. Depending on the relative speed of the two processes, it may happen that *grep* is ready to run, but there is no input waiting for it. It must then block until some input is available. It is also possible for a process that is ready and able to run to be blocked because the operating system is decided to allocate the CPU to other process for a while.

A process state may be in one of the following:

- **New :** The process is being created.
- **Ready :** The process is waiting to be assigned to a processor.

- **Running :** Instructions are being executed.
- **Waiting/Suspended/Blocked :** The process is waiting for some event to occur.
- **Halted/Terminated :** The process has finished execution.

The transition of the process states are shown in *Figure 1*.and their corresponding transition are described below:



**Figure 1: Typical process states**

As shown in *Figure 1*, four transitions are possible among the states.

Transition 1 appears when a process discovers that it cannot continue. In order to get into blocked state, some systems must execute a system call *block*. In other systems, when a process reads from a pipe or special file and there is no input available, the process is automatically blocked.

Transition 2 and 3 are caused by the process scheduler, a part of the operating system. Transition 2 occurs when the scheduler decides that the running process has run long enough, and it is time to let another process have some CPU time. Transition 3 occurs when all other processes have had their share and it is time for the first process to run again.

Transition 4 appears when the external event for which a process was waiting was happened. If no other process is running at that instant, transition 3 will be triggered immediately, and the process will start running. Otherwise it may have to wait in ready state for a little while until the CPU is available.

Using the process model, it becomes easier to think about what is going on inside the system. There are many processes like user processes, disk processes, terminal processes, and so on, which may be blocked when they are waiting for something to happen. When the disk block has been read or the character typed, the process waiting for it is unblocked and is ready to run again.

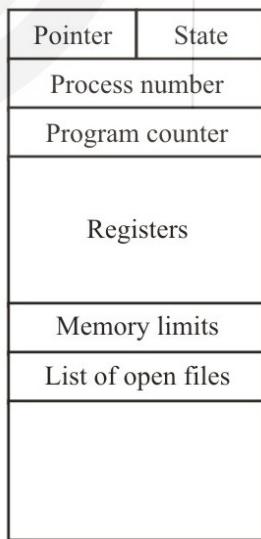
The process model, an integral part of an operating system, can be summarized as follows. The lowest level of the operating system is the scheduler with a number of processes on top of it. All the process handling, such as starting and stopping processes are done by the scheduler. More on the schedulers can be studied in the subsequent sections.

## 2.2.4 Implementation of Processes

To implement the process model, the operating system maintains a table, an array of structures, called the *process table or process control block (PCB) or Switch frame*. Each entry identifies a process with information such as process state, its program counter, stack pointer, memory allocation, the status of its open files, its accounting and scheduling information. In other words, it must contain everything about the process that must be saved when the process is switched from the running state to the ready state so that it can be restarted later as if it had never been stopped. The following is the information stored in a PCB.

- Process state, which may be new, ready, running, waiting or halted;
- Process number, each process is identified by its process number, called process ID;
- Program counter, which indicates the address of the next instruction to be executed for this process;
- CPU registers, which vary in number and type, depending on the concrete microprocessor architecture;
- Memory management information, which include base and bounds registers or page table;
- I/O status information, composed I/O requests, I/O devices allocated to this process, a list of open files and so on;
- Processor scheduling information, which includes process priority, pointers to scheduling queues and any other scheduling parameters;
- List of open files.

A process structure block is shown in *Figure 2*.



**Figure 2: Process Control Block Structure**

### Context Switch

A *context switch* (also sometimes referred to as a *process switch* or a *task switch*) is the switching of the CPU (central processing unit) from one process or to another.

A *context* is the contents of a CPU's registers and *program counter* at any point in time.

A context switch is sometimes described as the kernel suspending *execution of one process* on the CPU and resuming *execution of some other process* that had previously been suspended.

### Context Switch: Steps

In a context switch, the state of the first process must be saved somehow, so that, when the scheduler gets back to the execution of the first process, it can restore this state and continue normally.

The state of the process includes all the registers that the process may be using, especially the program counter, plus any other operating system specific data that may be necessary. Often, all the data that is necessary for state is stored in one data structure, called a process control block (PCB). Now, in order to switch processes, the PCB for the first process must be created and saved. The PCBs are sometimes stored upon a per-process stack in the kernel memory, or there may be some specific operating system defined data structure for this information.

Let us understand with the help of an example. Suppose if two processes A and B are in ready queue. If CPU is executing Process A and Process B is in wait state. If an interrupt occurs for Process A, the operating system suspends the execution of the first process, and stores the current information of Process A in its PCB and context to the second process namely Process B. In doing so, the program counter from the PCB of Process B is loaded, and thus execution can continue with the new process. The switching between two processes, Process A and Process B is illustrated in the *Figure 3* given below:

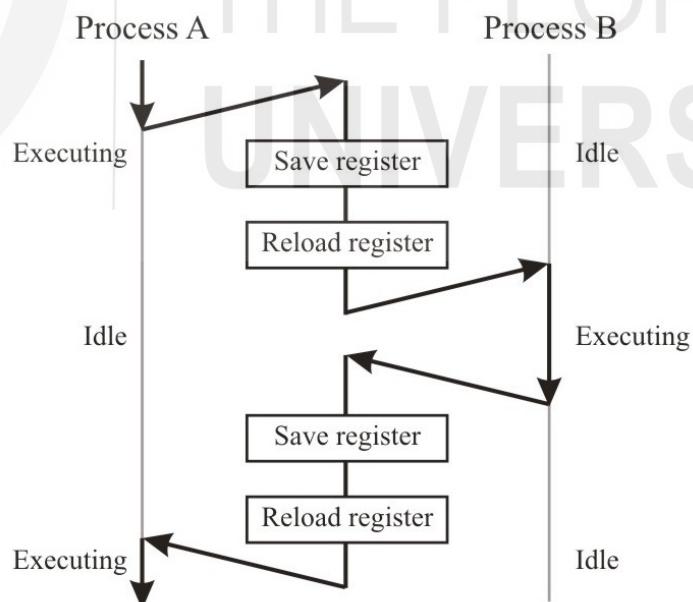


Figure 3: Process switching between two processes

### 2.2.5 Process Hierarchy

Modern general purpose operating systems permit a user to create and destroy processes. A process may create several new processes during its time of execution.

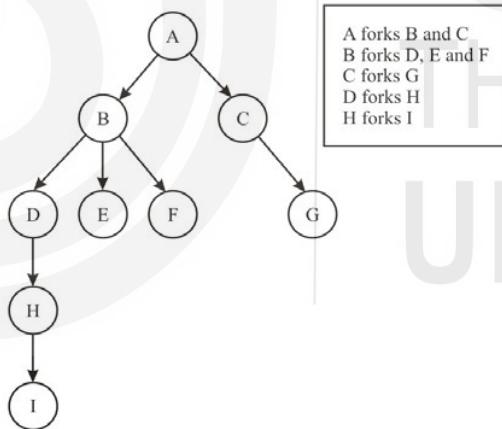
The creating process is called parent process, while the new processes are called child processes. There are different possibilities concerning creating new processes:

- **Execution:** The parent process continues to execute concurrently with its children processes or it waits until all of its children processes have terminated (sequential).
- **Sharing:** Either the parent and children processes share all resources (like memory or files) or the children processes share only a subset of their parent's resources or the parent and children processes share no resources in common.

A parent process can terminate the execution of one of its children for one of these reasons:

- The child process has exceeded its usage of the resources it has been allocated. In order to do this, a mechanism must be available to allow the parent process to inspect the state of its children processes.
- The task assigned to the child process is no longer required.

Let us discuss this concept with an example. In UNIX this is done by the **fork** system call, which creates a **child** process, and the **exit** system call, which terminates the current process. After a fork both parent and child keep running (indeed they have the *same* program text) and each can fork off other processes. This results in a process tree. The root of the tree is a special process created by the OS during startup. A process can *choose* to wait for children to terminate. For example, if C issued a `wait()` system call it would block until G finished. This is shown in the *Figure 4*.



**Figure 4: Process hierarchy**

Old or primitive operating system like MS-DOS are not multiprogrammed so when one process starts another, the first process is *automatically* blocked and waits until the second is finished.

## 2.2.6 Threads

*Threads*, sometimes called *lightweight processes* (LWPs) are independently scheduled parts of a single program. We say that a task is *multithreaded* if it is composed of several independent sub-processes which do work on common data, and if each of those pieces could (at least in principle) run in parallel.

If we write a program which uses threads – there is only one program, one executable file, one task in the normal sense. Threads simply enable us to split up that program

into logically separate pieces, and have the pieces run independently of one another, until they need to communicate. In a sense, threads are a further level of *object orientation* for multitasking systems. They allow certain *functions* to be executed in parallel with others.

On a truly parallel computer (several CPUs) we might imagine parts of a program (different subroutines) running on quite different processors, until they need to communicate. When one part of the program needs to send data to the other part, the two independent pieces must be synchronized, or be made to wait for one another. But what is the point of this? We can always run independent procedures in a program as separate *programs*, using the process mechanisms we have already introduced. They could communicate using normal interprocesses communication. Why introduce another new concept? Why do we need threads?

The point is that threads are cheaper than normal processes, and that they can be scheduled for execution in a user-dependent way, with less overhead. Threads are cheaper than a whole process because they do not have a full set of resources each. Whereas the process control block for a heavyweight process is large and costly to context switch, the PCBs for threads are much smaller, since each thread has only a stack and some registers to manage. It has no open file lists or resource lists, no accounting structures to update. All of these resources are shared by all threads within the process. Threads can be assigned priorities – a higher priority thread will get put to the front of the queue. Let's define heavy and lightweight processes with the help of a table.

Object	Resources
Thread (Light Weight Processes)	Stack, set of CPU registers, CPU time
Task (Heavy Weight Processes)	1 thread, PCB, Program code, memory segment etc.
Multithreaded task	$n$ - threads, PCB, Program code, memory segment etc.

### Why use threads?

The sharing of resources can be made more effective if the scheduler knows exactly what each program was going to do in advance. Of course, the scheduling algorithm can never know this – but the programmer who wrote the program does know. Using threads it is possible to organise the execution of a program in such a way that something is always being done, whenever the scheduler gives the heavyweight process CPU time.

- Threads allow a programmer to switch between lightweight processes when it is best for the program. (The programmer has control).
- A process which uses threads does not get more CPU time than an ordinary process – but the CPU time it gets is used to do work on the threads. It is possible to write a more efficient program by making use of threads.
- Inside a heavyweight process, threads are scheduled on a FCFS basis, unless the program decides to force certain threads to wait for other threads. If there is only one CPU, then only one thread can be running at a time.
- Threads context switch without any need to involve the kernel-the switching is performed by a user level library, so time is saved because the kernel doesn't need to know about the threads.

## 2.2.7 Levels of Threads

In modern operating systems, there are two levels at which threads operate: system or kernel threads and user level threads. If the kernel itself is multithreaded, the scheduler assigns CPU time on a thread basis rather than on a process basis. A kernel level thread behaves like a virtual CPU, or a power-point to which user-processes can connect in order to get computing power. The kernel has as many system level threads as it has CPUs and each of these must be shared between all of the user-threads on the system. In other words, the maximum number of user level threads which can be active at any one time is equal to the number of system level threads, which in turn is equal to the number of CPUs on the system.

Since threads work “inside” a single task, the normal process scheduler cannot normally tell which thread to run and which not to run – that is up to the program. When the kernel schedules a process for execution, it must then find out from that process which is the next thread it must execute. If the program is lucky enough to have more than one processor available, then several threads can be scheduled at the same time.

Some important implementations of threads are:

- The Mach System / OSF1 (user and system level)
- Solaris 1 (user level)
- Solaris 2 (user and system level)
- OS/2 (system level only)
- NT threads (user and system level)
- IRIX threads
- POSIX standardized user threads interface.

### ☞ Check Your Progress 1

1) Explain the difference between a process and a thread with some examples.

.....  
.....  
.....

2) Identify the different states a live process may occupy and show how a process moves between these states.

.....  
.....  
.....

3) Define what is meant by a context switch. Explain the reason many systems use two levels of scheduling.

.....  
.....  
.....

## 2.3 SYSTEM CALLS FOR PROCESS MANAGEMENT

In this section we will discuss system calls typically provided by the kernels of multiprogramming operating systems for process management. System calls provide the interface between a process and the operating system. These system calls are the routine services of the operating system. As an example of how system calls are used, consider writing a simple program to read data from one file and to copy them to another file. There are two names of two different files in which one input file and the other is the output file. One approach is for the program to ask the user for the names of the two files. In an interactive system, this approach will require a sequence of system calls, first to write a prompting message on the screen and then to read from the keyboard the character that the two files have. Once the two file names are obtained the program must open the input file and create the output file. Each of these operations requires another system call and may encounter possible error conditions. When the program tries to open the input file, it may find that no file of that name exists or that the file is protected against access. In these cases the program should print the message on the console and then terminate abnormally which require another system call. If the input file exists then we must create the new output file. We may find an output file with the same name. This situation may cause the program to abort or we may delete the existing file and create a new one. After opening both files, we may enter a loop that reads from input file and writes to output file. Each read and write must return status information regarding various possible error conditions. Finally, after the entire file is copied the program may close both files. Examples of some operating system calls are:

**Create:** In response to the *create* call the operating system creates a new process with the specified or default attributes and identifier. Some of the parameters definable at the process creation time include:

- level of privilege, such as system or user
- priority
- size and memory requirements
- maximum data area and/or stack size
- memory protection information and access rights
- other system dependent data.

**Delete:** The delete service is also called destroy, terminate or exit. Its execution causes the operating system to destroy the designated process and remove it from the system.

**Abort:** It is used to terminate the process forcibly. Although a process could conceivably abort itself, the most frequent use of this call is for involuntary terminations, such as removal of malfunctioning process from the system.

**Fork/Join:** Another method of process creation and termination is by means of *FORK/JOIN* pair, originally introduced as primitives for multiprocessor system. The *FORK* operations are used to split a sequence of instruction into two concurrently executable sequences. *JOIN* is used to merge the two sequences of code divided by the *FORK* and it is available to a parent process for synchronization with a child.

**Suspend:** The *suspend* system call is also called *BLOCK* in some systems. The designated process is suspended indefinitely and placed in the *suspend* state. A process may be suspended itself or another process when authorized to do so.

**Resume:** The *resume* system call is also called *WAKEUP* in some systems. This call resumes the target process, which is presumably suspended. Obviously a suspended process can not resume itself because a process must be running to have its operating system call processed. So a suspended process depends on a partner process to issue the resume.

**Delay:** The system call *delay* is also known as *SLEEP*. The target process is suspended for the duration of the specified time period. The time may be expressed in terms of system clock ticks that are system dependent and not portable or in standard time units such as seconds and minutes. A process may delay itself or optionally, delay some other process.

**Get\_Attributes:** It is an enquiry to which the operating system responds by providing the current values of the process attributes, or their specified subset, from the PCB.

**Change Priority:** It is an instance of a more general SET-PROCESS-ATTRIBUTES system call. Obviously, this call is not implemented in systems where process priority is static.

## 2.4 PROCESS SCHEDULING

Scheduling is a fundamental operating system function. All computer resources are scheduled before use. Since CPU is one of the primary computer resources, its scheduling is central to operating system design. **Scheduling** refers to a set of policies and mechanisms supported by operating system that controls the order in which the work to be done is completed. A **scheduler** is an operating system program (module) that selects the next job to be admitted for execution. The main objective of scheduling is to increase CPU utilisation and higher throughput. **Throughput** is the amount of work accomplished in a given **time interval**. CPU scheduling is the basis of operating system which supports multiprogramming concepts. By having a number of programs in computer memory at the same time, the CPU may be shared among them. This mechanism improves the overall efficiency of the computer system by getting more work done in less time. In this section we will describe the scheduling objectives, the three types of schedulers and performance criteria that schedulers may use in maximizing system performance. Finally at the end of the unit, we will study various scheduling algorithms.

### 2.4.1 Scheduling Objectives

The primary objective of scheduling is to improve system performance. Various objectives of the scheduling are as follows:

- **Maximize throughput:** Scheduling should attempt to service the largest possible number of processes per unit time.
- Maximize the number of interactive user receiving acceptable response times.
- **Be predictable:** A given job should utilize the same amount of time and should cost the same regardless of the load on the system.

- **Minimize overhead:** Scheduling should minimize the wasted resources overhead.
- **Balance resource use:** The scheduling mechanisms should keep the resources of the system busy. Processes that will use under utilized resources should be favoured.
- **Achieve a balance between response and utilisation:** The best way to guarantee good response times is to have sufficient resources available whenever they are needed. In real time system fast responses are essential, and resource utilisation is less important.
- **Avoid indefinite postponement :** It would be fair if all processes are treated the same, and no process can suffer indefinite postponement.
- **Enforce Priorities:** In environments in which processes are given priorities, the scheduling mechanism should favour the higher-priority processes.
- **Give preference to processes holding key resources:** Even though a low priority process may be holding a key resource, the process may be in demand by high priority processes. If the resource is not perceptible, then the scheduling mechanism should give the process better treatment than it would ordinarily receive so that the process will release the key resource sooner.
- **Degrad e gracefully under heavy loads:** A scheduling mechanism should not collapse under heavy system load. Either it should prevent excessive loading by not allowing new processes to be created when the load is heavy or it should provide service to the heavier load by providing a moderately reduced level of service to all processes.

#### 2.4.2 Types of Schedulers

If we consider batch systems, there will often be more processes submitted than the number of processes that can be executed immediately. So, the incoming processes are spooled onto a disk. There are three types of schedulers. They are:

- Short term scheduler
- Long term scheduler
- Medium term scheduler

**Short term scheduler:** The short-term scheduler selects the process for the processor among the processes which are already in queue (in memory). The scheduler will execute quite frequently (mostly at least once every 10 milliseconds). It has to be very fast in order to achieve a better processor utilization. The short term scheduler, like all other OS programs, has to execute on the processor. If it takes 1 millisecond to choose a process that means  $(1 / (10 + 1)) = 9\%$  of the processor time is being used for short time scheduling and only 91% may be used by processes for execution.

**Long term scheduler:** The long-term scheduler selects processes from the process pool and loads selected processes into memory for execution. The long-term scheduler executes much less frequently when compared with the short term scheduler. It controls the degree of multiprogramming (no. of processes in memory at a time). If the degree of multiprogramming is to be kept stable (say 10 processes at a time), the long-term

Scheduler may only need to be invoked till the process finishes execution. The long-term scheduler must select a good process mix of I/O-bound and processor bound processes. If most of the processes selected are I/O-bound, then the ready queue will almost be empty, while the device queue(s) will be very crowded. If most of the processes are processor-bound, then the device queue(s) will almost be empty while the ready queue is very crowded and that will cause the short-term scheduler to be invoked very frequently. Time-sharing systems (mostly) have no long-term scheduler. The stability of these systems either depends upon a physical limitation (no. of available terminals) or the self-adjusting nature of users (if you can't get response, you quit). It can sometimes be good to reduce the degree of multiprogramming by removing processes from memory and storing them on disk. These processes can then be reintroduced into memory by the **medium-term scheduler**. This operation is also known as swapping. Swapping may be necessary to improve the process mix or to free memory.

### 2.4.3 Scheduling Criteria

The goal of scheduling algorithm is to identify the process whose selection will result in the “best” possible system performance. There are different scheduling algorithms, which has different properties and may favour one class of processes over another, which algorithm is best, to determine this there are different characteristics used for comparison. The scheduling algorithms which we will discuss in the next section, determines the importance of each of the criteria.

In order to achieve an efficient processor management, OS tries to select the most appropriate process from the ready queue. For selecting, the relative importance of the following may be considered as performance criteria:

**CPU Utilization:** The key idea is that if the CPU is busy all the time, the utilization factor of all the components of the system will be also high. CPU utilization is the ratio of busy time of the processor to the total time passes for processes to finish.

**Processor Utilization = (Processor busy time) / (Processor busy time + Processor idle time)**

**Throughput:** It refers to the amount of work completed in a unit of time. One way to measure throughput is by means of the number of processes that are completed in a unit of time. The higher the number of processes, the more work apparently is being done by the system. But this approach is not very useful for comparison because this is dependent on the characteristics and resource requirement of the process being executed. Therefore to compare throughput of several scheduling algorithms it should be fed into the process with similar requirements. The throughput can be calculated by using the formula:

**Throughput = (No. of processes completed) / (Time unit)**

**Turnaround Time :** It may be defined as interval from the time of submission of a process to the time of its completion. It is the sum of the periods spent waiting to get into memory, waiting in the ready queue, CPU time and I/O operations.

**Turnaround Time =  $t(\text{Process completed}) - t(\text{Process submitted})$**

**Waiting Time:** This is the time spent in the ready queue. In multiprogramming operating system several jobs reside at a time in memory. CPU executes only one job at a time.

The rest of jobs wait for the CPU. The waiting time may be expressed as turnaround time, less than the actual processing time.

***Waiting time = Turnaround Time - Processing Time***

But the scheduling algorithm affects or considers the amount of time that a process spends waiting in a ready queue. Thus rather than looking at turnaround time waiting time is usually the waiting time for each process.

**Response time:** It is most frequently considered in time sharing and real time operating system. However, its characteristics differ in the two systems. In time sharing system it may be defined as interval from the time the last character of a command line of a program or transaction is entered to the time the last result appears on the terminal. In real time system it may be defined as interval from the time an internal or external event is signalled to the time the first instruction of the respective service routine is executed.

***Response time = t(first response) – t(submission of request)***

One of the problems in designing schedulers and selecting a set of its performance criteria is that they often conflict with each other. For example, the fastest response time in time sharing and real time system may result in low CPU utilization.

Throughput and CPU utilization may be increased by executing the large number of processes, but then response time may suffer. Therefore, the design of a scheduler usually requires balance of all the different requirements and constraints. In the next section we will discuss various scheduling algorithms.

 **Check Your Progress 2**

- 1) Distinguish between a foreground and a background process in UNIX.  
.....  
.....  
.....
- 2) Identify the information which must be maintained by the operating system for each live process.  
.....  
.....  
.....

---

## 2.5 SCHEDULING ALGORITHMS

---

Now let's discuss some processor scheduling algorithms again stating that the goal is to select the most appropriate process in the ready queue.

CPU scheduling deals with the problem of deciding which of the processes in the ready queue is to be allocated to the CPU. There are several scheduling algorithms which will be examined in this section. A major division among scheduling algorithms is that whether they support **pre-emptive** or **non-preemptive scheduling discipline**.

**Preemptive scheduling:** Preemption means the operating system moves a process from running to ready without the process requesting it. An OS implementing this algorithm switches to the processing of a new request before completing the processing of the current request. The preempted request is put back into the list of the pending requests. Its servicing would be resumed sometime in the future when it is scheduled again. Preemptive scheduling is more useful in high priority process which requires immediate response. For example, in Real time system the consequence of missing one interrupt could be dangerous.

Round Robin scheduling, priority based scheduling or event driven scheduling and SRTN are considered to be the preemptive scheduling algorithms.

**Non–Preemptive scheduling:** A scheduling discipline is non-preemptive if once a process has been allotted to the CPU, the CPU cannot be taken away from the process. A non-preemptible discipline always processes a scheduled request to its completion. In non-preemptive systems, jobs are made to wait by longer jobs, but the treatment of all processes is fairer.

First come First Served (FCFS) and Shortest Job First (SJF), are considered to be the non-preemptive scheduling algorithms.

The decision whether to schedule preemptive or not depends on the environment and the type of application most likely to be supported by a given operating system.

### 2.5.1 First-Come First-Serve (FCFS)

The simplest scheduling algorithm is First Come First Serve (FCFS). Jobs are scheduled in the order they are received. FCFS is non-preemptive. Implementation is easily accomplished by implementing a queue of the processes to be scheduled or by storing the time the process was received and selecting the process with the earliest time.

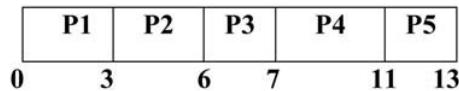
FCFS tends to favour CPU-Bound processes. Consider a system with a CPU-bound process and a number of I/O-bound processes. The I/O bound processes will tend to execute briefly, then block for I/O. A CPU bound process in the ready should not have to wait long before being made runnable. The system will frequently find itself with all the I/O-Bound processes blocked and CPU-bound process running. As the I/O operations complete, the ready Queue fill up with the I/O bound processes.

Under some circumstances, CPU utilisation can also suffer. In the situation described above, once a CPU-bound process does issue an I/O request, the CPU can return to process all the I/O-bound processes. If their processing completes before the CPU-bound process's I/O completes, the CPU sits idle. So with no preemption, component utilisation and the system throughput rate may be quite low.

#### Example:

Calculate the turn around time, waiting time, average turnaround time, average waiting time, throughput and processor utilization for the given set of processes that arrive **at a given arrive time** shown in the table, with the length of processing time given in milliseconds:

Process	Arrival Time	Processing Time
P1	0	3
P2	2	3
P3	3	1
P4	5	4
P5	8	2



Time	Process Completed	Turn around Time = t(Process Completed) - t(Process Submitted)	Waiting Time = Turn around time - Processing time
0	-	-	-
3	P1	3 - 0 = 3	3 - 3 = 0
6	P2	6 - 2 = 4	4 - 3 = 1
7	P3	7 - 3 = 4	4 - 1 = 3
11	P4	11 - 5 = 6	6 - 4 = 2
13	P5	13 - 8 = 5	5 - 2 = 3

$$\text{Average turn around time} = (3+4+4+6+5) / 5 = 4.4$$

$$\text{Average waiting time} = (0+1+3+2+3) / 5 = 1.8$$

$$\text{Processor utilization} = (13/13)*100 = 100\%$$

$$\text{Throughput} = 5/13 = 0.38$$

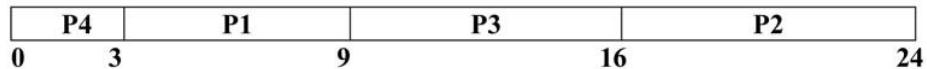
**Note:** If all the processes arrive at time 0, then the order of scheduling will be P3, P5, P1, P2 and P4. By taking arrival time as 0 for all the processes, calculate the above parameters and see the difference in the values.

### 2.5.2 Shortest-Job First (SJF)

This algorithm is assigned to the process that has smallest next CPU processing time, when the CPU is available. In case of a tie, FCFS scheduling algorithm can be used. It is originally implemented in a batch-processing environment. SJF relied on a time estimate supplied with the batch job.

As an example, consider the following set of processes with the following processing time which arrived at the same time.

Process	Processing Time
P1	06
P2	08
P3	07
P4	03



Because the shortest processing time is of the process P4, then process P1 and then

P3 and Process P2. The waiting time for process P1 is 3 ms, for process P2 is 16 ms, for process P3 is 9 ms and for the process P4 is 0 ms as –

Time	Process Completed	Turn around Time = t (Process Completed)– t (Process Submitted)	Waiting Time = Turn around time – Processing time
0	-	-	-
3	P4	3 – 0 = 3	3 – 3 = 0
9	P1	9 – 0 = 9	9 – 6 = 3
16	P3	16 – 0 = 16	16 – 7 = 9
24	P2	24 – 0= 24	24 – 8 = 16

$$\text{Average turn around time} = (3+9+16+24)/4 = 13$$

$$\text{Average waiting time} = (0+3+9+16)/4 = 7$$

$$\text{Processor utilization} = (24/24)*100 = 100\%$$

$$\text{Throughput} = 4/24 = 0.16$$

### 2.5.3 Round Robin (RR)

Round Robin (RR) scheduling is a preemptive algorithm that relates the process that has been waiting the longest. This is one of the oldest, simplest and widely used algorithms. The round robin scheduling algorithm is primarily used in time-sharing and a multi-user system environment where the primary requirement is to provide reasonably good response times and in general to share the system fairly among all system users. Basically the CPU time is divided into time slices.

Each process is allocated a small time-slice called quantum. No process can run for more than one quantum while others are waiting in the ready queue. If a process needs more CPU time to complete after exhausting one quantum, it goes to the end of ready queue to await the next allocation. To implement the RR scheduling, Queue data structure is used to maintain the Queue of Ready processes. A new process is added at the tail of that Queue. The CPU scheduler picks the first process from the ready Queue, Allocate processor for a specified time Quantum. After that time the CPU scheduler will select the next process is the ready Queue.

Consider the following set of process with the processing time given in milliseconds.

Process	Processing Time
P1	24
P2	03
P3	03

If we use a time **Quantum of 4 milliseconds** then process P1 gets the first 4 milliseconds. Since it requires another 20 milliseconds, it is preempted after the first time Quantum, and the CPU is given to the next process in the Queue, Process P2. Since process P2 does not need and milliseconds, it quits before its time Quantum expires. The CPU is then given to the next process, Process P3 one each process has received 1 time Quantum, the CPU is returned to process P1 for an additional time quantum. The Gantt chart will be:

P1	P2	P3	P1	P1	P1	P1	P1
0	4	7	10	14	18	22	26

Process	Processing Time	Turn around time = t(Process Completed) – t(Process Submitted)	Waiting Time = Turn around time – Processing time
P1	24	$30 - 0 = 30$	$30 - 24 = 6$
P2	03	$7 - 0 = 7$	$7 - 3 = 4$
P3	03	$10 - 0 = 10$	$10 - 3 = 7$

$$\text{Average turn around time} = (30+7+10)/3 = 47/3 = 15.66$$

$$\text{Average waiting time} = (6+4+7)/3 = 17/3 = 5.66$$

$$\text{Throughput} = 3/30 = 0.1$$

$$\text{Processor utilization} = (30/30) * 100 = 100\%$$

#### 2.5.4 Shortest Remaining Time Next (SRTN)

This is the preemptive version of shortest job first. This permits a process that enters the ready list to preempt the running process if the time for the new process (or for its next burst) is less than the *remaining* time for the running process (or for its current burst). Let us understand with the help of an example.

Consider the set of four processes arrived as per timings described in the table:

Process	Arrival time	Processing time
P1	0	5
P2	1	2
P3	2	5
P4	3	3

At time 0, only process P1 has entered the system, so it is the process that executes. At time 1, process P2 arrives. At that time, process P1 has 4 time units left to execute. At this juncture process 2's processing time is less compared to the P1 left out time (4 units). So P2 starts executing at time 1. At time 2, process P3 enters the system with the processing time 5 units. Process P2 continues executing as it has the minimum number of time units when compared with P1 and P3. At time 3, process P2 terminates and process P4 enters the system. Of the processes P1, P3 and P4, P4 has the smallest remaining execution time so it starts executing. When process P1 terminates at time 10, process P3 executes. The Gantt chart is shown below:

P1	P2	P4	P1	P3	
0	1	3	6	10	15

Turnaround time for each process can be computed by subtracting the time it terminated from the arrival time.

$$\text{Turn around Time} = t(\text{Process Completed}) - t(\text{Process Submitted})$$

The turnaround time for each of the processes is:

$$\text{P1: } 10 - 0 = 10$$

$$\text{P2: } 3 - 1 = 2$$

$$\text{P3: } 15 - 2 = 13$$

$$\text{P4: } 6 - 3 = 3$$

The average turnaround time is  $(10+2+13+3)/4 = 7$

The waiting time can be computed by subtracting processing time from turnaround time, yielding the following 4 results for the processes as

$$P1: 10 - 5 = 5$$

$$P2: 2 - 2 = 0$$

$$P3: 13 - 5 = 8$$

$$P4: 3 - 3 = 0$$

The average waiting time =  $(5+0+8+0)/4 = 3.25$  milliseconds

Four jobs executed in 15 time units, so throughput is  $15/4 = 3.75$  time units/job.

### 2.5.5 Priority Based Scheduling or Event-Driven (ED) Scheduling

A priority is associated with each process and the scheduler always picks up the highest priority process for execution from the ready queue. Equal priority processes are scheduled FCFS. The level of priority may be determined on the basis of resource requirements, processes characteristics and its run time behaviour.

A major problem with a priority based scheduling is indefinite blocking of a low priority process by a high priority process. In general, completion of a process within finite time cannot be guaranteed with this scheduling algorithm. A solution to the problem of indefinite blockage of low priority process is provided by aging priority. Aging priority is a technique of gradually increasing the priority of processes (of low priority) that wait in the system for a long time. Eventually, the older processes attain high priority and are ensured of completion in a finite time.

As an example, consider the following set of five processes, assumed to have arrived at the same time with the length of processor timing in milliseconds:—

Process	Processing Time	Priority
P1	10	3
P2	1	1
P3	2	4
P4	1	5
P5	5	2

Using priority scheduling we would schedule these processes according to the following Gantt chart:

P2	P5	P1	P3	P4
0	1	6	16	18 19

Time	Process Completed	Turn around Time = t(Process Completed) – t(Process Submitted)	Waiting Time = Turn around time – Processing time
0	-	-	-
1	P2	1 – 0 = 1	1 – 1 = 0
6	P5	6 – 0 = 6	6 – 2 = 4
16	P1	16 – 0 = 16	16 – 10 = 6
18	P3	18 – 0 = 18	18 – 2 = 16
19	P4	19 – 0 = 19	19 – 3 = 16

Average turn around time =  $(1+6+16+18+19) / 5 = 60/5 = 12$

Average waiting time =  $(6+0+16+18+1) / 5 = 8.2$

Throughput =  $5/19 = 0.26$

Processor utilization =  $(30/30) * 100 = 100\%$

Priorities can be defined either internally or externally. Internally defined priorities use one measurable quantity or quantities to complete the priority of a process.

## **2.6 PERFORMANCE EVALUATION OF THE SCHEDULING ALGORITHMS**

Performance of an algorithm for a given set of processes can be analyzed if the appropriate information about the process is provided. But how do we select a CPU-scheduling algorithm for a particular system? There are many scheduling algorithms so the selection of an algorithm for a particular system can be difficult. To select an algorithm there are some specific criteria such as:

- Maximize CPU utilization with the maximum response time.
- Maximize throughput.

For example, assume that we have the following five processes arrived at time 0, in the order given with the length of CPU time given in milliseconds.

<b>Process</b>	<b>Processing time</b>
P1	10
P2	29
P3	03
P4	07
P5	12

First come first served

For FCI

<b>P1</b>	<b>P2</b>	<b>P3</b>	<b>P4</b>	<b>P5</b>	
0	10	39	42	49	61

<b>Process</b>	<b>Processing time</b>	<b>Waiting time</b>
P1	10	0
P2	29	10
P3	03	39
P4	07	42
P5	12	49

Average Waiting Time:  $(0+10+39+42+49) / 5 = 28$  milliseconds.

Now consider the SJF scheduling, the Gantt chart will be:

<b>P3</b>	<b>P4</b>	<b>P1</b>	<b>P5</b>	<b>P2</b>
0	3	10	20	32

Process	Processing time	Waiting time
P1	10	10
P2	29	32
P3	03	00
P4	07	03
P5	12	20

A

N

T

P1	P2	P3	P4	P5	P2	P5	P2
0	10	20	23	30	40	49	52

Process	Processing time	Waiting time
P1	10	0
P2	29	32
P3	03	20
P4	07	23
P5	12	40

$$\text{Average waiting time} = (0+32+20+23+40) / 5 = 23 \text{ milliseconds}$$

Now if we compare average waiting time above algorithms, we see that SJF policy results in less than one half of the average waiting time to that of FCFS scheduling; the RR algorithm gives us an intermediate value.

So performance of algorithm can be measured when all the necessary information is provided.

### ☞ Check Your Progress 3

- 1) Explain the difference between voluntary or co-operative scheduling and preemptive scheduling. Give two examples of preemptive and of non-preemptive scheduling algorithms.
- .....  
.....  
.....  
.....

- 2) Outline how different process priorities can be implemented in a scheduling algorithm. Explain why these priorities need to be dynamically adjusted.
- .....  
.....  
.....  
.....

- 3) Draw the Gantt chart for the FCFS policy, considering the following set of processes that arrive at time 0, with the length of CPU time given in milliseconds. Also calculate the Average Waiting Time.

Process	Processing Time
P1	13
P2	08
P3	83

- 4) For the given five processes arriving at time 0, in the order with the length of CPU time in milliseconds:

Process	Processing Time
P1	10
P2	29
P3	03
P4	07

Consider the FCFS, SJF and RR (time slice= 10 milliseconds) scheduling algorithms for the above set of process which algorithm would give the minimum average waiting time?

## 2.7 SUMMARY

A process is an instance of a program in execution. A process can be defined by the system or process is an important concept in modern operating system. Processes provide a suitable means for informing the operating system about independent activities that may be scheduled for concurrent execution. Each process is represented by a process control block (PCB). Several PCB's can be linked together to form a queue of waiting processes. The selection and allocation of processes is done by a scheduler. There are several scheduling algorithms. We have discussed FCFS, SJF, RR, SJRT and priority algorithms along with the performance evaluation.

## 2.8 SOLUTIONS/ANSWERS

### Check Your Progress 1

- 1) A process is an instance of an executing program and its data. For example, if you

were editing 3 files simultaneously, you would have 3 processes, even though they might be sharing the same code.

A thread is often called a lightweight process. It is a “child” and has all the state information associated with a child process but does not run in a separate address space i.e., doesn’t have its own memory. Since they share memory, each thread has access to all variables and any change made by one thread impacts all the others. Threads are useful in multi-client servers where each thread can service a separate client connection. In some stand-alone processes where you can split the processing such that one thread can continue processing while another is blocked e.g., waiting for an I/O request or a timer thread can implement a regular repaint of a graphics canvas.

This is how simple animations are accomplished in systems like NT and Windows95. Unix is a single-threaded operating system and can’t do this at the operating system level although some applications e.g., Java can support it via software.

- 2) A process can be in one of the following states:

**Ready i.e., in the scheduling queue waiting it’s turn for the CPU**

**Running i.e., currently occupying the CPU**

**Blocked i.e., sleeping waiting for a resource request to be satisfied.**

**Halted i.e., process execution is over.**

- A process moves from ready to running, when it is dispatched by the scheduler.
- A process moves from running to ready, when it is pre-empted by the scheduler.
- A process moves from running to blocked when it issues a request for a resource.
- A process moves from blocked to ready when completion of the request is signaled.

- 3) A context switch occurs whenever a different process is moved into the CPU. The current state of the existing process (register and stack contents, resources like open files etc.) must be stored and the state of the new process restored. There is a significant overhead in context switching. However, in a system with Virtual Memory, some processes and some of the state information will be swapped to disks. The overhead involved here is too great to undertake each quantum. Such systems use a two-level scheduler. The high-level scheduler is responsible for bringing ready processes from disk into memory and adding them to ready queue. This is done regularly (e.g., every 10 secs) but not each quantum (e.g., < every 100 msecs). The low level scheduler is responsible for the context switching between CPU and ready queue.

### Check Your Progress 2

- 1) Every process has a parent which invoked it. In the UNIX environment, the parent can wait for the child to complete after invoking it (foreground child process) or continue in a ready state (background child process).

- 2) For each process, the operating system needs to maintain
- id information - process id, parent process id
  - summary status - blocked, ready, running, swapped to disk
  - owner information - user id, group id
  - scheduling info - priority, nice value, CPU usage
  - location info - resident or not, memory areas allocated
  - state info - register values (instruction pointer etc.), stack, resources like open files etc.

### Check Your Progress 3

- 1) Preemptive multi-tasking means that the operating system decides when a process has had its quantum of CPU, and removes it from the CPU to the ready queue. This is present in UNIX, NT and Windows 95.

Voluntary and co-operative means that only the process itself decide to vacate the CPU e.g., when it finishes or blocks on a request or yields the CPU. This is what Windows3.x uses.

First Come First Served is a typical non-preemptive algorithm.

Round Robin and Priority Queues are typical preemptive algorithms.

Shortest Job First can be either.

- 2) Some processes are more critical to overall operation than others e.g., kernel activity. I/O bound processes, which seldom use a full quantum, need a boost over compute bound tasks. This priority can be implemented by any combination of higher positioning in the ready queue for higher priority more frequent occurrences in the ready list for different priorities different quantum lengths for different priorities. Priority scheduling is liable to **starvation**. A succession of high priority processes may result in a low priority process never reaching the head of the ready list. Priority is normal a combination of static priority (set by the user or the class of the process) and a dynamic adjustment based on it's history (e.g., how long it has been waiting). NT and Linux also boost priority when processes return from waiting for I/O.

- 3) If the process arrives in the order P1, P2 and P3, then the Gantt chart will be as:

P1	P2	P3	
0	13	21	104

Process	Processing time	Waiting Time
P1	13	00
P2	08	13
P3	83	21

Average Waiting Time:  $(0+13+21)/3 = 11.33$  ms.

- 4) For FCFS algorithm the Gantt chart is as follows:

P1	P2	P3	P4	P5	
0	10	39	42	49	51

Processes

Process	Processing Time	Waiting time
P1	10	0
P2	29	10
P3	3	39
P4	7	42
P5	12	49

P3	P4	P1	P5	P2	
0	3	10	20	32	61

Process	Processing Time	Waiting time
P1	10	10
P2	29	32
P3	3	00
P4	7	3
P5	12	20

Average Waiting Time =  $(10+32+00+03+20)/5 = 13$  milliseconds.

With round robin scheduling algorithm (time quantum = 10 milliseconds)

P1	P2	P3	P4	P5	P6	P7	P8	
0	10	20	23	30	40	50	52	61

Process	Processing Time	Waiting time
P1	10	0
P2	29	32
P3	03	20
P4	07	23
P5	12	40

Average Waiting Time =  $(0+32+20+23+40)/5 = 23$  milliseconds.

From the above calculations of average waiting time we found that SJF policy results in less than one half of the average waiting time obtained from FCFS, while Round Robin gives intermediate result.

## 2.9 FURTHER READINGS

- 1) Abraham Silberschatz and James L, *Operating system Concepts*.  
Peterson, Addison Wesley Publishing Company.
- 2) Andrew S. Tanenbaum, *Operating System Design and Implementation*, PHI
- 3) D.M. Dhamdhere, *Operating Systems, A Concept-based Approach*, TMGH, 2002.

- 4) Harvay M. Deital, *Introduction to Operating Systems*, Addison Wesley Publishing Company
- 5) Madnick and Donovan, *Operating systems – Concepts and Design* McGrawHill Intl. Education.
- 6) Milan Milenkovic, *Operating Systems, Concepts and Design*, TMGH, 2000.



## **UNIT 3 INTERPROCESS COMMUNICATION AND SYNCHRONIZATION**

---

### **Structure**

- 3.1 Introduction
- 3.2 Objectives
- 3.3 Interprocess Communication
  - 3.3.1 Shared-Memory System
  - 3.3.2 Message-Passing System
- 3.4 Interprocess Synchronization
  - 3.4.1 Serialization
  - 3.4.2 Mutexes: Mutual Exclusion
  - 3.4.3 Critical Sections: The Mutex Solution
  - 3.4.4 Dekker's Solution for Mutual Exclusion
  - 3.4.5 Bakery's Algorithm
- 3.5 Semaphores
- 3.6 Classical Problems in Concurrent Programming
  - 3.6.1 Producers/Consumers Problem
  - 3.6.2 Readers and Writers Problem
  - 3.6.3 Dining- Philosophers Problem
  - 3.6.4 Sleeping Barber Problem
- 3.7 Locks
- 3.8 Monitors and Condition Variables
- 3.9 Summary
- 3.10 Solution/Answers
- 3.11 Further Readings

---

### **3.1 INTRODUCTION**

---

In the earlier unit we have studied the concept of processes. In addition to process scheduling, another important responsibility of the operating system is process synchronization. Synchronization involves the orderly sharing of system resources by processes.

Concurrency specifies two or more sequential programs (a sequential program specifies sequential execution of a list of statements) that may be executed concurrently as a parallel process. For example, an airline reservation system that involves processing transactions from many terminals has a natural specification as a concurrent program in which each terminal is controlled by its own sequential process. Even when processes are not executed simultaneously, it is often easier to structure as a collection of cooperating sequential processes rather than as a single sequential program.

A simple batch operating system can be viewed as 3 processes-a reader process, an executor process and a printer process. The reader reads cards from card reader and

places card images in an input buffer. The executor process reads card images from input buffer and performs the specified computation and store the result in an output buffer. The printer process retrieves the data from the output buffer and writes them to a printer. Concurrent processing is the basis of operating system which supports multiprogramming.

The operating system supports concurrent execution of a program without necessarily supporting elaborate form of memory and file management. This form of operation is also known as multitasking. One of the benefits of multitasking is that several processes can be made to cooperate in order to achieve their goals. To do this, they must do one of the following:

**Communicate:** Interprocess communication (IPC) involves sending information from one process to another. This can be achieved using a “mailbox” system, a socket which behaves like a virtual communication network (loopback), or through the use of “pipes”. Pipes are a system construction which enable one process to open another process as if it were a file for writing or reading.

**Share Data:** A segment of memory must be available to both the processes. (Most memory is locked to a single process).

**Waiting:** Some processes wait for other processes to give a signal before continuing. This is an issue of synchronization.

In order to cooperate concurrently executing processes must communicate and synchronize. Interprocess communication is based on the use of *shared variables* (variables that can be referenced by more than one process) or *message passing*.

Synchronization is often necessary when processes communicate. Processes are executed with unpredictable speeds. Yet to communicate one process must perform some action such as setting the value of a variable or sending a message that the other detects. This only works if the events perform an action or detect an action are constrained to happen in that order. Thus one can view synchronization as a set of constraints on the ordering of events. The programmer employs a synchronization mechanism to delay execution of a process in order to satisfy such constraints.

In this unit, let us study the concept of interprocess communication and synchronization, need of semaphores, classical problems in concurrent processing, critical regions, monitors and message passing.

---

## 3.2 OBJECTIVES

---

**After studying this unit, you should be able to:**

- identify the significance of interprocess communication and synchronization;
- describe the two ways of interprocess communication namely shared memory and message passing;
- discuss the usage of semaphores, locks and monitors in interprocess and synchronization, and
- solve classical problems in concurrent programming.

### 3.3 INTERPROCESS COMMUNICATION

Interprocess communication (IPC) is a capability supported by operating system that allows one *process* to communicate with another process. The processes can be running on the same computer or on different computers connected through a network. IPC enables one application to control another application, and for several applications to share the same data without interfering with one another. IPC is required in all multiprogramming systems, but it is not generally supported by single-process operating systems such as DOS. OS/2 and MS-Windows support an IPC mechanism called Dynamic Data Exchange.

IPC allows the process to communicate and to synchronize their actions without sharing the same address space. This concept can be illustrated with the example of a shared printer as given below:

Consider a machine with a single printer running a time-sharing operation system. If a process needs to print its results, it must request that the operating system gives it access to the printer's device driver. At this point, the operating system must decide whether to grant this request, depending upon whether the printer is already being used by another process. If it is not, the operating system should grant the request and allow the process to continue; otherwise, the operating system should deny the request and perhaps classify the process as a waiting process until the printer becomes available. Indeed, if two processes were given simultaneous access to the machine's printer, the results would be worthless to both.

Consider the following related definitions to understand the example in a better way:

*Critical Resource:* It is a resource shared with constraints on its use (e.g., memory, files, printers, etc).

*Critical Section:* It is code that accesses a critical resource.

*Mutual Exclusion:* At most one process may be executing a critical section with respect to a particular critical resource simultaneously.

In the example given above, the printer is the *critical resource*. Let's suppose that the processes which are sharing this resource are called process A and process B. The *critical sections* of process A and process B are the sections of the code which issue the print command. In order to ensure that both processes do not attempt to use the printer at the same, they must be granted *mutually exclusive* access to the printer driver.

First we consider the interprocess communication part. There exist two complementary inter-process communication types: a) shared-memory system and b) message-passing system. It is clear that these two schemes are not mutually exclusive, and could be used simultaneously within a single operating system.

#### 3.3.1 Shared-Memory System

Shared-memory systems require communication processes to share some variables. The processes are expected to exchange information through the use of these shared variables. In a shared-memory scheme, the responsibility for providing communication rests with the application programmers. The operating system only needs to provide shared memory.

A critical problem occurring in shared-memory system is that two or more processes are reading or writing some shared variables or shared data, and the final results depend on who runs precisely and when. Such situations are called *race conditions*. In order to avoid race conditions we must find some way to prevent more than one process from reading and writing shared variables or shared data at the same time, i.e., we need the concept of *mutual exclusion* (which we will discuss in the later section). It must be sure that if one process is using a shared variable, the other process will be excluded from doing the same thing.

### 3.3.2 Message-Passing System

Message passing systems allow communication processes to exchange messages. In this scheme, the responsibility rests with the operating system itself.

The function of a message-passing system is to allow processes to communicate with each other without the need to resort to shared variable. An interprocess communication facility basically provides two operations: *send* (message) and *receive* (message). In order to send and to receive messages, a communication link must exist between two involved processes. This link can be implemented in different ways. The possible basic implementation questions are:

- How are links established?
- Can a link be associated with more than two processes?
- How many links can there be between every pair of process?
- What is the capacity of a link? That is, does the link have some buffer space? If so, how much?
- What is the size of the message? Can the link accommodate variable size or fixed-size message?
- Is the link unidirectional or bi-directional?

In the following we consider several methods for logically implementing a communication link and the send/receive operations. These methods can be classified into two categories: a) Naming, consisting of direct and indirect communication and b) Buffering, consisting of capacity and messages proprieties.

#### Direct Communication

In direct communication, each process that wants to send or receive a message must explicitly name the recipient or sender of the communication. In this case, the send and receive primitives are defined as follows:

- send (P, message)                          To send a message to process P
- receive (Q, message)                        To receive a message from process Q

This scheme shows the *symmetry* in addressing, i.e., both the sender and the receiver have to name one another in order to communicate. In contrast to this, *asymmetry* in addressing can be used, i.e., only the sender has to name the recipient; the recipient is not required to name the sender. So the send and receive primitives can be defined as follows:

• send (P, message)	To send a message to the process P	Interprocess Communication and Synchronization
• receive (id, message)	To receive a message from any process; <i>id</i> is set to the name of the process with whom the communication has taken place.	

## Indirect Communication

With indirect communication, the messages are sent to, and received from a *mailbox*. A mailbox can be abstractly viewed as an object into which messages may be placed and from which messages may be removed by processes. In order to distinguish one from the other, each mailbox owns a unique identification. A process may communicate with some other process by a number of different mailboxes. The send and receive primitives are defined as follows:

- send (A, message) To send a message to the mailbox A
- receive (A, message) To receive a message from the mailbox A

Mailboxes may be owned either by a process or by the system. If the mailbox is owned by a process, then we distinguish between the *owner* who can only receive from this mailbox and *user* who can only send message to the mailbox. When a process that owns a mailbox terminates, its mailbox disappears. Any process that sends a message to this mailbox must be notified in the form of an exception that the mailbox no longer exists.

If the mailbox is owned by the operating system, then it has an existence of its own, i.e., it is independent and not attached to any particular process. The operating system provides a mechanism that allows a process to: a) create a new mailbox, b) send and receive message through the mailbox and c) destroy a mailbox. Since all processes with access rights to a mailbox may terminate, a mailbox may no longer be accessible by any process after some time. In this case, the operating system should reclaim whatever space was used for the mailbox.

## Capacity Link

A link has some capacity that determines the number of messages that can temporarily reside in it. This propriety can be viewed as a queue of messages attached to the link. Basically there are three ways through which such a queue can be implemented:

**Zero capacity:** This link has a message queue length of zero, i.e., no message can wait in it. The sender must wait until the recipient receives the message. The two processes must be synchronized for a message transfer to take place. The zero-capacity link is referred to as a message-passing system without buffering.

**Bounded capacity:** This link has a limited message queue length of  $n$ , i.e., at most  $n$  messages can reside in it. If a new message is sent, and the queue is not full, it is placed in the queue either by copying the message or by keeping a pointer to the message and the sender should continue execution without waiting. Otherwise, the sender must be delayed until space is available in the queue.

**Unbounded capacity:** This queue has potentially infinite length, i.e., any number of messages can wait in it. That is why the sender is never delayed.

Bounded and unbounded capacity link provide message-passing system with automatic buffering.

## Messages

Messages sent by a process may be one of three varieties: a) fixed-sized, b) variable-sized and c) typed messages. If only fixed-sized messages can be sent, the physical implementation is straightforward. However, this makes the task of programming more difficult. On the other hand, variable-size messages require more complex physical implementation, but the programming becomes simpler. Typed messages, i.e., associating a type with each mailbox, are applicable only to indirect communication. The messages that can be sent to, and received from a mailbox are restricted to the designated type.

---

## 3.4 INTERPROCESS SYNCHRONIZATION

---

When two or more processes work on the same data simultaneously strange things can happen. Suppose, when two parallel threads attempt to update the same variable simultaneously, the result is unpredictable. The value of the variable afterwards depends on which of the two threads was the last one to change the value. This is called a *race condition*. The value depends on which of the threads wins the race to update the variable. What we need in a multitasking system is a way of making such situations predictable. This is called *serialization*. Let us study the serialization concept in detail in the next section.

### 3.4.1 Serialization

The key idea in process synchronization is *serialization*. This means that we have to go to some pains to *undo* the work we have put into making an operating system perform several tasks in parallel. As we mentioned, in the case of print queues, parallelism is not always appropriate.

Synchronization is a large and difficult topic, so we shall only undertake to describe the problem and some of the principles involved here.

There are essentially two strategies to serializing processes in a multitasking environment.

- The scheduler can be disabled for a short period of time, to prevent control being given to another process during a critical action like modifying shared data. This method is very inefficient on multiprocessor machines, since all other processors have to be halted every time one wishes to execute a critical section.
- A protocol can be introduced which all programs sharing data must obey. The protocol ensures that processes have to queue up to gain access to shared data. Processes which ignore the protocol ignore it at their own peril (and the peril of the remainder of the system!). This method works on multiprocessor machines also, though it is more difficult to visualize. The responsibility of serializing important operations falls on programmers. The OS cannot impose any restrictions on silly behaviour-it can only provide tools and mechanisms to assist the solution of the problem.

### 3.4.2 Mutexes: Mutual Exclusion

When two or more processes must share some object, an arbitration mechanism is needed so that they do not try to use it at the same time. The particular object being shared does not have a great impact on the choice of such mechanisms. Consider the

following examples: two processes sharing a printer must take turns using it; if they attempt to use it simultaneously, the output from the two processes may be mixed into an arbitrary jumble which is unlikely to be of any use. Two processes attempting to update the same bank account must take turns; if each process reads the current balance from some database, updates it, and then writes it back, one of the updates will be lost.

Both of the above examples can be solved if there is some way for each process to exclude the other from using the shared object during critical sections of code. Thus the general problem is described as the mutual exclusion problem. The mutual exclusion problem was recognized (and successfully solved) as early as 1963 in the Burroughs AOSP operating system, but the problem is sufficiently difficult widely understood for some time after that. A significant number of attempts to solve the mutual exclusion problem have suffered from two specific problems, the lockout problem, in which a subset of the processes can conspire to indefinitely lock some other process out of a critical section, and the deadlock problem, where two or more processes simultaneously trying to enter a critical section lock each other out.

On a uni-processor system with non-preemptive scheduling, mutual exclusion is easily obtained: the process which needs exclusive use of a resource simply refuses to relinquish the processor until it is done with the resource. A similar solution works on a preemptively scheduled uni-processor: the process which needs exclusive use of a resource disables interrupts to prevent preemption until the resource is no longer needed. These solutions are appropriate and have been widely used for short critical sections, such as those involving updating a shared variable in main memory. On the other hand, these solutions are not appropriate for long critical sections, for example, those which involve input/ output. As a result, users are normally forbidden to use these solutions; when they are used, their use is restricted to system code.

Mutual exclusion can be achieved by a system of *locks*. A mutual exclusion lock is colloquially called a *mutex*. You can see an example of mutex locking in the multithreaded file reader in the previous section. The idea is for each thread or process to try to obtain locked-access to shared data:

```
Get_Mutex(m);  
// Update shared data  
Release_Mutex(m);
```

This protocol is meant to ensure that only one process at a time can get past the function Get\_Mutex. All other processes or threads are made to wait at the function Get\_Mutex until that one process calls Release\_Mutex to release the lock. A method for implementing this is discussed below. Mutexes are a central part of multithreaded programming.

### 3.4.3 Critical Sections: The Mutex Solution

A critical section is a part of a program in which it is necessary to have exclusive access to shared data. Only one process or a thread may be in a critical section at any one time. The characteristic properties of the code that form a Critical Section are:

- Codes that refer one or more variables in a “read-update-write” fashion while any of those variables is possibly being altered by another thread.

- Codes that alter one or more variables that are possibly being referenced in “read-update-write” fashion by another thread.
- Codes use a data structure while any part of it is possibly being altered by another thread.
- Codes alter any part of a data structure while it possibly in use by another thread.

In the past it was possible to implement this by generalizing the idea of interrupt masks. By switching off interrupts (or more appropriately, by switching off the scheduler) a process can guarantee itself uninterrupted access to shared data. This method has drawbacks:

- i) Masking interrupts can be dangerous- there is always the possibility that important interrupts will be missed;
- ii) It is not general enough in a multiprocessor environment, since interrupts will continue to be serviced by other processors-so all processors would have to be switched off;
- iii) It is too harsh. We only need to prevent two programs from being in their critical sections simultaneously if they share the same data. Programs A and B might share different data to programs C and D, so why should they wait for C and D?

In 1981 GL. Peterson discovered a simple algorithm for achieving mutual exclusion between two processes with PID equal to 0 or 1. The code is as follows:

```
int turn;  
int interested[2];  
  
void Get_Mutex (int pid)  
{  
    int other;  
    other = 1 - pid;  
    interested[process] = true;  
    turn = pid;  
  
    while (turn == pid && interested[other]) //Loop until no one  
    {  
        // else is interested  
    }  
}  
  
Release_Mutex (int pid)  
{  
    interested[pid] = false;  
}
```

Where more processes are involved, some modifications are necessary to this algorithm. The key to serialization here is that, if a second process tries to obtain the mutex, when another already has it, it will get caught in a loop, which does not terminate until the

other process has released the mutex. This solution is said to involve *busy waiting*-i.e., the program actively executes an empty loop, wasting CPU cycles, rather than moving the process out of the scheduling queue. This is also called a *spin lock*, since the system ‘spins’ on the loop while waiting. Let us see another algorithm which handles critical section problem for  $n$  processes.

### 3.4.4 Dekker’s solution for Mutual Exclusion

Mutual exclusion can be assured even when there is no underlying mechanism such as the test-and-set instruction. This was first realised by *T. J. Dekker* and published (by *Dijkstra*) in 1965. Dekker’s algorithm uses busy waiting and works for only two processes. The basic idea is that processes record their interest in entering a critical section (in Boolean variables called “need”) and they take turns (using a variable called “turn”) when both need entry at the same time. Dekker’s solution is shown below:

```
type processid = 0..1;
var need: array [processid] of boolean { initially false };
    turn: processid { initially either 0 or 1 };

procedure dekkerwait(me: processid);
var other: processid;
begin
    other := 1 - me;
    need[me] := true;
    while need[other] do begin { there is contention }
        if turn = other then begin
            need[me] := false { let other take a turn };
            while turn = other do { nothing };
            need[me] := true { re-assert my interest };
        end;
    end;
end { dekkerwait };

procedure dekkersignal(me: processid);
begin
    need[me] := false;
    turn := 1 - me { now, it is the other's turn };
end { dekkersignal };
```

Dekkers solution to the mutual exclusion problem requires that each of the contending processes have a unique process identifier which is called “me” which is passed to the wait and signal operations. Although none of the previously mentioned solutions require this, most systems provide some form of process identifier which can be used for this purpose.

It should be noted that Dekker’s solution does rely on one very simple assumption about the underlying hardware; it assumes that if two processes attempt to write two different values in the same memory location at the same time, one or the other value will be stored and not some mixture of the two. This is called the atomic update

assumption. The atomically updatable unit of memory varies considerably from one system to another; on some machines, any update of a word in memory is atomic, but an attempt to update a byte is not atomic, while on others, updating a byte is atomic while words are updated by a sequence of byte updates.

### 3.4.5 Bakery's Algorithm

Bakery algorithm handles critical section problem for  $n$  processes as follows:

- Before entering its critical section, process receives a number. Holder of the smallest number enters the critical section.
- If processes  $P_i$  and  $P_j$  receive the same number, if  $i < j$ , then  $P_i$  is served first; else  $P_j$  is served first.
- The numbering scheme always generates numbers in increasing order of enumeration; i.e., 1,2,3,3,3,3,4,5...
- Notation  $\leq$  lexicographical order (ticket #, process id #)
  - o  $(a,b) \leq (c,d)$  if  $a < c$  or if  $a = c$  and  $b < d$
  - o  $\max(a_0, \dots, a_{n-1})$  is a number,  $k$ , such that  $k \geq a_i$  for  $i = 0, \dots, n - 1$
- Shared data

**boolean** choosing[n]; //initialise all to false

**int** number[n]; //initialise all to 0

- Data structures are initialized to false and 0, respectively.

The algorithm is as follows:

```
do
{
    choosing[i] = true;
    number[i] = max(number[0], number[1], ..., number[n-1]) + 1;
    choosing[i] = false;

    for(int j = 0; j < n; j++)
    {
        while (choosing[j]== true)
        {
            /*do nothing*/
        }

        while ((number[j]!=0) &&
               (number[j],j)< (number[i],i))
            // see Reference point
        {
            /*do nothing*/
        }
    }
}
```

```

do critical section
    number[i] = 0;
do remainder section
} while (true)

```

In the next section we will study how the semaphores provides a much more organized approach of synchronization of processes.

## 3.4 SEMAPHORES

Semaphores provide a much more organized approach to controlling the interaction of multiple processes than would be available if each user had to solve all interprocess communications using simple variables, but more organization is possible. In a sense, semaphores are something like the **goto** statement in early programming languages; they can be used to solve a variety of problems, but they impose little structure on the solution and the results can be hard to understand without the aid of numerous comments. Just as there have been numerous control structures devised in sequential programs to reduce or even eliminate the need for **goto** statements, numerous specialized concurrent control structures have been developed which reduce or eliminate the need for semaphores.

**Definition:** The effective synchronization tools often used to realize mutual exclusion in more complex systems are semaphores. A semaphore **S** is an integer variable which can be accessed only through two standard atomic operations: **wait and signal**. The definition of the wait and signal operations are:

*wait(S): while S < 0 do skip;*

*S := S - 1;*

*signal(S): S := S + 1;*

or in C language notation we can write it as:

```

wait(s)
{
    while (S<=0)
    {
        /*do nothing*/
    }
    S= S-1;
}

signal(S)
{
    S = S + 1;
}

```

It should be noted that the test ( $S < 0$ ) and modification of the integer value of S which is  $S := S - 1$  must be executed without interruption. In general, if one process modifies the integer value of S in the wait and signal operations, no other process can simultaneously modify that same S value. We briefly explain the usage of semaphores in the following example:

Consider two currently running processes:  $P_1$  with a statement  $S_1$  and  $P_2$  with a statement  $S_2$ . Suppose that we require that  $S_2$  be executed only after  $S_1$  has completed. This scheme can be implemented by letting  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  share a common semaphore  $synch$ , initialised to 0, and by inserting the statements:

```
 $S_1;$ 
 $signal(synch);$ 
in the process  $P_1$  and the statements:
 $wait(synch);$ 
 $S_2;$ 
in the process  $P_2$ 
```

Since  $synch$  is initialised to 0,  $P_2$  will execute  $S_2$  only after  $P_1$  has involved signal ( $synch$ ), which is after  $S_1$ .

The disadvantage of the semaphore definition given above is that it requires *busy-waiting*, i.e., while a process is in its critical region, any other process it trying to enter its critical region must continuously loop in the entry code. It's clear that through busy-waiting, CPU cycles are wasted by which some other processes might use those productively.

To overcome busy-waiting, we modify the definition of the wait and signal operations. When a process executes the wait operation and finds that the semaphore value is not positive, the process *blocks* itself. The block operation places the process into a waiting state. Using a scheduler the CPU then can be allocated to other processes which are ready to run.

A process that is blocked, i.e., waiting on a semaphore  $S$ , should be restarted by the execution of a signal operation by some other processes, which changes its state from blocked to ready. To implement a semaphore under this condition, we define a semaphore as:

```
struct semaphore
{
    int value;
    List *L; //a list of processes
}
```

Each semaphore has an integer value and a list of processes. When a process must wait on a semaphore, it is added to this list. A signal operation removes one process from the list of waiting processes, and awakens it. The semaphore operation can be now defined as follows:

```
wait(S)
{
    S.value = S.value -1;
    if (S.value < 0)
    {
        add this process to S.L;
        block;
    }
}
```

```

}
signal(S)
{
S.value = S.value + 1;
if (S.value <= 0)
{
remove a process P from S.L;
wakeup(P);
}
}

```

The block operation suspends the process. The wakeup(P) operation resumes the execution of a blocked process P. These two operations are provided by the operating system as basic system calls.

One of the almost critical problem concerning implementing semaphore is the situation where two or more processes are waiting *indefinitely* for an event that can be only caused by one of the waiting processes: these processes are said to be *deadlocked*. To illustrate this, consider a system consisting of two processes  $P_1$  and  $P_2$ , each accessing two semaphores S and Q, set to the value one:

$P_1$	$P_2$
wait(S);	wait(Q);
wait(Q);	wait(S);
...	...
signal(S);	signal(Q);
signal(Q);	signal(S);

Suppose  $P_1$  executes wait(S) and then  $P_2$  executes wait(Q). When  $P_1$  executes wait(Q), it must wait until  $P_2$  executes signal(Q). It is no problem,  $P_2$  executes wait(Q), then signal(Q). Similarly, when  $P_2$  executes wait(S), it must wait until  $P_1$  executes signal(S). Thus these signal operations cannot be carried out,  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  are deadlocked. It is clear, that a set of processes are in a deadlocked state, when every process in the set is waiting for an event that can only be caused by another process in the set.

## 3.5 CLASSICAL PROBLEMS IN CONCURRENT PROGRAMMING

In this section, we present a large class of concurrency control problems. These problems are used for testing nearly every newly proposed synchronization scheme.

### 3.5.1 Producers/Consumers Problem

Producer – Consumer processes are common in operating systems. The problem definition is that, a producer (process) produces the information that is consumed by a consumer (process). For example, a compiler may produce assembly code, which is consumed by an assembler. A producer can produce one item while the consumer is

consuming another item. The producer and consumer must be synchronized. These problems can be solved either through unbounded buffer or bounded buffer.

- **With an unbounded buffer**

The unbounded-buffer producer- consumer problem places no practical limit on the size of the buffer .The consumer may have to wait for new items, but the producer can always produce new items; there are always empty positions in the buffer.

- **With a bounded buffer**

The bounded buffer producer problem assumes that there is a fixed buffer size. In this case, the consumer must wait if the buffer is empty and the producer must wait if the buffer is full.

### ***Shared Data***

```
char item;           //could be any data type
char          buffer[n];
semaphore full = 0; //counting semaphore
semaphore empty = n; //counting semaphore
semaphore mutex = 1; //binary semaphore
char          nextp,nextc;
```

### ***Producer Process***

```
do
{
    produce an item in nextp
    wait (empty);
    wait (mutex);
    add nextp to buffer
    signal (mutex);
    signal (full);
}
while (true)
```

### ***Consumer Process***

```
do
{
    wait(full );
    wait( mutex );
    remove an item from buffer to nextc
    signal( mutex );
    signal( empty );
    consume the item in nextc;
}
```

### 3.5.2 Readers and Writers Problem

The readers/writers problem is one of the classic synchronization problems. It is often used to compare and contrast synchronization mechanisms. It is also an eminently used practical problem. A common paradigm in concurrent applications is isolation of shared data such as a variable, buffer, or document and the control of access to that data. This problem has two types of clients accessing the shared data. The first type, referred to as readers, only wants to read the shared data. The second type, referred to as writers, may want to modify the shared data. There is also a designated central data server or controller. It enforces exclusive write semantics; if a writer is active then no other writer or reader can be active. The server can support clients that wish to both read and write. The readers and writers problem is useful for modeling processes which are competing for a limited shared resource. Let us understand it with the help of a practical example:

An airline reservation system consists of a huge database with many processes that read and write the data. Reading information from the database will not cause a problem since no data is changed. The problem lies in writing information to the database. If no constraints are put on access to the database, data may change at any moment. By the time a reading process displays the result of a request for information to the user, the actual data in the database may have changed. What if, for instance, a process reads the number of available seats on a flight, finds a value of one, and reports it to the customer? Before the customer has a chance to make their reservation, another process makes a reservation for another customer, changing the number of available seats to zero.

The following is the solution using semaphores:

Semaphores can be used to restrict access to the database under certain conditions. In this example, semaphores are used to prevent any writing processes from changing information in the database while other processes are reading from the database.

```
semaphore mutex = 1;      // Controls access to the reader count
semaphore db = 1;          // Controls access to the database
int reader_count;          // The number of reading processes accessing the data

Reader()
{
    while (TRUE) {           // loop forever
        down(&mutex);        // gain access to reader_count
        reader_count = reader_count + 1; // increment the reader_count
        if (reader_count == 1)
            down(&db); // If this is the first process to read the database,
                           // a down on db is executed to prevent access to the
                           // database by a writing process
        up(&mutex);           // allow other processes to access reader_count
        read_db();             // read the database
        down(&mutex);           // gain access to reader_count
        reader_count = reader_count - 1; // decrement reader_count
        if (reader_count == 0)
```

```

        up(&db);           // if there are no more processes reading from the
                           // database, allow writing process to access the data
        up(&mutex);       // allow other processes to access
reader_countuse_data(); // use the data read from the database (non-critical)
}

Writer()
{
    while (TRUE) {          // loop forever
        create_data();      // create data to enter into database (non-critical)
        down(&db);          // gain access to the database
        write_db();          // write information to the database
        up(&db);            // release exclusive access to the database
    }
}

```

### 3.5.3 Dining- Philosophers Problem

Five philosophers sit around a circular table. Each philosopher spends his life alternatively thinking and eating. In the centre of the table is a large bowl of rice. A philosopher needs two chopsticks to eat. Only 5 chop sticks are available and a chopstick is placed between each pair of philosophers. They agree that each will only use the chopstick to his immediate right and left. From time to time, a philosopher gets hungry and tries to grab the two chopsticks that are immediate left and right to him. When a hungry philosopher has both his chopsticks at the same time, he eats without releasing his chopsticks. When he finishes eating, he puts down both his chopsticks and starts thinking again.

Here's a solution for the problem which does not require a process to write another process's state, and gets equivalent parallelism.

```

#define N 5                      /* Number of philosophers */
#define RIGHT(i) (((i)+1) %N)
#define LEFT(i) (((i)==N) ? 0 : (i)+1)

typedef enum { THINKING, HUNGRY, EATING } phil_state;
phil_state state[N];
semaphore mutex =1;
semaphore s[N];

/* one per philosopher, all 0 */
void get_forks(int i) {
    state[i] = HUNGRY;
    while (state[i] == HUNGRY) {
        P(mutex);
        if (state[i] == HUNGRY &&
            state[LEFT] != EATING &&
            state[RIGHT(i)] != EATING ) {
            state[i] = EATING;
        }
    }
}

```

```
V(s[i]);  
}  
V(mutex);  
P(s[i]);  
}  
}  
  
void put_forks(int i) {  
    P(mutex);  
    state[i] = THINKING;  
    if (state[LEFT(i)] == HUNGRY) V(s[LEFT(i)]);  
    if (state[RIGHT(i)] == HUNGRY) V(s[RIGHT(i)]);  
    V(mutex);  
}  
  
void philosopher(int process) {  
    while(1) {  
        think();  
        get_forks(process);  
        eat();  
        put_forks();  
    }  
}
```

### 3.5.4 Sleeping Barber Problem

A barber shop consists of a waiting room with chairs, and the barber room containing the barber chair. If there are no customers to be served, the barber goes to sleep. If a customer enters the barber shop and all chairs are occupied, then the customer leaves the shop. If the barber is busy, but chairs are available, then the customer sits in one of the free chairs. If the barber is asleep, the customer wakes up the barber.

The following is a sample solution for the sleeping barber problem.

```
#define CHAIRS 5          // chairs for waiting customers  
typedef int semaphore;    // use this for imagination  
  
semaphore customers = 0; // number of customers waiting for service  
semaphore barbers = 0; // number of barbers waiting for customers  
semaphore mutex = 1;    // for mutual exclusion  
int waiting = 0;        //customers who are waiting for a haircut  
  
void barber(void)  
{  
    while (TRUE) {  
        down(&customers);    //go to sleep if no of customers are zero  
        down(&mutex);        //acquire access to waiting  
        waiting = waiting -1 ; //decrement count of waiting customers
```

```
up(&barbers);           //one barber is now ready for cut hair
up(&mutex);             //release waiting
cut_hair();              //this is out of critical region for hair cut
}

}

void customer(void)
{
    down(&mutex);          //enter critical region
    if(waiting < CHAIRS)   //if there are no free chairs, leave
    {
        waiting = waiting +1; //increment count of waiting customers
        up(&customers);      //wake up barber if necessary
        up(&mutex);           //release access to waiting
        down(&barbers);       //go to sleep if no of free barbers is zero
        get_haircut();         //be seated and be serviced
    } else
    {
        up (&mutex);        // shop is full: do no wait
    }
}
```

#### Explanation:

- This problem is similar to various queuing situations
- The problem is to program the barber and the customers without getting into race conditions
  - Solution uses three semaphores:
    - *customers*; counts the waiting customers
    - *barbers*; the number of barbers (0 or 1)
    - *mutex*; used for mutual exclusion
    - also need a variable *waiting*; also counts the waiting customers; (reason; no way to read the current value of semaphore)
  - The barber executes the procedure *barber*, causing him to block on the semaphore *customers* (initially 0);
  - The barber then goes to sleep;
  - When a customer arrives, he executes *customer*, starting by acquiring *mutex* to enter a critical region;
  - If another customer enters, shortly thereafter, the second one will not be able to do anything until the first one has released *mutex*;
  - The customer then checks to see if the number of waiting customers is less than the number of chairs;

- If not, he releases *mutex* and leaves without a haircut;
- If there is an available chair, the customer increments the integer variable, *waiting*;
- Then he does an **up** on the semaphore *customers*;
- When the customer releases *mutex*, the barber begins the haircut.

---

## 3.6 LOCKS

---

Locks are another synchronization mechanism. A lock has got two atomic operations (similar to semaphore) to provide mutual exclusion. These two operations are *Acquire* and *Release*. A process will acquire a lock before accessing a shared variable, and later it will be released. A process locking a variable will run the following code:

*Lock-Acquire();*

*critical section*

*Lock-Release();*

The difference between a lock and a semaphore is that a lock is released only by the process that have acquired it earlier. As we discussed above any process can increment the value of the semaphore. To implement locks, here are some things you should keep in mind:

- To make Acquire () and Release () atomic
- Build a wait mechanism.
- Making sure that only the process that acquires the lock will release the lock.

---

## 3.7 MONITORS AND CONDITION VARIABLES

---

When you are using semaphores and locks you must be very careful, because a simple misspelling may lead that the system ends up in a deadlock. Monitors are written to make synchronization easier and correctly. Monitors are some procedures, variables, and data structures grouped together in a package.

An early proposal for organising the operations required to establish mutual exclusion is the explicit critical section statement. In such a statement, usually proposed in the form “critical x do y”, where “x” is the name of a semaphore and “y” is a statement, the actual wait and signal operations used to ensure mutual exclusion were implicit and automatically balanced. This allowed the compiler to trivially check for the most obvious errors in concurrent programming, those where a wait or signal operation was accidentally forgotten. The problem with this statement is that it is not adequate for many critical sections.

A common observation about critical sections is that many of the procedures for manipulating shared abstract data types such as files have critical sections making up their entire bodies. Such abstract data types have come to be known as monitors, a term coined by C. A. R. Hoare. Hoare proposed a programming notation where the critical sections and semaphores implicit in the use of a monitor were all implicit. All

that this notation requires is that the programmer encloses the declarations of the procedures and the representation of the data type in a monitor block; the compiler supplies the semaphores and the wait and signal operations that this implies. Using Hoare's suggested notation, shared counters might be implemented as shown below:

```
var value: integer;  
procedure increment;  
begin  
    value := value + 1;  
end { increment };  
end { counter };  
  
var i, j: counter;
```

Calls to procedures within the body of a monitor are done using record notation; thus, to increment one of the counters declared in above example, one would call “i.increment”. This call would implicitly do a wait operation on the semaphore implicitly associated with “i”, then execute the body of the “increment” procedure before doing a signal operation on the semaphore. Note that the call to “i.increment” implicitly passes a specific instance of the monitor as a parameter to the “increment” procedure, and that fields of this instance become global variables to the body of the procedure, as if there was an implicit “with” statement.

There are a number of problems with monitors which have been ignored in the above example. For example, consider the problem of assigning a meaning to a call from within one monitor procedure to a procedure within another monitor. This can easily lead to a deadlock. For example, when procedures within two different monitors each calling the other. It has sometimes been proposed that such calls should never be allowed, but they are sometimes useful! We will study more on deadlocks in the next units of this course.

The most important problem with monitors is that of waiting for resources when they are not available. For example, consider implementing a queue monitor with internal procedures for the enqueue and dequeue operations. When the queue empties, a call to dequeue must wait, but this wait must not block further entries to the monitor through the enqueue procedure. In effect, there must be a way for a process to temporarily step outside of the monitor, releasing mutual exclusion while it waits for some other process to enter the monitor and do some needed action.

Hoare's suggested solution to this problem involves the introduction of condition variables which may be local to a monitor, along with the operations wait and signal. Essentially, if s is the monitor semaphore, and c is a semaphore representing a condition variable, “wait c” is equivalent to “signal(s); wait(c); wait(s)” and “signal c” is equivalent to “signal(c)”. The details of Hoare's wait and signal operations were somewhat more complex than is shown here because the waiting process was given priority over other processes trying to enter the monitor, and condition variables had no memory; repeated signalling of a condition had no effect and signaling a condition on which no process was waiting had no effect. Following is an example monitor:

```
monitor synch  
integer i;  
condition c;
```

```

procedure producer(x);
.
.
end;
procedure consumer(x);
.
.
end;
end monitor;
```

There is only one process that can enter a monitor, therefore every monitor has its own waiting list with process waiting to enter the monitor.

Let us see the dining philosopher's which was explained in the above section with semaphores, can be re-written using the monitors as:

#### **Example: Solution to the Dining Philosophers Problem using Monitors**

```

monitor dining-philosophers
{
    enum state {thinking, hungry, eating};
    state state[5];
    condition self[5];
    void pickup (int i)
    {
        state[i] = hungry;
        test(i);
        if (state[i] != eating)
            self[i].wait;
    }
    void putdown (int i)
    {
        state[i] = thinking;
        test(i+4 % 5);
        test(i+1 % 5);
    }
    void test (int k)
    {
        if ((state[k+4 % 5] != eating) && (state[k]==hungry)
            && state[k+1 % 5] != eating))
        {
            state[k] = eating;
            self[k].signal;
        }
    }
}
```

THE PEOPLE'S  
UNIVERSITY

```
init
{
    for (int i = 0; i < 5; i++)
        state[i] = thinking;
}
```

### Condition Variables

If a process cannot enter the monitor it must block itself. This operation is provided by the condition variables. Like locks and semaphores, the condition has got a wait and a signal function. But it also has the broadcast signal. Implementation of condition variables is part of a synch.h; it is your job to implement it. Wait(), Signal() and Broadcast() have the following semantics:

- Wait() releases the lock, gives up the CPU until signaled and then re-acquire the lock.
- Signal() wakes up a thread if there are any waiting on the condition variable.
- Broadcast() wakes up all threads waiting on the condition.

When you implement the condition variable, you must have a queue for the processes waiting on the condition variable.

#### ☛ Check Your Progress 1

- 1) What are race conditions? How race conditions occur in Operating Systems?

.....  
.....

- 2) What is a critical section? Explain.

.....  
.....

- 3) Provide the solution to a classical synchronization problem namely “cigarette smoker’s problem”. The problem is defined as follows:

*There are four processes in this problem: three smoker processes and an agent process. Each of the smoker processes will make a cigarette and smoke it. To make a cigarette requires tobacco, paper, and matches. Each smoker process has one of the three items. i.e., one process has tobacco, another has paper, and a third has matches. The agent has an infinite supply of all three. The agent places two of the three items on the table, and the smoker that has the third item makes the cigarette.*

.....  
.....

---

## 3.8 SUMMARY

---

Interprocess communication provides a mechanism to allow process to communicate with other processes. Interprocess communication system is best provided by a message

passing system. Message systems can be defined in many different ways. If there are a collection of cooperating sequential processes that share some data, mutual exclusion must be provided. There are different methods for achieving the mutual exclusion. Different algorithms are available for solving the critical section problem which we have discussed in this unit. The bakery algorithm is used for solving the n process critical section problem.

Interprocess synchronization provides the processes to synchronize their activities. Semaphores can be used to solve synchronization problems. Semaphore can only be accessed through two atomic operations and can be implemented efficiently. The two operations are wait and signal.

There are a number of classical synchronization problems which we have discussed in this unit (such as producer-consumer problem, readers-writers problem and dining-philosophers problem). These problems are important mainly because they are examples for a large class of concurrency-control problems. In the next unit we will study an important aspect called as “Deadlocks”

## 3.9 SOLUTIONS/ANSWERS

### Check Your Progress 1

- 1) Processes that are working together share some common storage (main memory, file etc.) that each process can read and write. When two or more processes are reading or writing some shared data and the final result depends on who runs precisely when, are called race conditions. Concurrently executing threads that share data need to synchronize their operations and processing in order to avoid race condition on shared data. Only one “customer” thread at a time should be allowed to examine and update the shared variable.

Race conditions are also possible in Operating Systems. If the ready queue is implemented as a linked list and if the ready queue is being manipulated during the handling of an interrupt, then interrupts must be disabled to prevent another interrupt before the first one completes. If interrupts are not disabled than the linked list could become corrupt.

- 2) The most synchronization problem confronting cooperating processes, is to control the access between the shared resources. Suppose two processes share access to a file and at least one of these processes can modify the data in this shared area of memory. That part of the code of each program, where one process is reading from or writing to a shared memory area, is a *critical section* of code; because we must ensure that only one process execute a critical section of code at a time. The critical section problem is to design a protocol that the processes can use to coordinate their activities when one wants to enter its critical section of code.
- 3) This seems like a fairly easy solution. The three smoker processes will make a cigarette and smoke it. If they can't make a cigarette, then they will go to sleep. The agent process will place two items on the table, and wake up the appropriate smoker, and then go to sleep. All semaphores except lock are initialised to 0. Lock is initialised to 1, and is a mutex variable.

Here's the code for the *agent process*.

```
do forever {  
    P(lock);
```

```
randNum = rand(1,3); // Pick a random number from 1-3
if(randNum == 1) {
    // Put tobacco on table
    // Put paper on table
    V(smoker_match); // Wake up smoker with match
}
else if(randNum == 2) {
    // Put tobacco on table
    // Put match on table
    V(smoker_paper); // Wake up smoker with paper
}
else {
    // Put match on table
    // Put paper on table
    V(smoker_tobacco);
} // Wake up smoker with tobacco

V(lock);
P(agent); // Agent sleeps
} // end forever loop
```

The following is the code for one of the smokers. The others are analogous.

```
do forever {
    P(smoker_tobacco); // Sleep right away
    P(lock);
    // Pick up match
    // Pick up paper
    V(agent);
    V(lock);
    // Smoke
}
```

---

### 3.10 FURTHER READINGS

---

- 1) Milenkovic, Milan, “*Operating Systems Concepts and Design*”, McGraw-Hill, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition.
- 2) Tanenbaum, Andrew, *Modern Operating Systems*, Prentice-Hall.
- 3) Silberschatz, Abraham and Galvin Peter, “*Operating System Concepts*”, Addison-Wesley.
- 4) D.M. Dhamdhere, “*Operating Systems A concept-based Approach*”, Tata McGraw-Hill.
- 5) William Stallings, “*Operating System*”, Prentice Hall.
- 6) Deitel, Harvey M. , “*An introduction to Operating System*”, 4th ed., Addison-Wesley.

---

## **UNIT 4 DEADLOCKS**

---

### **Structure**

- 4.1 Introduction
- 4.2 Objectives
- 4.3 Deadlocks
- 4.4 Characterization of a Deadlock
  - 4.4.1 Mutual Exclusion Condition
  - 4.4.2 Hold and Wait Condition
  - 4.4.3 No-Preemptive Condition
  - 4.4.4 Circular Wait Condition
- 4.5 Resource Allocation Graph
- 4.6 Dealing with Deadlock Situations
  - 4.6.1 Deadlock Prevention
  - 4.6.2 Deadlock Avoidance
  - 4.6.3 Deadlock Detection and Recovery
- 4.7 Summary
- 4.8 Solutions/Answers
- 4.9 Further Readings

---

### **4.1 INTRODUCTION**

---

In a computer system, we have a finite number of *resources* to be distributed among a number of competing processes. These system resources are classified in several types which may be either physical or logical. Examples of physical resources are Printers, Tape drivers, Memory space, and CPU cycles. Examples of logical resources are Files, Semaphores and Monitors. Each resource type can have some identical instances.

A process must request a resource before using it and release the resource after using it. It is clear that the number of resources requested cannot exceed the total number of resources available in the system.

In a normal operation, a process may utilize a resource only in the following sequence:

- *Request*: if the request cannot be immediately granted, then the requesting process must wait until it can get the resource.
- *Use*: the requesting process can operate on the resource.
- *Release*: the process releases the resource after using it.

Examples for request and release of system resources are:

- Request and release the device,
- Opening and closing file,
- Allocating and freeing the memory.

The operating system is responsible for making sure that the requesting process has been allocated the resource. A system table indicates if each resource is free or allocated, and if allocated, to which process. If a process requests a resource that is currently allocated to another process, it can be added to a queue of processes waiting for this resource.

In some cases, several processes may compete for a fixed number of resources. A process requests resources and if the resources are not available at that time, it enters a wait state. It may happen that it will never gain access to the resources, since those resources are being held by other waiting processes.

For example, assume a system with one tape drive and one plotter. Process P1 requests the tape drive and process P2 requests the plotter. Both requests are granted. Now P1 requests the plotter (without giving up the tape drive) and P2 requests the tape drive (without giving up the plotter). Neither request can be granted so both processes enter a situation called the deadlock situation.

A deadlock is a situation where a group of processes is permanently blocked as a result of each process having acquired a set of resources needed for its completion and having to wait for the release of the remaining resources held by others thus making it impossible for any of the deadlocked processes to proceed.

In the earlier units, we have gone through the concept of process and the need for the interprocess communication and synchronization. In this unit we will study about the deadlocks, its characterisation, deadlock avoidance and its recovery.

## 4.2 OBJECTIVES

---

After going through this unit, you should be able to:

- define a deadlock;
- understand the conditions for a deadlock;
- know the ways of avoiding deadlocks, and
- describe the ways to recover from the deadlock situation.

## 4.3 DEADLOCKS

---

Before studying about deadlocks, let us look at the various types of resources. There are two types of resources namely: Pre-emptable and Non-pre-emptable Resources.

- **Pre-emptable resources:** This resource can be taken away from the process with no ill effects. Memory is an example of a pre-emptable resource.
- **Non-Preemptable resource:** This resource cannot be taken away from the process (without causing ill effect). For example, CD resources are not preemptable at an arbitrary moment.

Reallocating resources can resolve deadlocks that involve preemptable resources. Deadlocks that involve nonpreemptable resources are difficult to deal with. Let us see how a deadlock occurs.

**Definition:** A set of processes is in a deadlock state if each process in the set is waiting for an event that can be caused by only another process in the set. In other

words, each member of the set of deadlock processes is waiting for a resource that can be released only by a deadlock process. None of the processes can run, none of them can release any resources and none of them can be awakened. It is important to note that the number of processes and the number and kind of resources possessed and requested are unimportant.

Let us understand the deadlock situation with the help of examples.

**Example 1:** The simplest example of deadlock is where process 1 has been allocated a non-shareable resource *A*, say, a tape drive, and process 2 has been allocated a non-shareable resource *B*, say, a printer. Now, if it turns out that process 1 needs resource *B* (printer) to proceed and process 2 needs resource *A* (the tape drive) to proceed and these are the only two processes in the system, each has blocked the other and all useful work in the system stops. This situation is termed as deadlock.

The system is in deadlock state because each process holds a resource being requested by the other process and neither process is willing to release the resource it holds.

**Example 2:** Consider a system with three disk drives. Suppose there are three processes, each is holding one of these three disk drives. If each process now requests another disk drive, three processes will be in a deadlock state, because each process is waiting for the event “disk drive is released”, which can only be caused by one of the other waiting processes. Deadlock state involves processes competing not only for the same resource type, but also for different resource types.

Deadlocks occur most commonly in multitasking and client/server environments and are also known as a “Deadly Embrace”. Ideally, the programs that are deadlocked or the operating system should resolve the deadlock, but this doesn’t always happen.

From the above examples, we have understood the concept of deadlocks. In the examples we were given some instances, but we will study the necessary conditions for a deadlock to occur, in the next section.

## **4.4 CHARACTERIZATION OF A DEADLOCK**

Coffman (1971) identified **four necessary conditions** that must hold simultaneously for a deadlock to occur.

### **4.4.1 Mutual Exclusion Condition**

The resources involved are non-shareable. At least one resource must be held in a non-shareable mode, that is, only one process at a time claims exclusive control of the resource. If another process requests that resource, the requesting process must be delayed until the resource has been released.

### **4.4.2 Hold and Wait Condition**

In this condition, a requesting process already holds resources and waiting for the requested resources. A process, holding a resource allocated to it waits for an additional resource(s) that is/are currently being held by other processes.

### **4.4.3 No-Preemptive Condition**

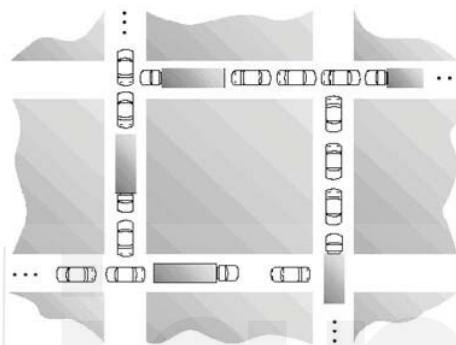
Resources already allocated to a process cannot be preempted. Resources cannot be

removed forcibly from the processes. After completion, they will be released voluntarily by the process holding it.

#### 4.4.4 Circular Wait Condition

The processes in the system form a circular list or chain where each process in the list is waiting for a resource held by the next process in the list.

Let us understand this by a common example. Consider the traffic deadlock shown in the *Figure 1*.



**Figure 1: Traffic Deadlock**

Consider each section of the street as a resource. In this situation:

- Mutual exclusion condition applies, since only one vehicle can be on a section of the street at a time.
- Hold-and-wait condition applies, since each vehicle is occupying a section of the street, and waiting to move on to the next section of the street.
- Non-preemptive condition applies, since a section of the street that is occupied by a vehicle cannot be taken away from it.
- Circular wait condition applies, since each vehicle is waiting for the next vehicle to move. That is, each vehicle in the traffic is waiting for a section of the street held by the next vehicle in the traffic.

The simple rule to avoid traffic deadlock is that a vehicle should only enter an intersection if it is assured that it will not have to stop inside the intersection.

It is not possible to have a deadlock involving only one single process. The deadlock involves a circular “hold-and-wait” condition between two or more processes, so “one” process cannot hold a resource, yet be waiting for another resource that it is holding. In addition, deadlock is not possible between two threads in a process, because it is the process that holds resources, not the thread, that is, each thread has access to the resources held by the process.

---

## 4.4 RESOURCE ALLOCATION GRAPH

---

The idea behind the resource allocation graph is to have a graph which has two different types of nodes, the process nodes and resource nodes (process represented by circles, resource node represented by rectangles). For different instances of a resource, there

is a dot in the resource node rectangle. For example, if there are two identical printers, the printer resource might have two dots to indicate that we don't really care which is used, as long as we acquire the resource.

The edges among these nodes represent resource allocation and release. Edges are directed, and if the edge goes from resource to process node that means the process has acquired the resource. If the edge goes from process node to resource node that means the process has requested the resource.

We can use these graphs to determine if a deadlock has occurred or may occur. If for example, all resources have only one instance (all resource node rectangles have one dot) and the graph is circular, then a deadlock *has* occurred. If on the other hand some resources have several instances, then a deadlock *may* occur. If the graph is not circular, a deadlock cannot occur (the *circular wait* condition wouldn't be satisfied).

The following are the tips which will help you to check the graph easily to predict the presence of cycles.

- If no cycle exists in the resource allocation graph, there is no deadlock.
- If there is a cycle in the graph and each resource has only one instance, then there is a deadlock. In this case, a cycle is a necessary and sufficient condition for deadlock.
- If there is a cycle in the graph, and each resource has more than one instance, there may or may not be a deadlock. (A cycle may be broken if some process outside the cycle has a resource instance that can break the cycle). Therefore, a cycle in the resource allocation graph is a necessary but not sufficient condition for deadlock, when multiple resource instances are considered.

#### Example:

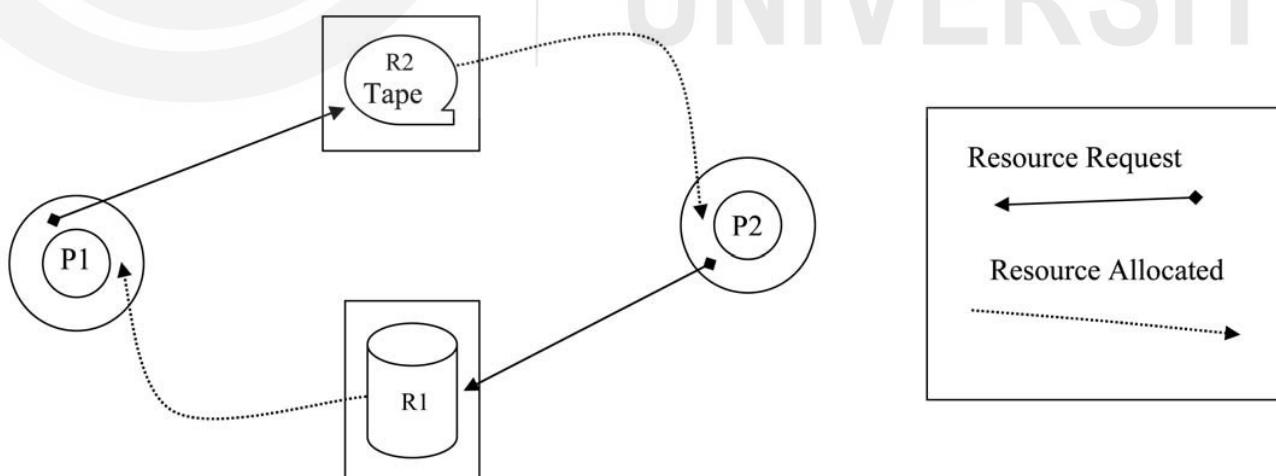
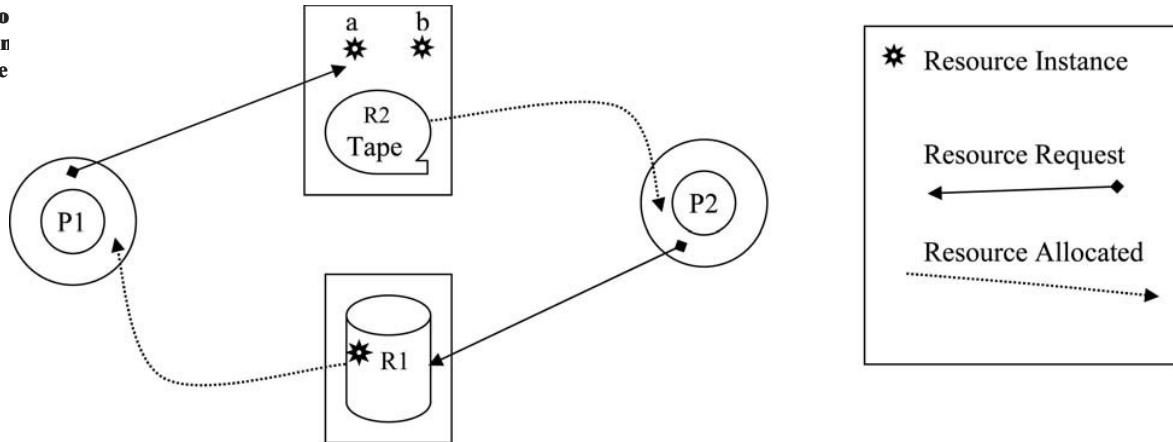


Figure 2: Resource Allocation Graph Showing Deadlock

The above graph shown in *Figure 2* has a cycle and is in Deadlock.

$$\begin{array}{l} R1 \longrightarrow P1 \quad P1 \longrightarrow R2 \\ R2 \longrightarrow P2 \quad P2 \longrightarrow R1 \end{array}$$

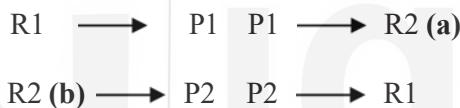


**Figure 3: Resource Allocation Graph having a cycle and not in a Deadlock**

The above graph shown in *Figure 3* has a cycle and is not in Deadlock.

(Resource 1 has one instance shown by a star)

(Resource 2 has two instances a and b, shown as two stars)



If P1 finishes, P2 can get R1 and finish, so there is no Deadlock.

## 4.5 DEALING WITH DEADLOCK SITUATIONS

There are possible strategies to deal with deadlocks. They are:

- Deadlock Prevention
- Deadlock Avoidance
- Deadlock Detection and Recovery

Let's examine each strategy one by one to evaluate their respective strengths and weaknesses.

### 4.5.1 Deadlock Prevention

Havender in his pioneering work showed that since all four of the conditions are necessary for deadlock to occur, it follows that deadlock might be prevented by denying any one of the conditions. Let us study Havender's algorithm.

#### *Havender's Algorithm*

##### *Elimination of "Mutual Exclusion" Condition*

The mutual exclusion condition must hold for non-shareable resources. That is, several processes cannot simultaneously share a single resource. This condition is difficult to eliminate because some resources, such as the tap drive and printer, are inherently non-shareable. Note that shareable resources like read-only-file do not require mutually exclusive access and thus cannot be involved in deadlock.

There are two possibilities for the elimination of the second condition. The first alternative is that a process request be granted all the resources it needs at once, prior to execution. The second alternative is to disallow a process from requesting resources whenever it has previously allocated resources. This strategy requires that all the resources a process will need must be requested at once. The system must grant resources on “all or none” basis. If the complete set of resources needed by a process is not currently available, then the process must wait until the complete set is available. While the process waits, however, it may not hold any resources. Thus the “wait for” condition is denied and deadlocks simply cannot occur. This strategy can lead to serious waste of resources.

For example, a program requiring ten tap drives must request and receive all ten drives before it begins executing. If the program needs only one tap drive to begin execution and then does not need the remaining tap drives for several hours then substantial computer resources (9 tape drives) will sit idle for several hours. This strategy can cause indefinite postponement (starvation), since not all the required resources may become available at once.

*Elimination of “No-preemption” Condition*

The nonpreemption condition can be alleviated by forcing a process waiting for a resource that cannot immediately be allocated, to relinquish all of its currently held resources, so that other processes may use them to finish their needs. Suppose a system does allow processes to hold resources while requesting additional resources. Consider what happens when a request cannot be satisfied. A process holds resources a second process may need in order to proceed, while the second process may hold the resources needed by the first process. This is a deadlock. This strategy requires that when a process that is holding some resources is denied a request for additional resources, the process must release its held resources and, if necessary, request them again together with additional resources. Implementation of this strategy denies the “no-preemptive” condition effectively.

**High Cost**

When a process releases resources, the process may lose all its work to that point. One serious consequence of this strategy is the possibility of indefinite postponement (starvation). A process might be held off indefinitely as it repeatedly requests and releases the same resources.

*Elimination of “Circular Wait” Condition*

The last condition, the circular wait, can be denied by imposing a total ordering on all of the resource types and than forcing all processes to request the resources in order (increasing or decreasing). This strategy imposes a total ordering of all resource types, and requires that each process requests resources in a numerical order of enumeration. With this rule, the resource allocation graph can never have a cycle.

For example, provide a global numbering of all the resources, as shown in the given *Table 1*:

**Table 1: Numbering the resources**

Number	Resource
1	Floppy drive
2	Printer
3	Plotter
4	Tape Drive
5	CD Drive

Now we will see the rule for this:

**Rule:** Processes can request resources whenever they want to, but all requests must be made in numerical order. A process may request first printer and then a tape drive (order: 2, 4), but it may not request first a plotter and then a printer (order: 3, 2). The problem with this strategy is that it may be impossible to find an ordering that satisfies everyone.

This strategy, if adopted, may result in low resource utilization and in some cases starvation is possible too.

#### 4.5.2 Deadlock Avoidance

This approach to the deadlock problem anticipates a deadlock before it actually occurs. This approach employs an algorithm to access the possibility that deadlock could occur and act accordingly. This method differs from deadlock prevention, which guarantees that deadlock cannot occur by denying one of the necessary conditions of deadlock. The most famous deadlock avoidance algorithm, from Dijkstra [1965], is the Banker's algorithm. It is named as Banker's algorithm because the process is analogous to that used by a banker in deciding if a loan can be safely made or not.

The Banker's Algorithm is based on the banking system, which never allocates its available cash in such a manner that it can no longer satisfy the needs of all its customers. Here we must have the advance knowledge of the maximum possible claims for each process, which is limited by the resource availability. During the run of the system we should keep monitoring the resource allocation status to ensure that no circular wait condition can exist.

If the necessary conditions for a deadlock are in place, it is still possible to avoid deadlock by being careful when resources are allocated. The following are the features that are to be considered for avoidance of the deadlocks per the Banker's Algorithms.

- Each process declares maximum number of resources of each type that it may need.
- Keep the system in a safe state in which we can allocate resources to each process in some order and avoid deadlock.
- Check for the safe state by finding a safe sequence:  $\langle P_1, P_2, \dots, P_n \rangle$  where resources that  $P_i$  needs can be satisfied by available resources plus resources held by  $P_j$  where  $j < i$ .

- Resource allocation graph algorithm uses claim edges to check for a safe state.

**Deadlocks**

The resource allocation state is now defined by the number of available and allocated resources, and the maximum demands of the processes. Subsequently the system can be in either of the following states:

- **Safe state:** Such a state occurs when the system can allocate resources to each process (up to its maximum) in some order and avoid a deadlock. This state will be characterised by a safe sequence. It must be mentioned here that we should not falsely conclude that all unsafe states are deadlocked although it may eventually lead to a deadlock.
- **Unsafe State:** If the system did not follow the safe sequence of resource allocation from the beginning and it is now in a situation, which may lead to a deadlock, then it is in an unsafe state.
- **Deadlock State:** If the system has some circular wait condition existing for some processes, then it is in deadlock state.

Let us study this concept with the help of an example as shown below:

Consider an analogy in which 4 processes (P1, P2, P3 and P4) can be compared with the customers in a bank, resources such as printers etc. as cash available in the bank and the Operating system as the Banker.

**Table 2**

Processes	Resources used	Maximum resources
P1	0	6
P2	0	5
P3	0	4
P4	0	7

**Let us assume that total available resources = 10**

In the above table, we see four processes, each of which has been granted a number of maximum resources that can be used. The Operating system reserved only 10 resources rather than 22 units to service them. At a certain moment, the situation becomes:

**Table 3**

Processes	Resources used	Maximum resources
P1	1	6
P2	1	5
P3	2	4
P4	4	7

**Available resources = 2**

**Safe State:** The key to a state being safe is that there is at least one way for all users to finish. In other words the state of *Table 2* is safe because with 2 units left, the operating system can delay any request except P3, thus letting P3 finish and release all four resources. With four units in hand, the Operating system can let either P4 or P2 have the necessary units and so on.

**Unsafe State:** Consider what would happen if a request from P2 for one more unit was granted in *Table 3*. We would have following situation as shown in *Table 4*.

**Table 4**

Processes	Resources used	Maximum resources
P1	1	6
P2	2	5
P3	2	4
P4	4	7

**Available resource = 1**

This is an unsafe state.

If all the processes request for their maximum resources respectively, then the operating system could not satisfy any of them and we would have a deadlock.

**Important Note:** It is important to note that an unsafe state does not imply the existence or even the eventual existence of a deadlock. What an unsafe state does imply is simply that some unfortunate sequence of events might lead to a deadlock.

The Banker's algorithm is thus used to consider each request as it occurs, and see if granting it leads to a safe state. If it does, the request is granted, otherwise, it is postponed until later. Haberman [1969] has shown that executing of the algorithm has a complexity proportional to  $N^2$  where  $N$  is the number of processes and since the algorithm is executed each time a resource request occurs, the overhead is significant.

### Limitations of the Banker's Algorithm

There are some problems with the Banker's algorithm as given below:

- It is time consuming to execute on the operation of every resource.
- If the claim information is not accurate, system resources may be underutilized.
- Another difficulty can occur when a system is heavily loaded. Lauesen states that in this situation “so many resources are granted away that very few safe sequences remain, and as a consequence, the jobs will be executed sequentially”. Therefore, the Banker's algorithm is referred to as the “Most Liberal” granting policy; that is, it gives away everything that it can without regard to the consequences.
- New processes arriving may cause a problem.
  - The process's claim must be less than the total number of units of the resource in the system. If not, the process is not accepted by the manager.

- Since the state without the new process is safe, so is the state with the new process. Just use the order you had originally and put the new process at the end.
- Ensuring fairness (starvation freedom) needs a little more work, but isn't too hard either (once every hour stop taking new processes until all current processes finish).
- A resource becoming unavailable (e.g., a tape drive breaking), can result in an unsafe state.

### 4.5.3 Deadlock Detection and Recovery

Detection of deadlocks is the most practical policy, which being both liberal and cost efficient, most operating systems deploy. To detect a deadlock, we must go about in a recursive manner and simulate the most favoured execution of each unblocked process.

- An unblocked process may acquire all the needed resources and will execute.
- It will then release all the acquired resources and remain dormant thereafter.
- The now released resources may wake up some previously blocked process.
- Continue the above steps as long as possible.
- If any blocked processes remain, they are **deadlocked**.

#### Recovery from Deadlock

##### Recovery by process termination

In this approach we terminate deadlocked processes in a systematic way taking into account their priorities. The moment, enough processes are terminated to recover from deadlock, we stop the process terminations. Though the policy is simple, there are some problems associated with it.

Consider the scenario where a process is in the state of updating a data file and it is terminated. The file may be left in an incorrect state by the unexpected termination of the updating process. Further, processes should be terminated based on some criterion/policy. Some of the criteria may be as follows:

- Priority of a process
- CPU time used and expected usage before completion
- Number and type of resources being used (can they be preempted easily?)
- Number of resources needed for completion
- Number of processes needed to be terminated
- Are the processes interactive or batch?

##### Recovery by Checkpointing and Rollback (Resource preemption)

Some systems facilitate deadlock recovery by implementing *checkpointing and rollback*. Checkpointing is saving *enough state of a process* so that the process can be restarted at the point in the computation where the checkpoint was taken. Autosaving file edits are a form of checkpointing. Checkpointing costs depend on the underlying

algorithm. Very simple algorithms (like linear primality testing) can be checkpointed with a few words of data. More complicated processes may have to save all the process state and memory.

If a deadlock is detected, one or more processes are restarted from their last checkpoint. Restarting a process from a checkpoint is called *rollback*. It is done with the expectation that the resource requests will not interleave again to produce deadlock.

Deadlock recovery is generally used when deadlocks are rare, and the cost of recovery (process termination or rollback) is low.

Process checkpointing can also be used to improve reliability (long running computations), assist in process migration, or reduce startup costs.

#### ☞ Check Your Progress 1

- 1) What is a deadlock and what are the four conditions that will create the deadlock situation?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

- 2) How can deadlock be avoided? Explain with the help of an example.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

---

## 4.6 SUMMARY

---

A deadlock occurs when a process has some resource and is waiting to acquire another resource, while that resource is being held by some process that is waiting to acquire the resource that is being held by the first process.

A deadlock needs four conditions to occur: Mutual Exclusion, Hold and Wait, Non-Preemption and Circular Waiting.

We can handle deadlocks in three major ways: We can prevent them, handle them when we detect them, or simply ignore the whole deadlock issue altogether.

---

## 4.7 SOLUTIONS/ANSWERS

---

#### Check Your Progress 1

- 1) A set of processes is in a deadlock state when every process in the set is waiting for an event that can only be caused by another process in the set. A deadlock situation can arise if the following four conditions hold simultaneously in a system:

- *Mutual Exclusion*: At least one resource must be held in a non-shareable mode; that is, only one process at a time can use the resource. If another process requests the resource, the requesting process must be delayed until the resource has been released.
  - *Hold and Wait*: A process must be holding at least one resource and waiting to acquire additional resources that are currently being held by other processes.
  - *No Preemption*: Resources cannot be preempted; that is, a resource can be released only voluntarily by the process holding it, after that process has completed its task.
  - *Circular Wait*: A set  $\{P_0, P_1, P_2, \dots, P_n\}$  of waiting processes must exist such that  $P_0$  is waiting for a resource that is held by  $P_1$ ,  $P_1$  is waiting for a resource that is held by  $P_2, \dots, P_{n-1}$  is waiting for a resource that is held by  $P_n$ , and  $P_n$  is waiting for a resource that is held by  $P_0$ .
- 2) Deadlock avoidance deals with processes that declare before execution how many resources they may need during their execution. Given several processes and resources, if we can allocate the resources in some order as to prevent a deadlock, the system is said to be in a safe state. If a deadlock is possible, the system is said to be in an unsafe state. The idea of avoiding a deadlock is to simply not allow the system to enter an unsafe state which may cause a deadlock. We can define what makes an unsafe state.

For example, consider a system with 12 tape drives and three processes:  $P_0$ ,  $P_1$  and  $P_2$ .  $P_0$  may require 10 tape drives during execution,  $P_1$  may require 4, and  $P_2$  may require up to 9. Suppose that at some moment in time,  $P_0$  is holding on to 5 tape drives,  $P_1$  holds 2 and  $P_2$  holds 2 tape drives. The system is said to be in a safe state, since there is a safe sequence that avoids the deadlock. This sequence implies that  $P_1$  can instantly get all of its needed resources (there are 12 total tape drives, and  $P_1$  already has 2, so the maximum it needs is 2, which it can get since there are 3 free tape drives). Once it finishes executing, it releases all 4 resources, which makes for 5 free tape drives, at which point,  $P_0$  can execute (since the maximum it needs is 10), after it finishes,  $P_2$  can proceed since the maximum it needs is 9.

Now, here's an unsafe sequence: Let's say at some point of time  $P_2$  requests one more resource to make its holding resources 3. Now the system is in an unsafe state, since only  $P_1$  can be allocated resources, and after it returns, it will only leave 4 free resources, which is not enough for either  $P_0$  or  $P_2$ , so the system enters a deadlock.

## 4.8 FURTHER READINGS

- 1) Madnick and Donovan, *Operating systems – Concepts and Design*, McGrawHill Intl. Education.
- 2) Milan Milenkovic, *Operating Systems, Concepts and Design*, TMGH, 2000.

- 3) D.M. Dhamdhere, *Operating Systems, A concept-based approach*, TMGH, 2002.
- 4) Abraham Silberschatz and James L, *Operating System Concepts*. Peterson, Addison Wesley Publishing Company, New Delhi.
- 5) Harvey M. Deitel, *Introduction to Operating systems*, Addison Wesley Publishing Company, New Delhi.
- 6) Andrew S. Tanenbaum, *Operating System Design and Implementation*, PHI, New Delhi.



Indira Gandhi  
National Open University  
School of Computer and  
Information Sciences

**Block****2****MEMORY MANAGEMENT, FILE  
MANAGEMENT AND SECURITY****UNIT 1****Memory Management****5****UNIT 2****Virtual Memory****23****UNIT 3****I/O and File Management****42****UNIT 4****Security and Protection****67**

---

## PROGRAMME/COURSE DESIGN COMMITTEE

---

Prof. Sanjeev K. Aggarwal, IIT, Kanpur Shri Navneet Aggarwal Trinity BPM, New Delhi Prof. M. Balakrishnan, IIT, Delhi Prof. Pandurangan, C., IIT, Madras Ms. Bhoomi Gupta Sirifort College of Computer and Technology Management, New Delhi Shri Manoj Kumar Gupta Keane India Ltd., New Delhi Shri Sachin Gupta Delhi Institute of Advanced Studies, New Delhi Prof. Harish Karnick, IIT, Kanpur Shri Anil Kumar Amity School of Engineering and Technology New Delhi Dr. Kapil Kumar, IIMT, Meerut Dr. Sachin Kumar, CCS University, Meerut Ms. Manjulata Amity School of Engineering and Technology New Delhi Shri Ajay Rana Amity School of Computer Sciences, Noida Dr. Divya Sharma Bharati College, Delhi Shri Neeraj Sharma Havard Institute of Management Technology Noida	Shri Sanjeev Thakur Amity School of Computer Sciences, Noida Shri Amrit Nath Thulal Amity School of Engineering and Technology New Delhi Dr. Om Vikas(Retd), Ex-Sr. Director, Ministry of ICT, Delhi Shri Vishwakarma Amity School of Engineering and Technology New Delhi Prof (Retd) S. K. Gupta, IIT Delhi Prof. T.V. Vijaya Kumar, Dean, SC&SS, JNU, New Delhi Prof. Ela Kumar, Dean, CSE, IGDTUW, Delhi Prof. Gayatri Dhingra, GVMITM, Sonipat Sh. Milind Mahajani Vice President, Impressico Business Solutions, Noida, UP Prof. V. V. Subrahmanyam, Director SOCIS, New Delhi Prof. P. V. Suresh, SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi Dr. Shashi Bhushan SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi Shri Akshay Kumar, Associate Prof. SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi Shri M. P. Mishra, Associate Prof. SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi Dr. Sudhansh Sharma, Asst. Prof SOCIS. IGNOU. New Delhi
---	---

---

## BLOCK PREPARATION TEAM

---

Prof. D.P. Vidyarthi ( <i>Content Editor</i> ) Jawaharlal Nehru University, New Delhi	Prof. V.V. Subrahmanyam SOCIS, IGNOU
Ms. Bhoomi Gupta Sirifort College of Computer and Technology Management, New Delhi	Prof. Nandini Sahu & Ms. Malathy. A Editorial Unit, SOH, IGNOU
Shri Sachin Kumar CCS University, Meerut	Prof. A.K. Verma Professor & Head (Retired) Indian Institute of Mass Communication, Delhi
Ms. Manjulata Amity School of Engineering and Technology New Delhi	(Language Editors)

**Course Coordinator:** Prof. V. V. Subrahmanyam

(The Units of Block-2, Unit 1 to Unit-4 were adapted from MCS-041 Operating Systems)

---

## PRINT PRODUCTION

---

**Mr. Tilak Raj**  
Asst. Registrar (Pub.)  
MPDD, IGNOU, New Delhi

**Mr. Yashpal**  
Section Officer (Pub.)  
MPDD, IGNOU, New Delhi

March, 2021

© Indira Gandhi National Open University, 2021

All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced in any form, by mimeograph or any other means, without permission in writing from the Indira Gandhi National Open University.

Further information on the Indira Gandhi National Open University courses may be obtained from the University's office at Maidan Garhi, New Delhi-110068.

Printed and published on behalf of the Indira Gandhi National Open University, New Delhi by the MPDD, IGNOU, New Delhi

Laser Typesetting : Akashdeep Printers, 20-Ansari Road, Daryaganj, New Delhi-110002

Printed at :

---

## BLOCK INTRODUCTION

---

The objective of this block is to familiarize you with the issues involved in the memory management, I/O management, File management and Security by the Operating System.

The block is organized into 4 units.

**Unit 1** covers the single process monitor, overlays, memory allocation methods, paging and segmentation schemes.

**Unit 2** covers the concept of virtual memory, demand paging, demand segmentation and combined systems like segmented paging and paged segmentation.

**Unit 3** covers the I/O management and issues related to file management.

**Unit 4** covers the very important and critical aspect namely security and protection.





---

# **UNIT 1 MEMORY MANAGEMENT**

---

## **Structure**

- 1.0 Introduction
- 1.1 Objectives
- 1.2 Overlays and Swapping
- 1.3 Logical and Physical Address Space
- 1.4 Single Process Monitor
- 1.5 Contiguous Allocation Methods
  - 1.5.1 Single Partition System
  - 1.5.2 Multiple Partition System
- 1.6 Paging
  - 1.6.1 Principles of Operation
  - 1.6.2 Page Allocation
  - 1.6.3 Hardware Support for Paging
  - 1.6.4 Protection and Sharing
- 1.7 Segmentation
  - 1.7.1 Principles of Operation
  - 1.7.2 Address Translation
  - 1.7.3 Protection and Sharing
- 1.8 Summary
- 1.9 Solution/Answers
- 1.10 Further Readings

---

## **1.0 INTRODUCTION**

---

In Block 1 we have studied about introductory concepts of the OS, process management and deadlocks. In this unit, we will go through another important function of the Operating System – the memory management.

Memory is central to the operation of a modern computer system. Memory is a large array of words or bytes, each location with its own address. Interaction is achieved through a sequence of reads/writes of specific memory address. The CPU fetches from the program from the hard disk and stores in memory. If a program is to be executed, it must be mapped to absolute addresses and loaded into memory.

In a multiprogramming environment, in order to improve both the CPU utilization and the speed of the computer's response, several processes must be kept in memory. There are many different algorithms depending on the particular situation to manage the memory. Selection of a memory management scheme for a specific system depends upon many factors, but especially upon the hardware design of the system. Each algorithm requires its own hardware support.

The Operating System is responsible for the following activities in connection with memory management:

- Keep track of which parts of memory are currently being used and by whom.
- Decide which processes are to be loaded into memory when memory space becomes available.
- Allocate and deallocate memory space as needed.

In the multiprogramming environment operating system dynamically allocates memory to multiple processes. Thus memory plays a significant role in the important aspects of computer system like performance, S/W support, reliability and stability.

Memory can be broadly classified into two categories—the primary memory (like cache and RAM) and the secondary memory (like magnetic tape, disk etc.). The memory is a resource that needs effective and efficient management. The part of OS that perform this vital task of memory management is known as **memory manager**. In multiprogramming system, as available memory is shared among number of processes, so the allocation speed and the efficient memory utilization (in terms of minimal overheads and reuse/relocation of released memory block) are of prime concern. Protection is difficult to achieve with relocation requirement, as location of process and absolute address in memory is unpredictable. But at run-time, it can be done. Fortunately, we have mechanisms supporting protection like processor (hardware) support that is able to abort the instructions violating protection and trying to interrupt other processes.

This unit collectively depicts such memory management related responsibilities in detail by the OS. Further we will discuss, the basic approaches of allocation are of two types:

**Contiguous Memory Allocation:** Each programs data and instructions are allocated a single contiguous space in memory.

**Non-Contiguous Memory Allocation:** Each programs data and instructions are allocated memory space that is not continuous. This unit focuses on contiguous memory allocation scheme.

---

## 1.1 OBJECTIVES

---

After going through this unit, you should be able to:

- describe the various activities handled by the operating system while performing the memory management function;
- to allocate memory to the processes when they need it;
- reallocation when processes are terminated;
- logical and physical memory organization;
- memory protection against unauthorized access and sharing;
- to manage swapping between main memory and disk in case main storage is small to hold all processes;
- to summarize the principles of memory management as applied to paging and segmentation;

- compare and contrast paging and segmentation techniques, and
- analyse the various memory portioning/partitioning techniques including overlays, swapping, and placement and replacement policies.

Memory Management

## 1.2 OVERLAYS AND SWAPPING

---

Usually, programs reside on a disk in the form of executable files and for their execution they must be brought into memory and must be placed within a process. Such programs form the ready queue. In general scenario, processes are fetched from ready queue, loaded into memory and then executed. During these stages, addresses may be represented in different ways like in source code addresses or in symbolic form (ex. LABEL). Compiler will bind this symbolic address to relocatable addresses (for example, 16 bytes from base address or start of module). The linkage editor will bind these relocatable addresses to absolute addresses. Before we learn a program in memory we must bind the memory addresses that the program is going to use. Binding is basically assigning which address the code and data are going to occupy. You can bind at compile-time, load-time or execution time.

**Compile-time:** If memory location is known a priori, absolute code can be generated.

**Load-time:** If it is not known, it must generate relocatable at complete time.

**Execution-time:** Binding is delayed until run-time; process can be moved during its execution. We need H/W support for address maps (base and limit registers).

For better memory utilization all modules can be kept on disk in a relocatable format and only main program is loaded into memory and executed. Only on need the other routines are called, loaded and address is updated. Such scheme is called *dynamic loading*, which is user's responsibility rather than OS. But Operating System provides library routines to implement dynamic loading.

In the above discussion we have seen that entire program and its related data is loaded in physical memory for execution. But what if process is larger than the amount of memory allocated to it? We can overcome this problem by adopting a technique called as *Overlays*. Like dynamic loading, overlays can also be implemented by users without OS support. The entire program or application is divided into instructions and data sets such that when one instruction set is needed it is loaded in memory and after its execution is over, the space is released. As and when requirement for other instruction arises it is loaded into space that was released previously by the instructions that are no longer needed. Such instructions can be called as overlays, which are loaded and unloaded by the program.

**Definition:** An overlay is a part of an application, which has been loaded at same origin where previously some other part(s) of the program was residing.

A program based on overlay scheme mainly consists of following:

- A “root” piece which is always memory resident
- Set of overlays.

Overlay gives the program a way to extend limited main storage. An important aspect related to overlays identification in program is concept of mutual exclusion i.e., routines which do not invoke each other and are not loaded in memory simultaneously.

For example, suppose total available memory is 140K. Consider a program with four subroutines named as: *Read()*, *Function1()*, *Function2()* and *Display()*. First, *Read* is invoked that reads a set of data. Based on this data set values, conditionally either one of routine *Function1* or *Function2* is called. And then *Display* is called to output results. Here, *Function1* and *Function2* are mutually exclusive and are not required simultaneously in memory. The memory requirement can be shown as in *Figure 1*:

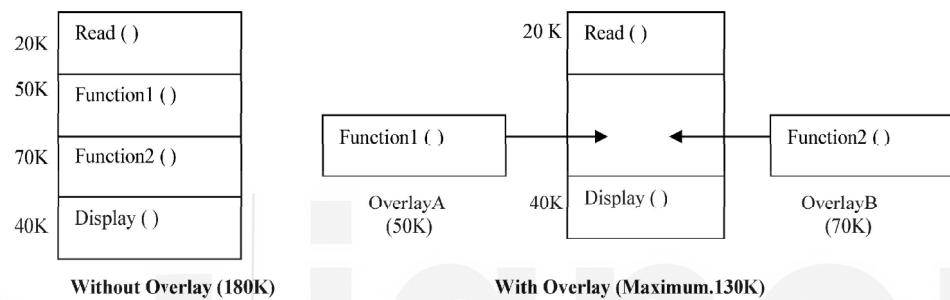


Figure 1: Example of overlay

Without the overlay it requires 180 K of memory and with the overlay support memory requirement is 130K. Overlay manager/driver is responsible for loading and unloading on overlay segment as per requirement. But this scheme suffers from following limitations:

- Require careful and time-consuming planning.
- Programmer is responsible for organising overlay structure of program with the help of file structures etc. and also to ensure that piece of code is already loaded when it is called.
- Operating System provides the facility to load files into overlay region.

### Swapping

Swapping is an approach for memory management by bringing each process in entirety, running it and then putting it back on the disk, so that another program may be loaded into that space. Swapping is a technique that lets you use a disk file as an extension of memory. Lower priority user processes are swapped to backing store (disk) when they are waiting for I/O or some other event like arrival of higher priority processes. This is *Rollout Swapping*. Swapping the process back into store when some event occurs or when needed (may be in a different partition) is known as *Roll-in swapping*. *Figure 2* depicts technique of swapping:

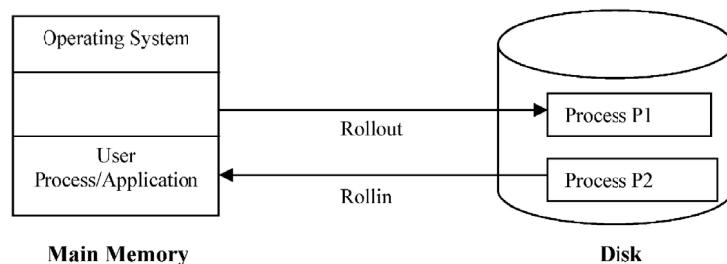


Figure 2: Swapping

- Allows higher degree of multiprogramming.
- Allows dynamic relocation, i.e., if address binding at execution time is being used we can swap in different location else in case of compile and load time bindings processes have to be moved to same location only.
- Better memory utilization.
- Less wastage of CPU time on compaction, and
- Can easily be applied on priority-based scheduling algorithms to improve performance.

Though swapping has these benefits but it has few limitations also like entire program must be resident in store when it is executing. Also processes with changing memory requirements will need to issue system calls for requesting and releasing memory. It is necessary to know exactly how much memory a user process is using and also that it is blocked or waiting for I/O.

If we assume a data transfer rate of 1 megabyte/sec and access time of 10 milliseconds, then to actually transfer a 100Kbyte process we require:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Transfer Time} &= 100\text{K} / 1,000 = 1/10 \text{ seconds} \\ &= 100 \text{ milliseconds} \\ \text{Access time} &= 10 \text{ milliseconds} \\ \text{Total time} &= 110 \text{ milliseconds}\end{aligned}$$

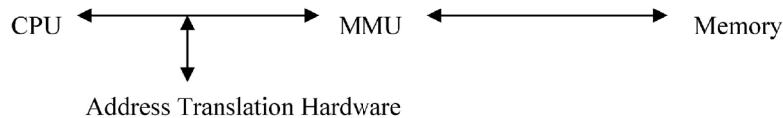
As both the swap out and swap in should take place, the total swap time is then about 220 milliseconds (above time is doubled). A round robin CPU scheduling should have a time slot size much larger relative to swap time of 220 milliseconds. Also if process is not utilising memory space and just waiting for I/O operation or blocked, it should be swapped.

### **1.3 LOGICAL AND PHYSICAL ADDRESS SPACE**

The computer interacts via logical and physical addressing to map memory. Logical address is the one that is generated by CPU, also referred to as virtual address. The program perceives this address space. Physical address is the actual address understood by computer hardware i.e., memory unit. Logical to physical address translation is taken care by the Operating System. The term *virtual memory* refers to the abstraction of separating LOGICAL memory (i.e., memory as seen by the process) from PHYSICAL memory (i.e., memory as seen by the processor). Because of this separation, the programmer needs to be aware of only the logical memory space while the operating system maintains two or more levels of physical memory space.

In compile-time and load-time address binding schemes these two tend to be the same. These differ in execution-time address binding scheme and the MMU (Memory Management Unit) handles translation of these addresses.

*Definition:* MMU (as shown in the *Figure 3*) is a hardware device that maps logical address to the physical address. It maps the virtual address to the real store location. The simple MMU scheme adds the relocation register contents to the base address of the program that is generated at the time it is sent to memory.



**Figure 3: Role of MMU**

The entire set of logical addresses forms logical address space and set of all corresponding physical addresses makes physical address space.

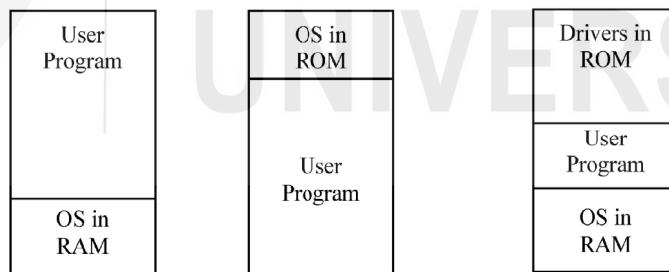
---

## 1.4 SINGLE PROCESS MONITOR (MONOPROGRAMMING)

---

In the simplest case of single-user system everything was easy as at a time there was just one process in memory and no address translation was done by the operating system dynamically during execution. Protection of OS (or part of it) can be achieved by keeping it in ROM. We can also have a separate OS address space only accessible in supervisor mode as shown in *Figure 4*.

The user can employ overlays if memory requirement by a program exceeds the size of physical memory. In this approach only one process at a time can be in running state in the system. Example of such system is MS-DOS which is a single tasking system having a command interpreter. Such an arrangement is limited in capability and performance.



**Figure 4: Single Partition System**

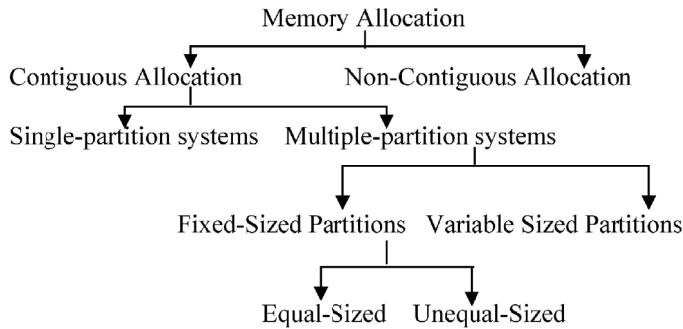
---

## 1.5 CONTIGUOUS ALLOCATION METHODS

---

In a practical scenario Operating System could be divided into several categories as shown in the hierarchical chart given below:

- 1) Single process system
- 2) Multiple process system with two types: Fixed partition memory and variable partition memory.



Further we will learn these schemes in next section.

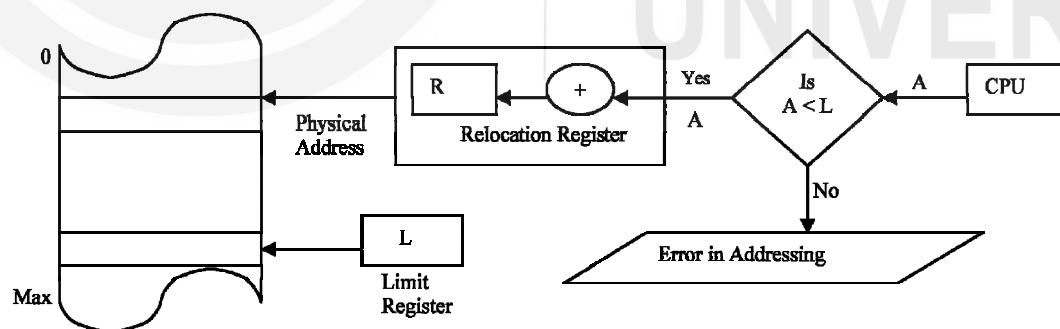
### Partitioned Memory allocation:

The concept of multiprogramming emphasizes on maximizing CPU utilization by overlapping CPU and I/O. Memory may be allocated as:

- Single large partition for processes to use or
- Multiple partitions with a single process using a single partition.

#### 1.5.1 Single-Partition System

This approach keeps the Operating System in the lower part of the memory and other user processes in the upper part. With this scheme, Operating System can be protected from updating in user processes. Relocation-register scheme known as *dynamic relocation* is useful for this purpose. It not only protects user processes from each other but also from changing OS code and data. Two registers are used: relocation register, contains value of the smallest physical address and limit register, contains logical addresses range. Both these are set by Operating System when the job starts. At load time of program (i.e., when it has to be relocated) we must establish “addressability” by adjusting the relocation register contents to the new starting address for the program. The scheme is shown in *Figure 5*.



**Figure 5: Dynamic Relocation**

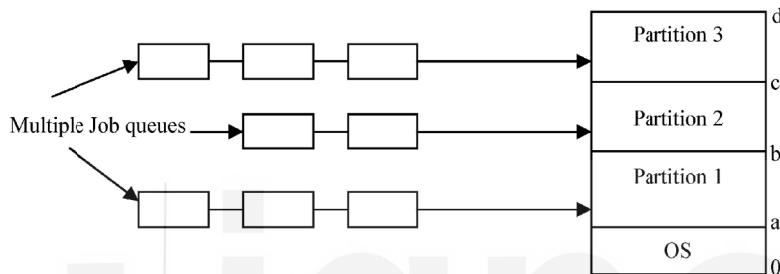
The contents of a relocation register are implicitly added to any address references generated by the program. Some systems use base registers as relocation register for easy addressability as these are within programmer's control. Also, in some systems, relocation is managed and accessed by Operating System only.

To summarize this, we can say, in dynamic relocation scheme if the logical address space range is 0 to *Max* then physical address space range is *R*+0 to *R*+*Max* (where *R* is relocation register contents). Similarly, a limit register is checked by

H/W to be sure that logical address generated by CPU is not bigger than size of the program.

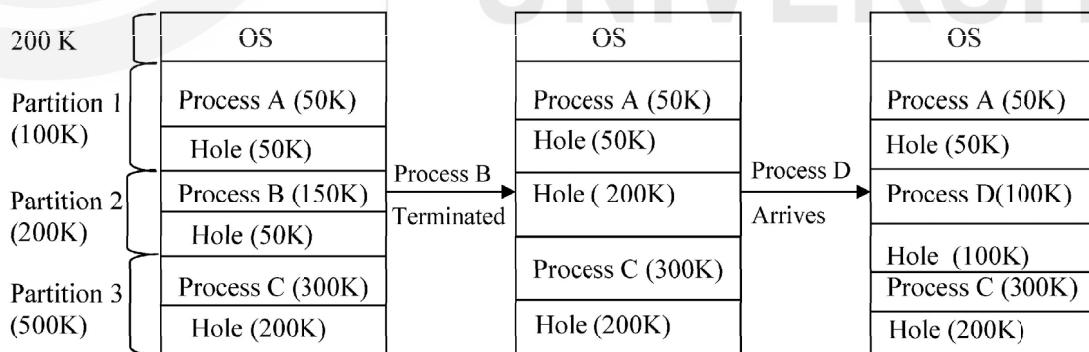
### 1.5.2 Multiple Partition System: Fixed-sized partition

This is also known as *static partitioning* scheme as shown in *Figure 6*. Simple memory management scheme is to divide memory into  $n$  (possibly unequal) fixed-sized partitions, each of which can hold exactly one process. The degree of multiprogramming is dependent on the number of partitions. IBM used this scheme for systems 360 OS/MFT (Multiprogramming with a fixed number of tasks). The partition boundaries are not movable (must reboot to move a job). We can have one queue per partition or just a single queue for all the partitions.



**Figure 6: Multiple Partition System**

Initially, whole memory is available for user processes and is like a large block of available memory. Operating System keeps details of available memory blocks and occupied blocks in tabular form. OS also keeps track on memory requirements of each process. As processes enter into the input queue and when sufficient space for it is available, process is allocated space and loaded. After its execution is over it releases its occupied space and OS fills this space with other processes in input queue. The block of available memory is known as a *Hole*. Holes of various sizes are scattered throughout the memory. When any process arrives, it is allocated memory from a hole that is large enough to accommodate it. This example is shown in *Figure 7*:



**Figure 7: Fixed-sized Partition Scheme**

If a hole is too large, it is divided into two parts:

- 1) One that is allocated to next process of input queue
- 2) Added with set of holes.

Within a partition if two holes are adjacent then they can be merged to make a single large hole. But this scheme suffers from fragmentation problem. Storage

fragmentation occurs either because the user processes do not completely accommodate the allotted partition or partition remains unused, if it is too small to hold any process from input queue. Main memory utilization is extremely inefficient. Any program, no matter how small, occupies entire partition. In our example, process B takes 150K of partition2 (200K size). We are left with 50K sized hole. This phenomenon, in which there is wasted space internal to a partition, is known as *internal fragmentation*. It occurs because initially process is loaded in partition that is large enough to hold it (i.e., allocated memory may be slightly larger than requested memory). “Internal” here means memory that is internal to a partition, but is not in use.

### 1.5.3 Variable-sized Partition

This scheme is also known as *dynamic partitioning*. In this scheme, boundaries are not fixed. Processes accommodate memory according to their requirement. There is no wastage as partition size is exactly same as the size of the user process. Initially when processes start this wastage can be avoided but later on when they terminate they leave holes in the main storage. Other processes can accommodate these, but eventually they become too small to accommodate new jobs as shown in *Figure 8*.

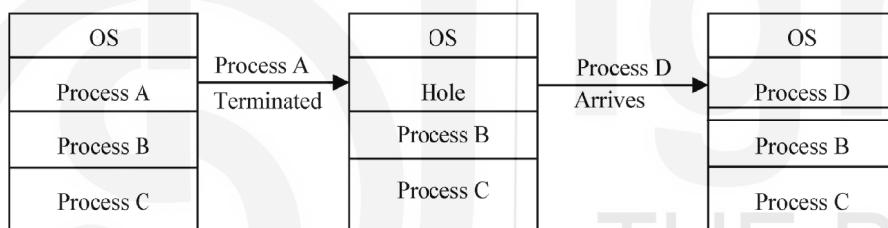


Figure 8: Variable sized partitions

IBM used this technique for OS/MVT (Multiprogramming with a Variable number of Tasks) as the partitions are of variable length and number. But still fragmentation anomaly exists in this scheme. As time goes on and processes are loaded and removed from memory, fragmentation increases and memory utilization declines. This wastage of memory, which is external to partition, is known as *external fragmentation*. In this, though there is enough total memory to satisfy a request but as it is not contiguous and it is fragmented into small holes, that can't be utilized.

External fragmentation problem can be resolved by **coalescing holes** and **storage compaction**. **Coalescing holes** is process of merging existing hole adjacent to a process that will terminate and free its allocated space. Thus, new adjacent holes and existing holes can be viewed as a single large hole and can be efficiently utilized.

There is another possibility that holes are distributed throughout the memory. For utilising such scattered holes, shuffle all occupied areas of memory to one end and leave all free memory space as a single large block, which can further be utilized. This mechanism is known as *Storage Compaction*, as shown in *Figure 9*.

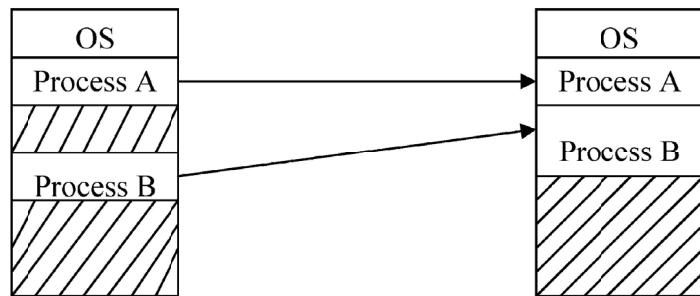


Figure 9: Storage Compaction

But storage compaction also has its limitations as shown below:

- 1) It requires extra overheads in terms of resource utilization and large response time.
- 2) Compaction is required frequently because jobs terminate rapidly. This enhances system resource consumption and makes compaction expensive.
- 3) Compaction is possible only if dynamic relocation is being used (at run-time). This is because the memory contents that are shuffled (i.e., relocated) and executed in new location require all internal addresses to be relocated.

In a multiprogramming system memory is divided into a number of fixed size or variable sized partitions or regions, which are allocated to running processes. For example: a process needs  $m$  words of memory may run in a partition of  $n$  words where  $n$  is greater than or equal to  $m$ . The variable size partition scheme may result in a situation where available memory is not contiguous, but fragmentation and external fragmentation. The difference ( $n-m$ ) is called internal fragmentation, memory which is internal to a partition but is not being used. If a partition is unused and available, but too small to be used by any waiting process, then it is accounted for external fragmentation. These memory fragments cannot be used.

In order to solve this problem, we can either compact the memory making large free memory blocks, or implement paging scheme which allows a program's memory to be noncontiguous, thus permitting a program to be allocated physical memory wherever it is available.

#### ☛ Check Your Progress 1

- 1) What are the four important tasks of a memory manager?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

- 2) What are the three tricks used to resolve absolute addresses?

.....  
.....

- 3) What are the problems that arise with absolute addresses in terms of swapping?

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

## 1.6 PAGING

We will see the principles of operation of the paging in the next section.

Paging scheme solves the problem faced in variable sized partitions like external fragmentation.

### 1.6.1 Principles of Operation

In a paged system, logical memory is divided into a number of fixed sizes ‘chunks’ called *pages*. The physical memory is also predivided into same fixed sized blocks (as is the size of pages) called *page frames*. The page sizes (also the frame sizes) are always powers of 2, and vary between 512 bytes to 8192 bytes per page. The reason behind this is implementation of paging mechanism using page number and page offset. This is discussed in detail in the following sections:

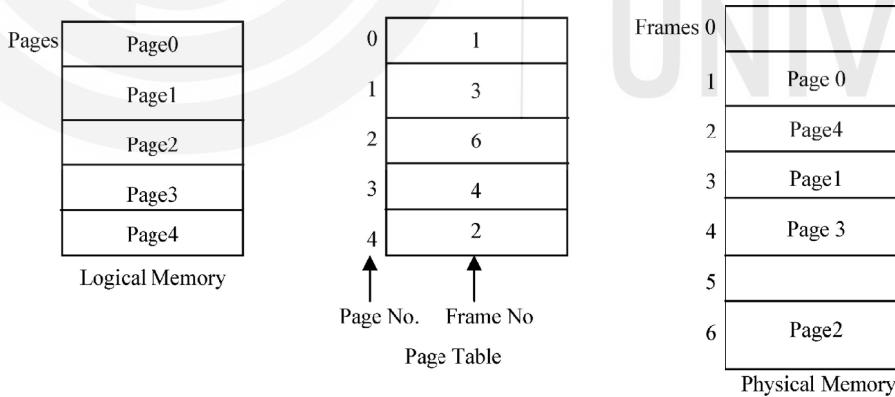


Figure 10: Principle of operation of paging

Each process page is loaded to some memory frame. These pages can be loaded into contiguous frames in memory or into noncontiguous frames also as shown in *Figure 10*. The external fragmentation is alleviated since processes are loaded into separate holes.

### 1.6.2 Page Allocation

In variable sized partitioning of memory every time when a process of size  $n$  is to be loaded it is important to know the best location from the list of available/free

holes. This dynamic storage allocation is necessary to increase efficiency and throughput of system. Most commonly used strategies to make such selection are:

- 1) **Best-fit Policy:** Allocating the hole in which the process fits most “tightly” i.e., the difference between the hole size and the process size is the minimum one.
- 2) **First-fit Policy:** Allocating the first available hole (according to memory order), which is big enough to accommodate the new process.
- 3) **Worst-fit Policy:** Allocating the largest hole that will leave maximum amount of unused space i.e., leftover space is maximum after allocation.

Now, question arises which strategy is likely to be used? In practice, best-fit and first-fit are better than worst-fit. Both these are efficient in terms of time and storage requirement. Best-fit minimize the leftover space, create smallest hole that could be rarely used. First-fit on the other hand requires least overheads in its implementation because of its simplicity. Possibly worst-fit also sometimes leaves large holes that could further be used to accommodate other processes. Thus all these policies have their own merits and demerits.

### 1.6.3 Hardware Support for Paging

Every logical page in paging scheme is divided into two parts:

- 1) A page number (p) in logical address space
- 2) The displacement (or offset) in page p at which item resides (i.e., from start of page).

This is known as Address Translation scheme. For example, a 16-bit address can be divided as given in *Figure* below:

15	00110	10	0
Page No. (p)		Displacement (d)	

Here, as page number takes 5bits, so range of values is 0 to 31(i.e.  $2^5-1$ ). Similarly, offset value uses 11-bits, so range is 0 to 2047(i.e.,  $2^{11}-1$ ). Summarizing this we can say paging scheme uses 32 pages, each with 2048 locations.

The table, which holds virtual address to physical address translations, is called the **page table**. As displacement is constant, so only translation of virtual page number to physical page is required. This can be seen diagrammatically in *Figure 11*.

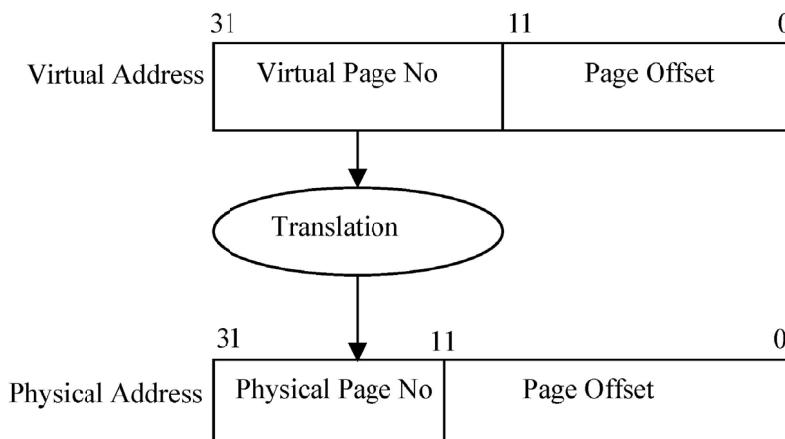
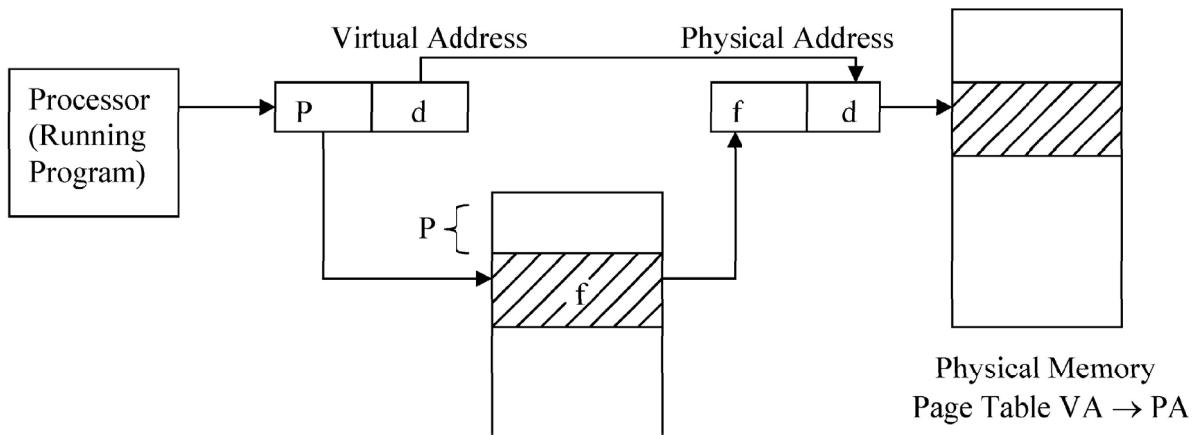


Figure 11: Address Translation scheme

Page number is used as an index into a page table and the latter contains base address of each corresponding physical memory page number (Frame). This reduces dynamic relocation efforts. The Paging hardware support is shown diagrammatically in *Figure 12*:



**Figure 12: Direct Mapping**

### Paging address Translation by direct mapping

This is the case of direct mapping as page table sends directly to physical memory page. This is shown in *Figure 12*. But disadvantage of this scheme is its speed of translation. This is because page table is kept in primary storage and its size can be considerably large which increases instruction execution time (also access time) and hence decreases system speed. To overcome this additional hardware support of registers and buffers can be used. This is explained in next section.

### Paging Address Translation with Associative Mapping

This scheme is based on the use of dedicated registers with high speed and efficiency. These small, fast-lookup cache help to place the entire page table into a content-addresses associative storage, hence speed-up the lookup problem with a cache. These are known as associative registers or Translation Look-aside Buffers (TLB's). Each register consists of two entries:

- 1) Key, which is matched with logical page p.
- 2) Value which returns page frame number corresponding to p.

It is similar to direct mapping scheme but here as TLB's contain only few page table entries, so search is fast. But it is quite expensive due to register support. So, both direct and associative mapping schemes can also be combined to get more benefits. Here, page number is matched with all associative registers simultaneously. The percentage of the number of times the page is found in TLB's is called hit ratio. If it is not found, it is searched in page table and added into TLB. But if TLB is already full then page replacement policies can be used. Entries in TLB can be limited only. This combined scheme is shown in *Figure 13*.

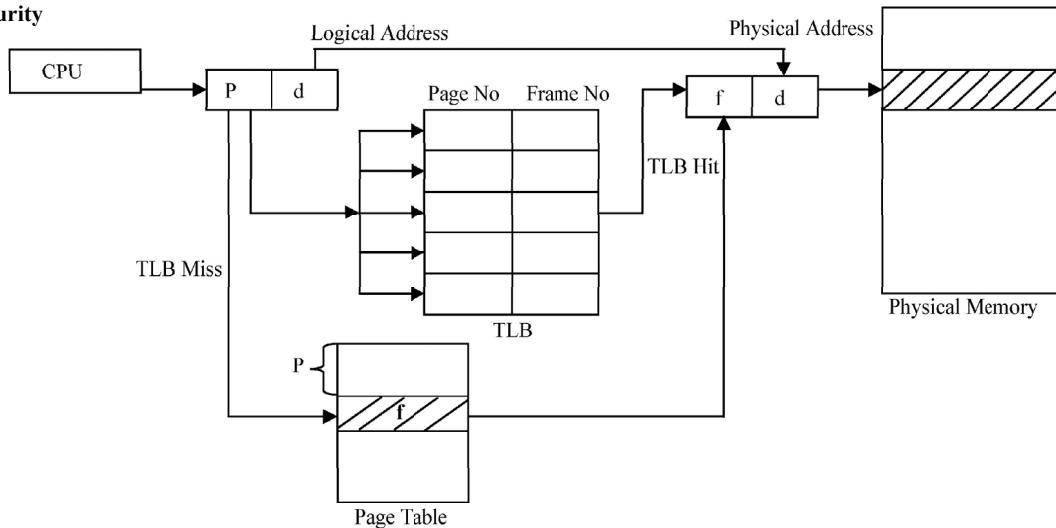


Figure 13: Combined Associative/ Direct Mapping

#### 1.6.4 Protection and Sharing

Paging hardware typically also contains some protection mechanism. In page table corresponding to each frame a protection bit is associated. This bit can tell if page is read-only or read-write. Sharing code and data takes place if two page table entries in different processes point to same physical page, the processes share the memory. If one process writes the data, other process will see the changes. It is a very efficient way to communicate. Sharing must also be controlled to protect modification and accessing data in one process by another process. For this programs are kept separately as procedures and data, where procedures and data that are non-modifiable (pure/reentrant code) can be shared. Reentrant code cannot modify itself and must make sure that it has a separate copy of per-process global variables. Modifiable data and procedures cannot be shared without concurrency controls. Non-modifiable procedures are also known as pure procedures or reentrant codes (can't change during execution). For example, only one copy of editor or compiler code can be kept in memory, and all editor or compiler processes can execute that single copy of the code. This helps memory utilization. Major advantages of paging scheme are:

- 1) Virtual address space must be greater than main memory size.i.e., can execute program with large logical address space as compared with physical address space.
- 2) Avoid external fragmentation and hence storage compaction.
- 3) Full utilization of available main storage.

*Disadvantages of paging* include internal fragmentation problem i.e., wastage within allocated page when process is smaller than page boundary. Also, extra resource consumption and overheads for paging hardware and virtual address to physical address translation takes place.

---

## 1.7 SEGMENTATION

---

In the earlier section we have seen the memory management scheme called as paging.

In general, a user or a programmer prefers to view system memory as a collection of variable-sized segments rather than as a linear array of words. Segmentation is a memory management scheme that supports this view of memory.

### 1.7.1 Principles of Operation

Segmentation presents an alternative scheme for memory management. This scheme divides the logical address space into variable length chunks, called segments, with no proper ordering among them. Each segment has a name and a length. For simplicity, segments are referred by a segment number, rather than by a name. Thus, the logical addresses are expressed as a pair of segment number and offset within segment. It allows a program to be broken down into logical parts according to the user view of the memory, which is then mapped into physical memory. Though logical addresses are two-dimensional but actual physical addresses are still one-dimensional array of bytes only.

### 1.7.2 Address Translation

This mapping between two is done by segment table, which contains segment base and its limit. The segment base has starting physical address of segment, and segment limit provides the length of segment. This scheme is depicted in *Figure 14*.

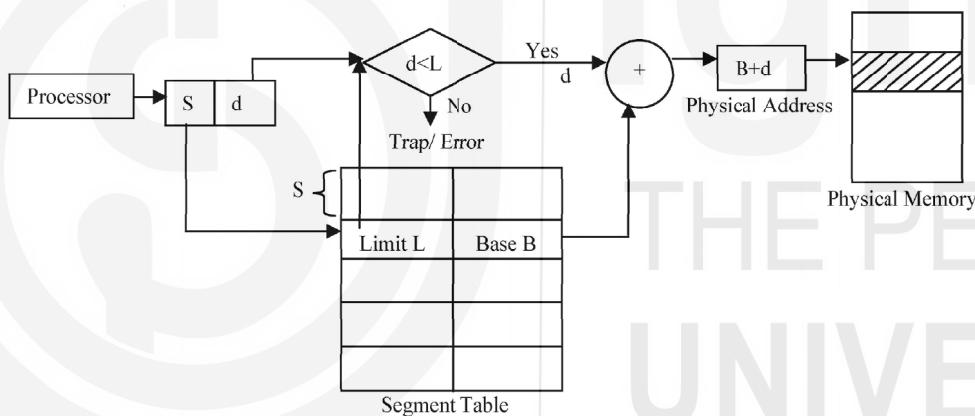


Figure 14: Address Translation

The offset  $d$  must range between 0 and segment limit/length, otherwise it will generate address error. For example, consider situation shown in *Figure 15*.

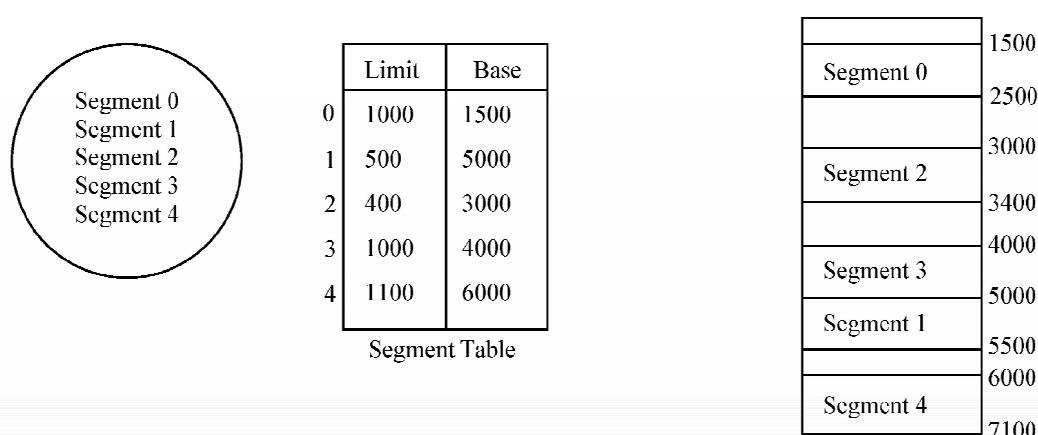


Figure 15: Principle pf operation of representation

This scheme is similar to variable partition allocation method with improvement that the process is divided into parts. For fast retrieval we can use registers as in paged scheme. This is known as a segment-table length register (STLR). The segments in a segmentation scheme correspond to logical divisions of the process and are defined by program names. Extract the segment number and offset from logical address first. Then use segment number as index into segment table to obtain segment base address and its limit /length. Also, check that the offset is not greater than given limit in segment table. Now, general physical address is obtained by adding the offset to the base address.

### **1.7.3 Protection and Sharing**

This method also allows segments that are read-only to be shared, so that two processes can use shared code for better memory efficiency. The implementation is such that no program can read from or write to segments belonging to another program, except the segments that have been set up to be shared. With each segment-table entry protection bit specifying segment as read-only or execute only can be used. Hence illegal attempts to write into a read-only segment can be prevented.

Sharing of segments can be done by making common /same entries in segment tables of two different processes which point to same physical location. Segmentation may suffer from external fragmentation i.e., when blocks of free memory are not enough to accommodate a segment. Storage compaction and coalescing can minimize this drawback.

#### **☛ Check Your Progress 2**

- 1) What is the advantage of using Base and Limit registers?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

- 2) How does lookup work with TLB's?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

- 3) Why is page size always powers of 2?

.....  
.....

- .....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....
- 4) A system with 18-bit address uses 6 bits for page number and next 12 bits for offset. Compute the total number of pages and express the following address according to paging scheme 001011(page number) and 000000111000 (offset)?
- .....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

---

## 1.8 SUMMARY

---

In this unit, we have learnt how memory resource is managed and how processes are protected from each other. The previous two sections covered memory allocation techniques like swapping and overlays, which tackle the utilization of memory. Paging and segmentation was presented as memory management schemes. Both have their own merits and demerits. We have also seen how paging is based on physical form of process and is independent of the programming structures, while segmentation is dependent on logical structure of process as viewed by user. We have also considered fragmentation (internal and external) problems and ways to tackle them to increase level of multiprogramming and system efficiency. Concept of relocation and compaction helps to overcome external fragmentation.

---

## 1.9 SOLUTIONS / ANSWERS

---

### Check Your Progress 1

- 1) i) Keep track of which parts of memory are in use.  
ii) Allocate memory to processes when they require it.  
iii) Protect memory against unauthorised accesses.  
iv) Simulate the appearance of a bigger main memory by moving data automatically between main memory and disk.
- 2) i) Position Independent Code [PIC]  
ii) Dynamic Relocation  
iii) Base and Limit Registers.

- 3) When a program is loaded into memory at different locations, the absolute addresses will not work without software or hardware tricks.

### Check Your Progress 2

- 1) These help in dynamic relocation. They make a job easy to move in memory.
- 2) With TLB support steps determine page number and offset first. Then look up page number in TLB. If it is there, add offset to physical page number and access memory location. Otherwise, trap to OS. OS performs check, looks up physical page number, and loads translation into TLB. Then restart the instruction.
- 3) Paging is implemented by breaking up an address into a page and offset number. It is efficient to break address into X page bits and Y offset bits, rather than calculating address based on page number and offset. Because each bit position represents a power of 2, splitting an address between bits results in a page size that is a power of 2.
- 4) Page Number (6 Bits)=001011 = 11(decimal)

Page Number range=  $(2^6 - 1) = 63$

Displacement (12 Bits)=000000111000 = 56(decimal)

---

### 1.10 FURTHER READINGS

---

- 1) H.M.Deitel, *Operating Systems*, published by Pearson Education Asia, New Delhi.
- 2) Abraham Silberschatz and Peter Baer Galvin, *Operating System Concepts*, Wiley and Sons (Asia) Publications, New Delhi.
- 3) Andrew S.Tanenbaum, *Operating Systems- Design and Implementation*, published by Prentice Hall of India Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.
- 4) Colin Ritchie, *Operating Systems incorporating UNIX and Windows*, BPB Publications, New Delhi.

---

## **UNIT 2 VIRTUAL MEMORY**

---

### **Structure**

- 2.0 Introduction
- 2.1 Objectives
- 2.2 Virtual Memory
  - 2.2.1 Principles of Operation
  - 2.2.2 Virtual Memory Management
  - 2.2.3 Protection and Sharing
- 2.3 Demand Paging
- 2.4 Page Replacement Policies
  - 2.4.1 First In First Out (FIFO)
  - 2.4.2 Second Chance (SC)
  - 2.4.3 Least Recently Used (LRU)
  - 2.4.4 Optimal Algorithm (OPT)
  - 2.4.5 Least Frequently Used (LFU)
- 2.5 Thrashing
  - 2.5.1 Working-Set Model
  - 2.5.2 Page-Fault Rate
- 2.6 Demand Segmentation
- 2.7 Combined Systems
  - 2.7.1 Segmented Paging
  - 2.7.2 Paged Segmentation
- 2.8 Summary
- 2.9 Solutions/Answers
- 2.10 Further Readings

---

## **2.0 INTRODUCTION**

---

In the earlier unit, we have studied Memory Management covering topics like the overlays, contiguous memory allocation, static and dynamic partitioned memory allocation, paging and segmentation techniques. In this unit, we will study an important aspect of memory management known as Virtual memory.

Storage allocation has always been an important consideration in computer programming due to the high cost of the main memory and the relative abundance and lower cost of secondary storage. Program code and data required for execution of a process must reside in the main memory but the main memory may not be large enough to accommodate the needs of an entire process. Early computer programmers divided programs into the sections that were transferred into the main memory for the period of processing time. As the program proceeded, new sections moved into the main memory and replaced sections that were not needed at that time. In this early era of computing, the programmer was responsible for devising this overlay system.

As higher-level languages became popular for writing more complex programs and the programmer became less familiar with the machine, the efficiency of complex programs suffered from poor overlay systems. The problem of storage allocation became more complex.

Two theories for solving the problem of inefficient memory management emerged — static and dynamic allocation. **Static** allocation assumes that the availability of memory resources and the memory reference string of a program can be predicted. **Dynamic** allocation relies on memory usage increasing and decreasing with actual program needs, not on predicting memory needs.

Program objectives and machine advancements in the 1960s made the predictions required for static allocation difficult, if not impossible. Therefore, the dynamic allocation solution was generally accepted, but opinions about implementation were still divided. One group believed the programmer should continue to be responsible for storage allocation, which would be accomplished by system calls to allocate or deallocate memory. The second group supported **automatic storage allocation** performed by the operating system, because of increasing complexity of storage allocation and emerging importance of multiprogramming. In 1961, two groups proposed a one-level memory store. One proposal called for a very large main memory to alleviate any need for storage allocation. This solution was not possible due to its very high cost. The second proposal is known as virtual memory.

In this unit, we will go through virtual memory and related topics.

---

## 2.1 OBJECTIVES

---

After going through this unit, you should be able to:

- discuss why virtual memory is needed;
- define virtual memory and its underlying concepts;
- describe the page replacement policies like Optimal, FIFO and LRU;
- discuss the concept of thrashing, and
- explain the need of the combined systems like Segmented paging and Paged segmentation.

---

## 2.2 VIRTUAL MEMORY

---

It is common for modern processors to be running multiple processes at one time. Each process has an address space associated with it. To create a whole complete address space for each process would be much too expensive, considering that processes may be created and killed often, and also considering that many processes use only a tiny bit of their possible address space. Last but not the least, even with modern improvements in hardware technology, machine resources are still finite. Thus, it is necessary to share a smaller amount of physical memory among many processes, with each process being given the appearance of having its own exclusive address space.

The most common way of doing this is a technique called virtual memory, which has been known since the 1960s but has become common on computer systems since the late 1980s. The virtual memory scheme divides physical memory into blocks and allocates blocks to different processes. Of course, in order to do this sensibly it is highly desirable to have a protection scheme that restricts a process to be able to access only those blocks that are assigned to it. Such a protection scheme is thus a necessary, and somewhat involved, aspect of any virtual memory implementation.

One other advantage of using virtual memory that may not be immediately apparent is that it often reduces the time taken to launch a program, since not all the program code and data need to be in physical memory before the program execution can be started.

Although sharing the physical address space is a desirable end, it was not the sole reason that virtual memory became common on contemporary systems. Until the late 1980s, if a program became too large to fit in one piece in physical memory, it was the programmer's job to see that it fit. Programmers typically did this by breaking programs into pieces, each of which was mutually exclusive in its logic. When a program was launched, a main piece that initiated the execution would first be loaded into physical memory, and then the other parts, called overlays, would be loaded as needed.

It was the programmer's task to ensure that the program never tried to access more physical memory than was available on the machine, and also to ensure that the proper overlay was loaded into physical memory whenever required. These responsibilities made for complex challenges for programmers, who had to be able to divide their programs into logically separate fragments, and specify a proper scheme to load the right fragment at the right time. Virtual memory came about as a means to relieve programmers creating large pieces of software of the wearisome burden of designing overlays.

Virtual memory automatically manages two levels of the memory hierarchy, representing the main memory and the secondary storage, in a manner that is invisible to the program that is running. The program itself never has to bother with the physical location of any fragment of the virtual address space. A mechanism called relocation allows for the same program to run in any location in physical memory, as well. Prior to the use of virtual memory, it was common for machines to include a relocation register just for that purpose. An expensive and messy solution to the hardware solution of a virtual memory would be software that changed all addresses in a program each time it was run. Such a solution would increase the running times of programs significantly, among other things.

Virtual memory enables a program to ignore the physical location of any desired block of its address space; a process can simply seek to access any block of its address space without concern for where that block might be located. If the block happens to be located in the main memory, access is carried out smoothly and quickly; else, the virtual memory has to bring the block in from secondary storage and allow it to be accessed by the program.

The technique of virtual memory is similar to a degree with the use of processor caches. However, the differences lie in the block size of virtual memory being

typically much larger (64 kilobytes and up) as compared with the typical processor cache (128 bytes and up). The hit time, the miss penalty (the time taken to retrieve an item that is not in the cache or primary storage), and the transfer time are all larger in case of virtual memory. However, the miss rate is typically much smaller. (This is no accident—since a secondary storage device, typically a magnetic storage device with much lower access speeds, has to be read in case of a miss, designers of virtual memory make every effort to reduce the miss rate to a level even much lower than that allowed in processor caches).

Virtual memory systems are of two basic kinds—those using fixed-size blocks called pages, and those that use variable-sized blocks called segments.

Suppose, for example, that a main memory of 64 megabytes is required but only 32 megabytes is actually available. To create the illusion of the larger memory space, the memory manager would divide the required space into units called pages and store the contents of these pages in mass storage. A typical page size is no more than four kilobytes. As different pages are actually required in main memory, the memory manager would exchange them for pages that are no longer required, and thus the other software units could execute as though there were actually 64 megabytes of main memory in the machine.

In brief we can say that virtual memory is a technique that allows the execution of processes that may not be completely in memory. One major advantage of this scheme is that the program can be larger than physical memory. Virtual memory can be implemented via demand paging and demand segmentation.

### 2.2.1 Principles of Operation

The purpose of virtual memory is to enlarge the address space, the set of addresses a program can utilise. For example, virtual memory might contain twice as many addresses as main memory. A program using all of virtual memory, therefore, would not be able to fit in main memory all at once. Nevertheless, the computer could execute such a program by copying into the main memory those portions of the program needed at any given point during execution.

To facilitate copying virtual memory into real memory, the operating system divides virtual memory into pages, each of which contains a fixed number of addresses. Each page is stored on a disk until it is needed. When the page is needed, the operating system copies it from disk to main memory, translating the virtual addresses into real addresses.

Addresses generated by programs are virtual addresses. The actual memory cells have physical addresses. A piece of hardware called a memory management unit (MMU) translates virtual addresses to physical addresses at run-time. The process of translating virtual addresses into real addresses is called ***mapping***. The copying of virtual pages from disk to main memory is known as ***paging*** or ***swapping***.

Some physical memory is used to keep a list of references to the most recently accessed information on an I/O (input/output) device, such as the hard disk. The optimisation it provides is that it is faster to read the information from physical memory than use the relevant I/O channel to get that information. This is called ***caching***. It is implemented inside the OS.

## 2.2.2 Virtual Memory Management

This section provides the description of how the virtual memory manager provides virtual memory. It explains how the logical and physical address spaces are mapped to one another and when it is required to use the services provided by the Virtual Memory Manager.

Before going into the details of the management of the virtual memory, let us see the functions of the virtual memory manager. It is responsible to:

- Make portions of the logical address space resident in physical RAM
- Make portions of the logical address space immovable in physical RAM
- Map logical to physical addresses
- Defer execution of application-defined interrupt code until a safe time.

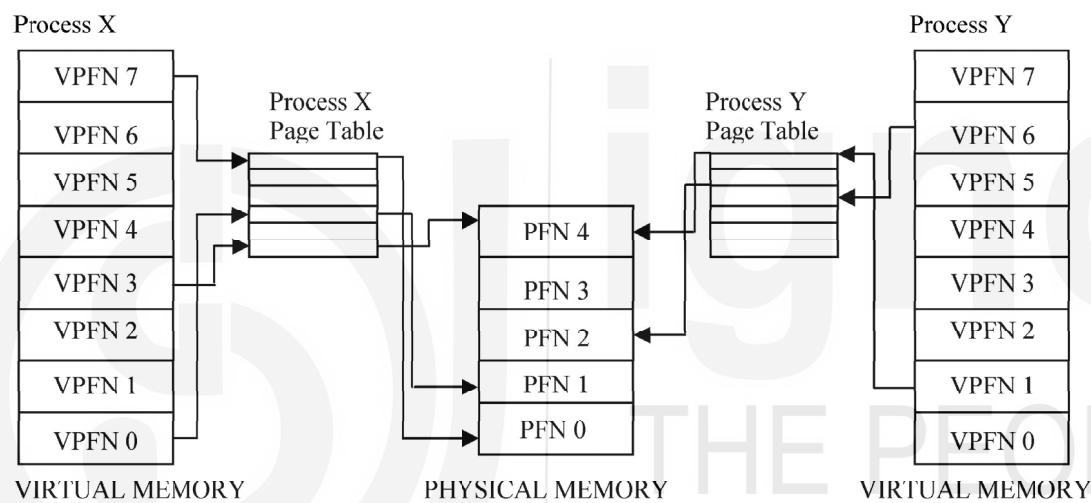


Figure 1: Abstract model of Virtual to Physical address mapping

Before considering the methods that various operating systems use to support virtual memory, it is useful to consider an abstract model that is not cluttered by too much detail.

As the processor executes a program it reads an instruction from memory and decodes it. In decoding the instruction it may need to fetch or store the contents of a location of operands in the memory. The processor then executes the instruction and moves onto the next instruction in the program. In this way the processor is always accessing memory either to fetch instructions or to fetch and store data.

In a virtual memory system all of these addresses are virtual addresses and not physical addresses. These virtual addresses are converted into physical addresses by the processor based on information held in a set of tables maintained by the operating system.

To make this translation easier, virtual and physical memory are divided into small blocks called **pages**. These pages are all of the same size. (It is not necessary that all the pages should be of same size but if they were not, the system would be very hard to administer). Linux on Alpha AXP systems uses 8 Kbytes pages

and on Intel x86 systems it uses 4 Kbytes pages. Each of these pages is given a unique number; the page frame number (PFN) as shown in the *Figure 1*.

In this paged model, a virtual address is composed of two parts, an offset and a virtual page frame number. If the page size is 4 Kbytes, bits 11:0 of the virtual address contain the offset and bits 12 and above are the virtual page frame number. Each time the processor encounters a virtual address it must extract the offset and the virtual page frame number. The processor must translate the virtual page frame number into a physical one and then access the location at the correct offset into that physical page. To do this the processor uses **page tables**.

The *Figure 1* shows the virtual address spaces of two processes, process *X* and process *Y*, each with their own page tables. These page tables map each processes virtual pages into physical pages in memory. This shows that process *X*'s virtual page frame number 0 is mapped into memory in physical page frame number 1 and that process *Y*'s virtual page frame number 1 is mapped into physical page frame number 4. Each entry in the theoretical page table contains the following information:

- *Valid flag* : This indicates if this page table entry is valid.
- *PFN* : The physical page frame number that this entry is describing.
- *Access control information* : This describes how the page may be used. Can it be written to? Does it contain executable code?

The page table is accessed using the virtual page frame number as an offset. Virtual page frame 5 would be the 6th element of the table (0 is the first element).

To translate a virtual address into a physical one, the processor must first work out the virtual addresses page frame number and the offset within that virtual page. By making the page size a power of 2 this can be easily done by masking and shifting. Looking again at the *Figure 1* and assuming a page size of *0x2000* bytes (which is decimal 8192) and an address of *0x2194* in process *Y*'s virtual address space then the processor would translate that address into offset *0x194* into virtual page frame number 1.

The processor uses the virtual page frame number as an index into the processes page table to retrieve its page table entry. If the page table entry at that offset is valid, the processor takes the physical page frame number from this entry. If the entry is invalid, the process has accessed a non-existent area of its virtual memory. In this case, the processor cannot resolve the address and must pass control to the operating system so that it can fix things up.

Just how the processor notifies the operating system that the correct process has attempted to access a virtual address for which there is no valid translation is specific to the processor. However, the processor delivers it, this is known as a **page fault** and the operating system is notified of the faulting virtual address and the reason for the page fault. A page fault is serviced in a number of steps:

- i) Trap to the OS.
- ii) Save registers and process state for the current process.
- iii) Check if the trap was caused because of a page fault and whether the page reference is legal.

- iv) If yes, determine the location of the required page on the backing store.
- v) Find a free frame.
- vi) Read the required page from the backing store into the free frame. (During this I/O, the processor may be scheduled to some other process).
- vii) When I/O is completed, restore registers and process state for the process which caused the page fault and save state of the currently executing process.
- viii) Modify the corresponding PT entry to show that the recently copied page is now in memory.
- ix) Resume execution with the instruction that caused the page fault.

Assuming that this is a valid page table entry, the processor takes that physical page frame number and multiplies it by the page size to get the address of the base of the page in physical memory. Finally, the processor adds in the offset to the instruction or data that it needs.

Using the above example again, process Y's virtual page frame number 1 is mapped to physical page frame number 4 which starts at  $0x8000$  ( $4 \times 0x2000$ ). Adding in the  $0x194$  byte offset gives us a final physical address of  $0x8194$ . By mapping virtual to physical addresses this way, the virtual memory can be mapped into the system's physical pages in any order.

### 2.2.3 Protection and Sharing

Memory protection in a paged environment is realised by protection bits associated with each page, which are normally stored in the page table. Each bit determines a page to be read-only or read/write. At the same time the physical address is calculated with the help of the page table, the protection bits are checked to verify whether the memory access type is correct or not. For example, an attempt to write to a read-only memory page generates a trap to the operating system indicating a memory protection violation.

We can define one more protection bit added to each entry in the page table to determine an invalid program-generated address. This bit is called valid/invalid bit, and is used to generate a trap to the operating system. Valid/invalid bits are also used to allow and disallow access to the corresponding page. This is shown in *Figure 2*.

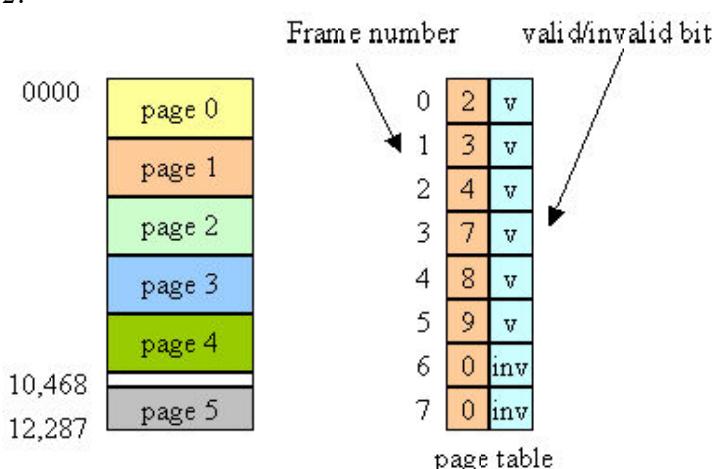


Figure 2: Protection bit in the page table Shared pages

The paging scheme supports the possibility of sharing common program code. For example, a system that supports 40 users, each of them executes a text editor. If the text editor consists of 30 KB of code and 5 KB of data, we need 1400 KB. If the code is reentrant, i.e., it never changes by any write operation during execution (non-self-modifying code) it could be shared as presented in *Figure 3*.

Only one copy of the editor needs to be stored in the physical memory. In each page table, the included editor page is mapped onto the same physical copy of the editor, but the data pages are mapped onto different frames. So, to support 40 users, we only need one copy of the editor, i.e., 30 KB, plus 40 copies of the 5 KB of data pages per user; the total required space is now 230 KB instead of 1400 KB.

Other heavily used programs such as assembler, compiler, database systems etc. can also be shared among different users. The only condition for it is that the code must be reentrant. It is crucial to correct the functionality of shared paging scheme so that the pages are unchanged. If one user wants to change a location, it would be changed for all other users.

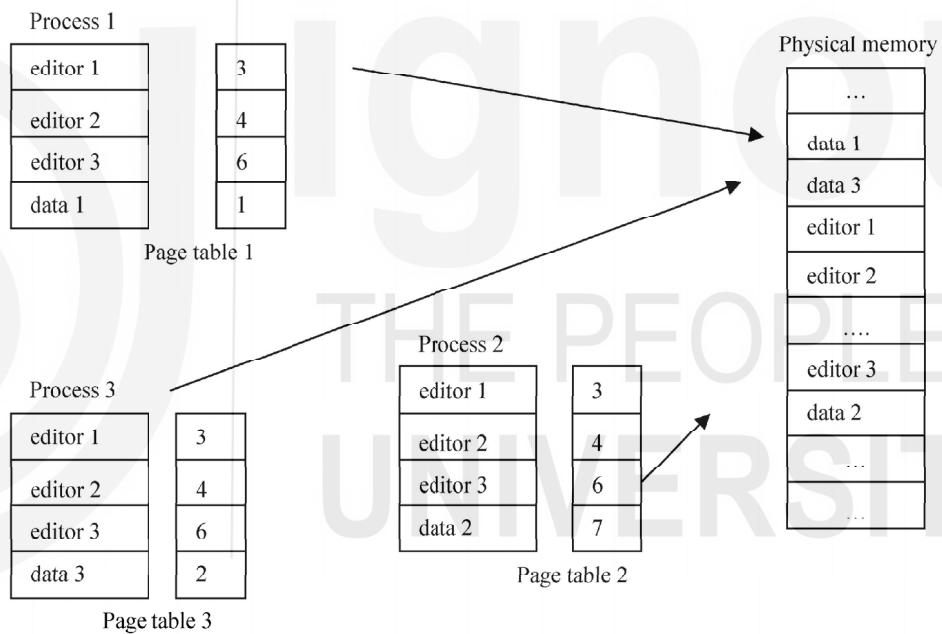


Figure 3: Paging scheme supporting the sharing of program code

## 2.3 DEMAND PAGING

In a multiprogramming system memory is divided into a number of fixed-size or variable-sized partitions or regions that are allocated to running processes. For example: a process needs  $m$  words of memory may run in a partition of  $n$  words where  $n \geq m$ . The variable size partition scheme may result in a situation where available memory is not contiguous, but fragmented into many scattered blocks. We distinguish between *internal fragmentation* and *external fragmentation*. The difference  $(n - m)$  is called internal fragmentation, memory that is internal to a partition but is not being used. If a partition is unused and available, but too small to be used by any waiting process, then it is accounted for external fragmentation. These memory fragments cannot be used.

In order to solve this problem, we can either **compact** the memory making large free memory blocks, or implement **paging** scheme which allows a program's memory to be non-contiguous, thus permitting a program to be allocated to physical memory.

Physical memory is divided into fixed size blocks called **frames**. Logical memory is also divided into blocks of the same, fixed size called **pages**. When a program is to be executed, its pages are loaded into any available memory frames from the disk. The disk is also divided into fixed sized blocks that are the same size as the memory frames.

A very important aspect of paging is the clear separation between the user's view of memory and the actual physical memory. Normally, a user believes that memory is one contiguous space containing only his/her program. In fact, the logical memory is scattered through the physical memory that also contains other programs. Thus, the user can work correctly with his/her own view of memory because of the address translation or address mapping. The address mapping, which is controlled by the operating system and transparent to users, translates logical memory addresses into physical addresses.

Because the operating system is managing the memory, it must be sure about the nature of physical memory, for example: which frames are available, which are allocated; how many total frames there are, and so on. All these parameters are kept in a data structure called **frame table** that has one entry for each physical frame of memory indicating whether it is free or allocated, and if allocated, to which page of which process.

As there is much less physical memory than virtual memory the operating system must be careful that it does not use the physical memory inefficiently. One way to save physical memory is to load only virtual pages that are currently being used by the executing program. For example, a database program may be run to query a database. In this case not the entire database needs to be loaded into memory, just those data records that are being examined. Also, if the database query is a search query then it is not necessary to load the code from the database that deals with adding new records. This technique of only loading virtual pages into memory as they are accessed is known as **demand paging**.

When a process attempts to access a virtual address that is not currently in memory the CPU cannot find a page table entry for the virtual page referenced. For example, in *Figure 1*, there is no entry in *Process X*'s page table for virtual PFN 2 and so if *Process X* attempts to read from an address within virtual PFN 2 the CPU cannot cope and needs the operating system to fix things up. It notifies the operating system that a **page fault** has occurred and the operating system makes the process wait whilst it fixes things up. The CPU must bring the appropriate page into memory from the image on disk. Disk access takes a long time, and so the process must wait quite a while until the page has been fetched. If there are other processes that could run then the operating system will select one of them to run. The fetched page is written into a free physical page frame and an entry for the virtual PFN is added to the processes page table. The process is then restarted at the point where the memory fault occurred. This time the virtual memory access is made, the CPU can make the address translation and so the process continues to

run. This is known as demand paging and occurs when the system is busy but also when an image is first loaded into memory. This mechanism means that a process can execute an image that only partially resides in physical memory at any one time.

The valid/invalid bit of the page table entry for a page, which is swapped in, is set as valid. Otherwise it is set as invalid, which will have no effect as long as the program never attempts to access this page. If all and only those pages actually needed are swapped in, the process will execute exactly as if all pages were brought in.

If the process tries to access a page, which was not swapped in, i.e., the valid/invalid bit of this page table, entry is set to invalid, then a page fault trap will occur. Instead of showing the “invalid address error” as usually, it indicates the operating system’s failure to bring a valid part of the program into memory at the right time in order to minimize swapping overhead.

In order to continue the execution of process, the operating system schedules a disk read operation to bring the desired page into a newly allocated frame. After that, the corresponding page table entry will be modified to indicate that the page is now in memory. Because the state (program counter, registers etc.) of the interrupted process was saved when the page fault trap occurred, the interrupted process can be restarted at the same place and state. As shown, it is possible to execute programs even though parts of it are not (yet) in memory.

In the extreme case, a process without pages in memory could be executed. Page fault trap would occur with the first instruction. After this page was brought into memory, the process would continue to execute. In this way, page fault trap would occur further until every page that is needed was in memory. This kind of paging is called ***pure demand paging***. Pure demand paging says that “never bring a page into memory until it is required”.

## **2.4 PAGE REPLACEMENT POLICIES**

Basic to the implementation of virtual memory is the concept of ***demand paging***. This means that the operating system, and not the programmer, controls the swapping of pages in and out of main memory, as the active processes require them. When a process needs a non-resident page, the operating system must decide which resident page is to be replaced by the requested page. The part of the virtual memory which makes this decision is called the ***replacement policy***.

There are many approaches to the problem of deciding which page is to replace but the object is the same for all-the policy that selects the page that will not be referenced again for the longest time. A few page replacement policies are described below.

### **2.4.1 First In First Out (FIFO)**

The First In First Out (FIFO) replacement policy chooses the page that has been in the memory the longest to be the one replaced.

Normally, as the number of page frames increases, the number of page faults should decrease. However, for FIFO there are cases where this generalisation will fail! This is called Belady's Anomaly. Notice that OPT's never suffers from Belady's anomaly.

### 2.4.2 Second Chance (SC)

The Second Chance (SC) policy is a slight modification of FIFO in order to avoid the problem of replacing a heavily used page. In this policy, a reference bit  $R$  is used to keep track of pages that have been recently referenced. This bit is set to 1 each time the page is referenced. Periodically, all the reference bits are set to 0 by the operating system to distinguish pages that have not been referenced recently from those that have been. Using this bit, the operating system can determine whether old pages are still being used (i.e.,  $R = 1$ ). If so, the page is moved to the end of the list of pages, and its load time is updated as though it had just arrived in memory. Then the search continues. Thus heavily accessed pages are given a “second chance.”

### 2.4.3 Least Recently Used (LRU)

The Least Recently Used (LRU) replacement policy chooses to replace the page which has not been referenced for the longest time. This policy assumes the recent past will approximate the immediate future. The operating system keeps track of when each page was referenced by recording the time of reference or by maintaining a stack of references.

### 2.4.4 Optimal Algorithm (OPT)

Optimal algorithm is defined as replace the page that will not be used for the longest period of time. It is optimal in the performance but not feasible to implement because we cannot predict future time.

#### Example:

Let us consider a 4 frames example

1, 2, 3, 4, 1, 2, 5, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

1	1	1	1	1	4
	2	2	2	2	2
		3	3	3	3
			4	5	5

In the above *Figure*, we have 6 page faults.

### 2.4.5 Least Frequently Used (LFU)

The Least Frequently Used (LFU) replacement policy selects a page for replacement if the page had not been used often in the past. This policy keeps count of the number of times that a page is accessed. Pages with the

lowest counts are replaced while pages with higher counts remain in primary memory.

## 2.5 THRASHING

Thrashing occurs when a system spends more time processing page faults than executing transactions. While processing page faults it is necessary to be in order to appreciate the benefits of virtual memory, thrashing has a negative effect on the system.

As the page fault rate increases, more transactions need processing from the paging device. The queue at the paging device increases, resulting in increased service time for a page fault. While the transactions in the system are waiting for the paging device, CPU utilization, system throughput and system response time decrease, resulting in below optimal performance of a system.

Thrashing becomes a greater threat as the degree of multiprogramming of the system increases.

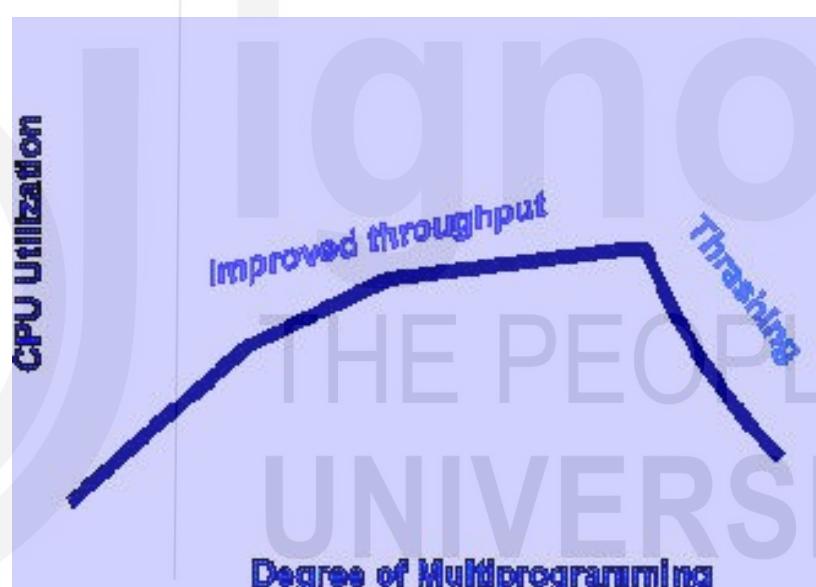


Figure 4: Degree of Multiprogramming

The graph in *Figure 4* shows that there is a degree of multiprogramming that is optimal for system performance. CPU utilization reaches a maximum before a swift decline as the degree of multiprogramming increases and thrashing occurs in the over-extended system. This indicates that controlling the load on the system is important to avoid thrashing. In the system represented by the graph, it is important to maintain the multiprogramming degree that corresponds to the peak of the graph.

The selection of a replacement policy to implement virtual memory plays an important part in the elimination of the potential for thrashing. A policy based on the local mode will tend to limit the effect of thrashing. In local mode, a transaction will replace pages from its assigned partition. Its need to access memory will not affect transactions using other partitions. If other transactions have enough page frames in the partitions they occupy, they will continue to be processed efficiently.

A replacement policy based on the global mode is more likely to cause thrashing. Since all pages of memory are available to all transactions, a memory-intensive transaction may occupy a large portion of memory, making other transactions susceptible to page faults and resulting in a system that thrashes. To prevent thrashing, we must provide processes as many frames as it needs. There are two techniques for this – *Working-Set Model and Page-Fault Rate*.

## 2.5.1 Working-Set Model

### Principle of Locality

Pages are not accessed randomly. At each instant of execution a program tends to use only a small set of pages. As the pages in the set change, the program is said to move from one phase to another. The principle of locality states that most references will be to the current small set of pages in use. The examples are shown below:

#### Examples:

- 1) Instructions are fetched sequentially (except for branches) from the same page.
- 2) Array processing usually proceeds sequentially through the array functions repeatedly, access variables in the top stack frame.

#### Ramification

If we have locality, we are unlikely to continually suffer page-faults. If a page consists of 1000 instructions in self-contained loop, we will only fault once (at most) to fetch all 1000 instructions.

#### Working Set Definition

The working set model is based on the assumption of locality. The idea is to examine the most recent page references in the working set. If a page is in active use, it will be in the Working-set. If it is no longer being used, it will drop from the working set.

The set of pages currently needed by a process is its working set.

$WS(k)$  for a process P is the number of pages needed to satisfy the last k page references for process P.

$WS(t)$  is the number of pages needed to satisfy a process's page references for the last t units of time.

Either can be used to capture the notion of locality.

#### Working Set Policy

Restrict the number of processes on the ready queue so that physical memory can accommodate the working sets of all ready processes. Monitor the working sets of ready processes and, when necessary, reduce multiprogramming (i.e. swap) to avoid thrashing.

**Note:** Exact computation of the working set of each process is difficult, but it can be estimated, by using the reference bits maintained by the hardware to implement an aging algorithm for pages.

When loading a process for execution, pre-load certain pages. This prevents a process from having to “fault into” its working set. May be only a rough guess at start-up, but can be quite accurate on swap-in.

### 2.5.2 Page-Fault Rate

The **working-set model** is successful, and knowledge of the working set can be useful for pre-paging, but it is a scattered way to control thrashing. A page-fault frequency (page-fault rate) takes a more direct approach. In this we establish upper and lower bound on the desired page-fault rate. If the actual page fault rate exceeds the upper limit, we allocate the process another frame. If the page fault rate falls below the lower limit, we remove a frame from the process. Thus, we can directly measure and control the page fault rate to prevent thrashing.

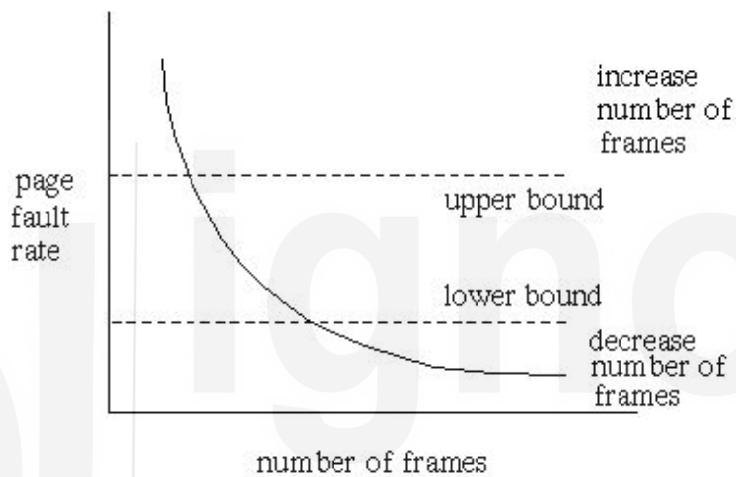


Figure 5: Page-fault frequency

Establish “acceptable” page-fault rate.

- If actual rate too low, process loses frame.
- If actual rate too high, process gains frame.

---

## 2.6 DEMAND SEGMENTATION

---

### Segmentation

Programs generally divide up their memory usage by function. Some memory holds instructions, some static data, some dynamically allocated data, some execution frames. All of these memory types have different protection, growth, and sharing requirements. In the monolithic memory allocation of classic Virtual Memory systems, this model isn’t well supported.

Segmentation addresses this by providing multiple sharable, protectable, growable address spaces that processes can access.

In pure segmentation architecture, segments are allocated like variable partitions, although the memory management hardware is involved in decoding addresses. Pure segmentation addresses replace the page identifier in the virtual address with a segment identifier, and find the proper segment (not page) to which to apply the offset.

The segment table is managed like the page table, except that segments explicitly allow sharing. Protections reside in the segment descriptors, and can use keying or explicit access control lists to apply them.

Of course, the segment name space must be carefully managed, and thus OS must provide a method of doing this. The file system can come to the rescue here—a process can ask for a file to be mapped into a segment and have the OS return the segment register to use. This is known as memory mapping files. It is slightly different from memory mapping devices, because one file system abstraction (a segment) is providing an interface to another (a file). Memory mapped files may be reflected into the file system or not and may be shared or not at the process's discretion.

The biggest problem with segmentation is the same as with variable sized real memory allocation: managing variable sized partitions can be very inefficient, especially when the segments are large compared to physical memory. External fragmentation can easily result in expensive compaction when a large segment is loaded, and swapping large segments (even when compaction is not required) can be costly.

### Demand Segmentation

Same idea as demand paging applied to segments.

If a segment is loaded, base and limit are stored in the Segment Table Entry (STE) and the valid bit is set in the Page Table Entry (PTE). The PTE is accessed for each memory reference. If the segment is not loaded, the valid bit is unset. The base and limit as well as the disk address of the segment is stored in the OS table. Reference to a non-loaded segment generates a segment fault (analogous to page fault). To load a segment, we must solve both the placement question and the replacement question (for demand paging, there is no placement question).

---

## 2.7 COMBINED SYSTEMS

---

The combined systems are of two types. They are:

- Segmented Paging
- Paged Segmentation

### 2.7.1 Segmented Paging

In a pure paging scheme, the user thinks in terms of a contiguous linear address space, and internal fragmentation is a problem when portions of that address space include conservatively large estimates of the size of dynamic structures. Segmented paging is a scheme in which logically distinct (e.g., dynamically-sized) portions of the address space are deliberately given virtual addresses a LONG way apart, so we never have to worry about things bumping into each other, and the page table is implemented in such a way that the big unused sections don't cost us much. Basically the only page table organization that doesn't work well with segmented paging is a single linear array. Trees, inverted (hash) tables,

and linked lists work fine. If we always start segments at multiples of some large power of two, we can think of the high-order bits of the virtual address as specifying a segment, and the low-order bits as specifying an offset within the segment. If we have tree-structured page tables in which we use  $k$  bits to select a child of the root, and we always start segments at some multiple of  $2^{\lceil \log_2(\text{word size}) \rceil}$ , then the top level of the tree looks very much like a segment table. The only difference is that its entries are selected by the high-order address bits, rather than by some explicit architecturally visible mechanism like segment registers. Basically all modern operating systems on page-based machines use segmented paging.

### 2.7.2 Paged Segmentation

In a pure segmentation scheme, we still have to do dynamic space management to allocate physical memory to segments. This leads to external fragmentation and forces us to think about things like compaction. It also doesn't lend itself to virtual memory. To address these problems, we can page the segments of a segmented machine. This is paged segmentation. Instead of containing base/bound pairs, the segment table entries of a machine with paged segmentation indicate how to find the page table for the segment. In MULTICS, there was a separate page table for each segment. The segment offset was interpreted as consisting of a page number and a page offset. The base address in the segment table entry is added to the segment offset to produce a "linear address" that is then partitioned into a page number and page offset, and looked up in the page table in the normal way. Note that in a machine with pure segmentation, given a fast way to find base/bound pairs (e.g., segment registers), there is no need for a TLB. Once we go to paged segmentation, we need a TLB. The difference between segmented paging and paged segmentation lies in the user's programming model, and in the addressing modes of the CPU. On a segmented architecture, the user generally specifies addresses using an effective address that includes a segment register specification. On a paged architecture, there are no segment registers. In practical terms, managing segment registers (loading them with appropriate values at appropriate times) is a bit of a nuisance to the assembly language programmer or compiler writer. On the other hand, since it only takes a few bits to indicate a segment register, while the base address in the segment table entry can have many bits, segments provide a means of expanding the virtual address space beyond  $2^{\lceil \log_2(\text{word size}) \rceil}$ . We can't do segmented paging on a machine with 16-bit addresses. It's beginning to get problematical on machines with 32-bit addresses. We certainly can't build a MULTICS-style single level store, in which every file is a segment that can be accessed with ordinary loads and stores, on a 32-bit machine. Segmented architectures provide a way to get the effect we want (lots of logically separate segments that can grow without practical bound) without requiring that we buy into very large addresses. As 64-bit architectures become more common, it is possible that segmentation will become less popular. One might think that paged segmentation has an additional advantage over segmented paging: protection information is logically associated with a segment, and could perhaps be specified in the segment table and then left out of the page table. Unfortunately, protection bits are used for lots of purposes other than simply making sure we cannot write your code or execute your data.

### Check Your Progress 1

Virtual Memory

- 1) What are the steps that are followed by the Operating system in order to handle the page fault?

.....  
.....

- 2) What is demand paging?

.....  
.....

- 3) How can you implement the virtual memory?

.....  
.....

- 4) When do the following occurs?

- i) A Page Fault
- ii) Thrashing

.....  
.....

- 5) What should be the features of the page swap algorithm?

.....  
.....

- 6) What is a working set and what happens when the working set is very different from the set of pages that are physically resident in memory?

.....  
.....

---

## 2.8 SUMMARY

---

With previous schemes, all the code and data of a program have to be in main memory when the program is running. With virtual memory, only some of the code and data have to be in main memory: the parts needed by the program now. The other parts are loaded into memory when the program needs them without the program having to be aware of this. The size of a program (including its data) can thus exceed the amount of available main memory.

There are two main approaches to virtual memory: paging and segmentation. Both approaches rely on the separation of the concepts virtual address and physical address. Addresses generated by programs are virtual addresses. The actual memory cells have physical addresses. A piece of hardware called a memory

management unit (MMU) translates virtual addresses to physical addresses at run-time.

In this unit we have discussed the concept of Virtual memory, its advantages, demand paging, demand segmentation, Page replacement algorithms and combined systems.

---

## 2.9 SOLUTIONS / ANSWERS

---

### Check Your Progress 1

- 1) The list of steps that are followed by the operating system in handling a page fault:
  - a) If a process refers to a page which is not in the physical memory then an internal table kept with a process control block is checked to verify whether a memory reference to a page was valid or invalid.
  - b) If the memory reference to a page was valid, but the page is missing, the process of bringing a page into the physical memory starts.
  - c) Free memory location is identified to bring a missing page.
  - d) By reading a disk, the desired page is brought back into the free memory location.
  - e) Once the page is in the physical memory, the internal table kept with the process and page map table is updated to indicate that the page is now in memory.
  - f) Restart the instruction that was interrupted due to the missing page.
- 2) In demand paging pages are loaded only on demand, not in advance. It is similar to paging system with swapping feature. Rather than swapping the entire program in memory, only those pages are swapped which are required currently by the system.
- 3) Virtual memory can be implemented as an extension of paged or segmented memory management scheme, also called **demand** paging or **demand segmentation** respectively.
- 4) A Page Fault occurs when a process accesses an address in a page which is not currently resident in memory. Thrashing occurs when the incidence of page faults becomes so high that the system spends all its time swapping pages rather than doing useful work. This happens if the number of page frames allocated is insufficient to contain the working set for the process either because there is inadequate physical memory or because the program is very badly organised.
- 5) A page swap algorithm should
  - a) Impose the minimum overhead in operation
  - b) Not assume any particular hardware assistance
  - c) Try to prevent swapping out pages which are currently referenced (since they may still be in the Working Set)

- d) Try to avoid swapping modified pages (to avoid the overhead of rewriting pages from memory to swap area).
- 6) The working Set is the set of pages that a process accesses over any given (short) space of time. If the Working Set is very different from the set of pages that are physically resident in memory, there will be an excessive number of page faults and thrashing will occur.

---

## **2.10 FURTHER READINGS**

---

- 1) Abraham Silberschatz and Peter Baer Galvin, *Operating System Concepts*, Wiley and Sons (Asia) Publications, New Delhi.
- 2) H.M.Deitel, *Operating Systems*, Pearson Education Asia, New Delhi.
- 3) Andrew S.Tanenbaum, *Operating Systems- Design and Implementation*, Prentice Hall of India Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.
- 4) Achyut S. Godbole, *Operating Systems*, Second Edition, TMGH, 2005, New Delhi.
- 5) Milan Milenkovic, *Operating Systems*, TMGH, 2000, New Delhi.
- 6) D. M. Dhamdhere, *Operating Systems – A Concept Based Approach*, TMGH, 2002, New Delhi.
- 7) William Stallings, *Operating Systems*, Pearson Education, 2003, New Delhi.

THE PEOPLE'S  
UNIVERSITY

---

## **UNIT 3 I/O AND FILE MANAGEMENT**

---

### **Structure**

- 3.0 Introduction
- 3.1 Objectives
- 3.2 Organisation of the I/O Function
- 3.3 I/O Buffering
- 3.4 Disk Organisation
  - 3.4.1 Device Drivers and IDs
  - 3.4.2 Checking Data Consistency and Formatting
- 3.5 Disk Scheduling
  - 3.5.1 FCFS Scheduling
  - 3.5.2 SSTF Scheduling
  - 3.5.3 SCAN Scheduling
  - 3.5.4 C-SCAN Scheduling
  - 3.5.5 LOOK and C-LOOK Scheduling
- 3.6 RAID
- 3.7 Disk Cache
- 3.8 Command Language User's View of the File System
- 3.9 The System Programmer's View of the File System
- 3.10 The Operating System's View of File Management
  - 3.10.1 Directories
  - 3.10.2 Disk Space Management
  - 3.10.3 Disk Address Translation
  - 3.10.4 File Related System Services
  - 3.10.5 Asynchronous Input/Output
- 3.11 Summary
- 3.12 Solutions /Answers
- 3.13 Further Readings

---

### **3.0 INTRODUCTION**

---

Input and output devices are components that form part of the computer system. These devices are controlled by the operating system. Input devices such as keyboard, mouse, and sensors provide input signals such as commands to the operating system. These commands received from input devices instruct the operating system to perform some task or control its behaviour. Output devices such as monitors, printers and speakers are the devices that receive commands or information from the operating system.

In the earlier unit, we had studied the memory management of primary memory. The physical memory, as we have already seen, is not large enough to accommodate all of the needs of a computer system. Also, it is not permanent.

Secondary storage consists of disk units and tape drives onto which data can be moved for permanent storage. Though there are actual physical differences between tapes and disks, the principles involved in controlling them are the same, so we shall only consider disk management here in this unit.

The operating system implements the abstract concept of the file by managing mass storage devices, such as tapes and disks. For convenient use of the computer system, the operating system provides a uniform logical view of information storage. The operating system abstracts from the physical properties of its storage devices to define a logical storage Unit, the **file**. Files are mapped by the operating system, onto physical devices.

**Definition:** A file is a collection of related information defined by its creator. Commonly, files represent programs (both source and object forms) and data. Data files may be numeric, alphabetic or alphanumeric. Files may be free-form, such as text files, or may be rigidly formatted. In general, a file is a sequence of bits, bytes, lines or records whose meaning is defined by its creator and user.

File management is one of the most visible services of an operating system. Computers can store information in several different physical forms among which magnetic tape, disk, and drum are the most common forms. Each of these devices has their own characteristics and physical organization.

Normally files are organized into directories to ease their use. When multiple users have access to files, it may be desirable to control by whom and in what ways files may be accessed. The operating system is responsible for the following activities in connection with file management:

- The creation and deletion of files.
- The creation and deletion of directory.
- The support of primitives for manipulating files and directories.
- The mapping of files onto disk storage.
- Backup of files on stable (non volatile) storage.

The most significant problem in I/O system is the speed mismatch between I/O devices and the memory and also with the processor. This is because I/O system involves both H/W and S/W support and there is large variation in the nature of I/O devices, so they cannot compete with the speed of the processor and memory.

A well-designed file management structure makes the file access quick and easily movable to a new machine. Also it facilitates sharing of files and protection of non-public files. For security and privacy, file system may also provide encryption and decryption capabilities. This makes information accessible to the intended user only.

In this unit we will study the I/O and the file management techniques used by the operating system in order to manage them efficiently.

### 3.1 OBJECTIVES

After going through this unit, you should be able to:

- describe the management of the I/O activities independently and simultaneously with processor activities;
- summarize the full range of views that support file systems, especially the operating system view;
- compare and contrast different approaches to file organisations;
- discuss the disk scheduling techniques, and
- know how to implement the file system and its protection against unauthorized usage.

---

### **3.2 ORGANISATION OF THE I/O FUNCTION**

---

The range of I/O devices and the large variation in their nature, speed, design, functioning, usage etc. makes it difficult for the operating system to handle them with any generality. The key concept in I/O software designing is device independence achieved by using uniform naming.

The name of the file or device should simply be a string or an integer and not dependent on the device in any way. Another key issue is sharable versus dedicated devices. Many users can share some I/O devices such as disks, at any instance of time. The devices like printers have to be dedicated to a single user until that user has finished an operation.

The basic idea is to organise the I/O software as a series of layers with the lower ones hiding the physical H/W and other complexities from the upper ones that present simple, regular interface interaction with users. Based on this I/O software can be structured in the following four layers given below with brief descriptions:

- (i) **Interrupt handlers:** The CPU starts the transfer and goes off to do something else until the interrupt arrives. The I/O device performs its activity independently and simultaneously with CPU activity. This enables the I/O devices to run asynchronously with the processor. The device sends an interrupt to the processor when it has completed the task, enabling CPU to initiate a further task. These interrupts can be hidden with the help of device drivers discussed below as the next I/O software layer.
- (ii) **Device Drivers:** Each device driver handles one device type or group of closely related devices and contains a device dependent code. It accepts individual requests from device independent software and checks that the request is carried out. A device driver manages communication with a specific I/O device by converting a logical request from a user into specific commands directed to the device.
- (iii) **Device-independent Operating System Software:** Its basic responsibility is to perform the I/O functions common to all devices and to provide interface with user-level software. It also takes care of mapping symbolic device names onto the proper driver. This layer supports device naming, device protection, error reporting, allocating and releasing dedicated devices etc.
- (iv) **User level software:** It consists of library procedures linked together with user programs. These libraries make system calls. It makes I/O call, format I/

O and also support spooling. Spooling is a way of dealing with dedicated I/O devices like printers in a multiprogramming environment.

### 3.3 I/O BUFFERING

A buffer is an intermediate memory area under operating system control that stores data in transit between two devices or between user's work area and device. It allows computation to proceed in parallel with I/O.

In a typical unbuffered transfer situation the processor is idle for most of the time, waiting for data transfer to complete and total read-processing time is the sum of all the transfer/read time and processor time as shown in *Figure 1*.

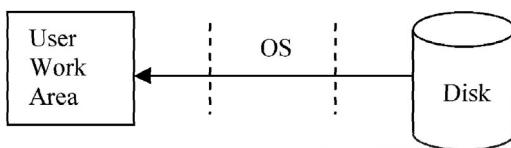


Figure 1: Unbuffered Transfers

In case of single-buffered transfer, blocks are first read into a buffer and then moved to the user's work area. When the move is complete, the next block is read into the buffer and processed in parallel with the first block. This helps in minimizing speed mismatch between devices and the processor. Also, this allows process computation in parallel with input/output as shown in *Figure 2*.

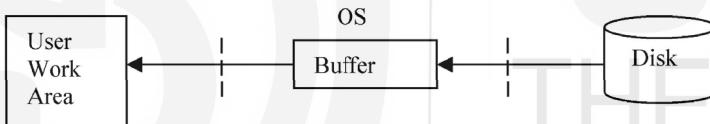


Figure 2: Single Buffering

Double buffering is an improvement over this. A pair of buffers is used; blocks/records generated by a running process are initially stored in the first buffer until it is full. Then from this buffer it is transferred to the secondary storage. During this transfer the other blocks generated are deposited in the second buffer and when this second buffer is also full and first buffer transfer is complete, then transfer from the second buffer is initiated. This process of alternation between buffers continues which allows I/O to occur in parallel with a process's computation. This scheme increases the complexity but yields improved performance as shown in *Figure 3*.

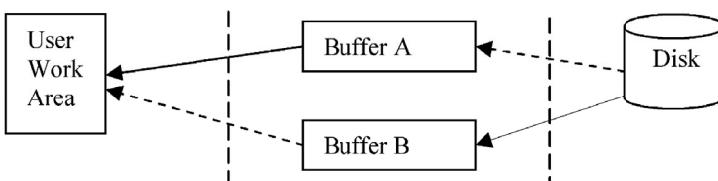


Figure 3: Double Buffering

### 3.4 DISK ORGANISATION

Disk come in different shapes and sizes. The most obvious distinction between floppy disks, diskettes and hard disks is: floppy disks and diskettes consist, of a

single disk of magnetic material, while hard-disks normally consist of several stacked on top of one another. Hard disks are totally enclosed devices which are much more finely engineered and therefore require protection from dust. A hard disk spins at a constant speed, while the rotation of floppy drives is switched on and off. On the Macintosh machine, floppy drives have a variable speed operation, whereas most floppy drives have only a single speed of rotation. As hard drives and tape units become more efficient and cheaper to produce, the role of the floppy disk is diminishing. We look therefore mainly at hard drives.

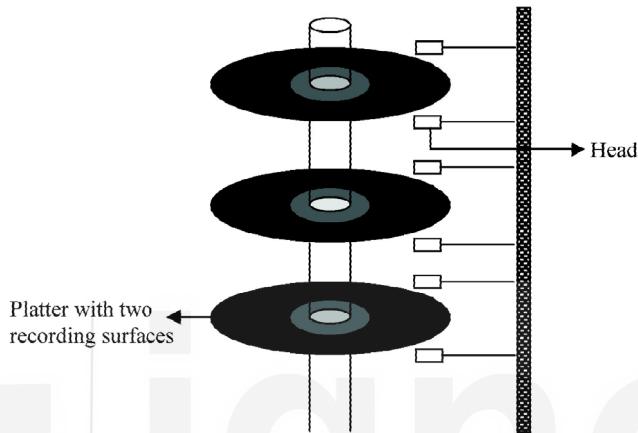


Figure 4: Hard Disk with 3 platters

Looking at the *Figure 4*, we see that a hard disk is composed of several physical disks stacked on top of each other. The disk shown in the *Figure 4* has 3 platters and 6 recording surfaces (two on each platter). A separate read *head* is provided for each *surface*. Although the disks are made of continuous magnetic material, there is a limit to the *density* of information which can be stored on the disk. The heads are controlled by a *stepper motor* which moves them in fixed-distance intervals across each surface. i.e., there is a fixed number of *tracks* on each surface. The tracks on all the surfaces are aligned, and the sum of all the tracks at a fixed distance from the edge of the disk is called a *cylinder*. To make the disk access quicker, tracks are usually divided up into *sectors* – or fixed size regions which lie along tracks. When writing to a disk, data are written in units of a whole number of sectors. (In this respect, they are similar to pages or frames in physical memory). On some disks, the sizes of sectors are decided by the manufacturers in hardware. On other systems (often microcomputers) it might be chosen in software when the disk is prepared for use (*formatting*). Because the heads of the disk move together on all surfaces, we can increase read-write efficiency by allocating blocks in parallel across all surfaces. Thus, if a file is stored in consecutive blocks, on a disk with  $n$  surfaces and  $n$  heads, it could read  $n$  sectors *per-track* without any head movement. When a disk is supplied by a manufacturer, the physical properties of the disk (number of tracks, number of heads, sectors per track, speed of revolution) are provided with the disk. An operating system must be able to adjust to different types of disk. Clearly *sectors per track* is not a constant, nor is the number of tracks. The numbers given are just a convention used to work out a consistent set of addresses on a disk and may not have anything to do with the hard and fast physical limits of the disk. To address any portion of a disk, we need a three component address consisting of (*surface, track and sector*).

The *seek time* is the time required for the disk arm to move the head to the cylinder with the desired sector. The *rotational latency* is the time required for the disk to rotate the desired sector until it is under the read-write head.

### 3.4.1 Device drivers and IDs

A hard-disk is a *device*, and as such, an operating system must use a *device controller* to talk to it. Some device controllers are simple microprocessors which translate numerical addresses into head motor movements, while others contain small decision making computers of their own. The most popular type of drive for larger personal computers and workstations is the SCSI drive. SCSI (pronounced scuzzy) (Small Computer System Interface) is a protocol and now exists in four variants SCSI 1, SCSI 2, fast SCSI 2, and SCSI 3. SCSI disks live on a *data bus* which is a fast parallel data link to the CPU and memory, rather like a very short network. Each drive coupled to the bus identifies itself by a SCSI address and each SCSI controller can address up to seven units. If more disks are required, a second controller must be added. SCSI is more efficient at multiple accesses sharing than other disk types for microcomputers. In order to talk to a SCSI disk, an operating system must have a SCSI device driver. This is a layer of software which translates disk requests from the operating system's abstract command-layer into the language of signals which the SCSI controller understands.

### 3.4.2 Checking Data Consistency and Formatting

Hard drives are not perfect: they develop defects due to magnetic dropout and imperfect manufacturing. On more primitive disks, this is checked when the disk is *formatted* and these damaged sectors are avoided. If the sector becomes damaged under operation, the structure of the disk must be patched up by some repair program. Usually the data are lost.

On more intelligent drives, like the SCSI drives, the disk itself keeps a *defect list* which contains a list of all bad sectors. A new disk from the manufacturer contains a starting list and this is updated as time goes by, if more defects occur. Formatting is a process by which the sectors of the disk are:

- (If necessary) created by setting out 'signposts' along the tracks,
- Labelled with an address, so that the disk controller knows when it has found the correct sector.

On simple disks used by microcomputers, formatting is done manually. On other types, like SCSI drives, there is a low-level formatting already on the disk when it comes from the manufacturer. This is part of the SCSI protocol, in a sense. High level formatting on top of this is not necessary, since an advanced enough *filesystem* will be able to manage the hardware sectors. *Data consistency* is checked by writing to disk and reading back the result. If there is disagreement, an error occurs. This procedure can best be implemented inside the hardware of the disk—modern disk drives are small computers in their own right. Another cheaper way of checking data consistency is to calculate a number for each sector, based on what data are in the sector and store it in the sector. When the data are read back, the number is recalculated and if there is disagreement then an error is signalled. This is called a *cyclic redundancy check* (CRC) or *error correcting*

code. Some device controllers are intelligent enough to be able to detect bad sectors and move data to a spare ‘good’ sector if there is an error. Disk design is still a subject of considerable research and disks are improving both in speed and reliability by leaps and bounds.

## 3.5 DISK SCHEDULING

The disk is a resource which has to be shared. It is therefore has to be scheduled for use, according to some kind of scheduling system. The secondary storage media structure is one of the vital parts of the file system. Disks are the one, providing lot of the secondary storage. As compared to magnetic tapes, disks have very fast access time and disk bandwidth. The access time has two major constituents: seek time and the rotational latency.

The *seek time* is the time required for the disk arm to move the head to the cylinder with the desired sector. The *rotational latency* is the time required for the disk to rotate the desired sector until it is under the read-write head. The *disk bandwidth* is the total number of bytes transferred per unit time.

Both the access time and the bandwidth can be improved by efficient disk I/O requests scheduling. Disk drivers are large single dimensional arrays of logical blocks to be transferred. Because of large usage of disks, proper scheduling algorithms are required.

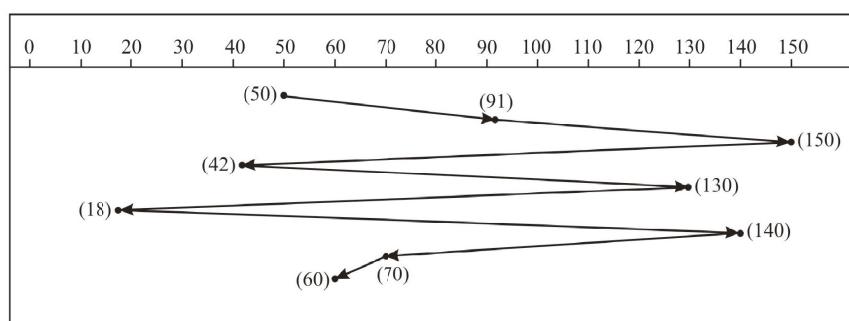
A scheduling policy should attempt to maximize throughput (defined as the number of requests serviced per unit time) and also to minimize mean response time (i.e., average waiting time plus service time). These scheduling algorithms are discussed below:

### 3.5.1 FCFS Scheduling

First-Come, First-Served (FCFS) is the basis of this simplest disk scheduling technique. There is no reordering of the queue. Suppose the requests for inputting/ outputting to blocks on the cylinders have arrived, forming the following disk queue:

50, 91, 150, 42, 130, 18, 140, 70, 60

Also assume that the disk head is initially at cylinder 50 then it moves to 91, then to 150 and so on. The total head movement in this scheme is 610 cylinders, which makes the system slow because of wild swings. Proper scheduling while moving towards a particular direction could decrease this. This will further improve performance. FCFS scheme is clearly depicted in *Figure 5*.

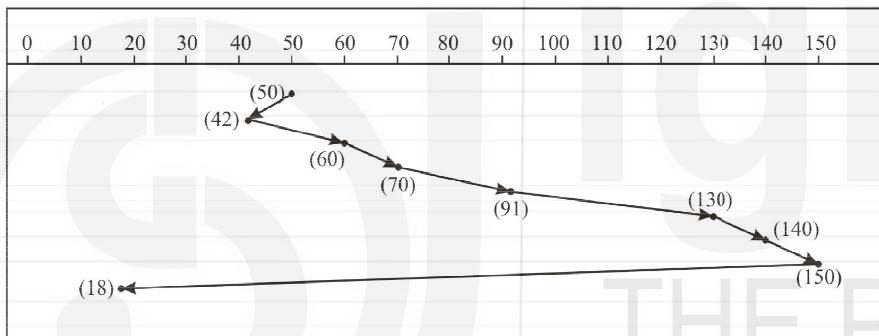


**Figure 5: FCFS Scheduling**

### 3.5.2 SSTF Scheduling

The basis for this algorithm is Shortest-Seek-Time-First (SSTF) i.e., service all the requests close to the current head position and with minimum seeks time from current head position.

In the previous disk queue sample the cylinder close to critical head position i.e., 50, is 42 cylinder, next closest request is at 60. From there, the closest one is 70, then 91,130,140,150 and then finally 18-cylinder. This scheme has reduced the total head movements to 248 cylinders and hence improved the performance. Like SJF (Shortest Job First) for CPU scheduling SSTF also suffers from starvation problem. This is because requests may arrive at any time. Suppose we have the requests in disk queue for cylinders 18 and 150, and while servicing the 18-cylinder request, some other request closest to it arrives and it will be serviced next. This can continue further also making the request at 150-cylinder wait for long. Thus a continual stream of requests near one another could arrive and keep the far away request waiting indefinitely. The SSTF is not the optimal scheduling due to the starvation problem. This whole scheduling is shown in *Figure 6*.



**Figure 6: SSTF Scheduling**

### 3.5.3 SCAN Scheduling

The disk arm starts at one end of the disk and service all the requests in its way towards the other end, i.e., until it reaches the other end of the disk where the head movement is reversed and continue servicing in this reverse direction. This scanning is done back and forth by the head continuously.

In the example problem two things must be known before starting the scanning process. Firstly, the initial head position i.e., 50 and then the head movement direction (let it towards 0, starting cylinder). Consider the disk queue again:

91, 150, 42, 130, 18, 140, 70, 60

Starting from 50 it will move towards 0, servicing requests 42 and 18 in between. At cylinder 0 the direction is reversed and the arm will move towards the other end of the disk servicing the requests at 60, 70, 91,130,140 and then finally 150.

As the arm acts like an elevator in a building, the SCAN algorithm is also known as elevator algorithm sometimes. The limitation of this scheme is that few requests need to wait for a long time because of reversal of head direction. This scheduling algorithm results in a total head movement of only 200 cylinders. *Figure 7* shows this scheme:

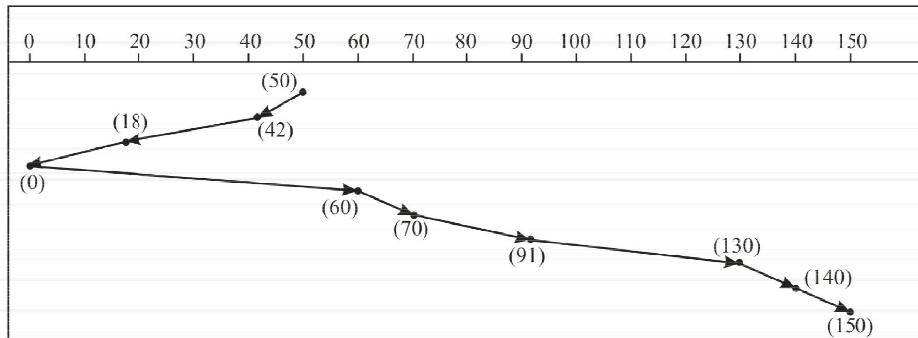


Figure 7: SCAN Scheduling

### 3.5.4 C-SCAN Scheduling

Similar to SCAN algorithm, C-SCAN also moves head from one end to the other servicing all the requests in its way. The difference here is that after the head reaches the end it immediately returns to beginning, skipping all the requests on the return trip. The servicing of the requests is done only along one path. Thus comparatively this scheme gives uniform wait time because cylinders are like circular lists that wrap around from the last cylinder to the first one.

### 3.5.5 LOOK and C-LOOK Scheduling

These are just improvements of SCAN and C-SCAN but difficult to implement. Here the head moves only till final request in each direction (first and last ones), and immediately reverses direction without going to end of the disk. Before moving towards any direction the requests are looked, avoiding the full width disk movement by the arm.

The performance and choice of all these scheduling algorithms depend heavily on the number and type of requests and on the nature of disk usage. The file allocation methods like contiguous, linked or indexed, also affect the requests. For example, a contiguously allocated file will generate nearby requests and hence reduce head movements whereas linked or indexed files may generate requests from blocks that are scattered throughout the disk and hence increase the head movements. While searching for files the directories will be frequently accessed, hence location of directories and also blocks of data in them are also important criteria. All these peculiarities force the disk scheduling algorithms to be written as a separate module of the operating system, so that these can easily be replaced. For heavily used disks the SCAN / LOOK algorithms are well suited because they take care of the hardware and access requests in a reasonable order. There is no real danger of starvation, especially in the C-SCAN case. The arrangement of data on a disk plays an important role in deciding the efficiency of data-retrieval.

---

## 3.6 RAID

---

Disks have high failure rates and hence there is the risk of loss of data and lots of downtime for restoring and disk replacement. To improve disk usage many techniques have been implemented. One such technology is RAID (Redundant Array of Inexpensive Disks). Its organization is based on disk striping (or interleaving), which uses a group of disks as one storage unit. Disk striping is a way of increasing the disk transfer rate up to a factor of  $N$ , by splitting files

across  $N$  different disks. Instead of saving all the data from a given file on one disk, it is split across many. Since the  $N$  heads can now search independently, the speed of transfer is, in principle, increased manifold. Logical disk data/blocks can be written on two or more separate physical disks which can further transfer their sub-blocks in parallel. The total transfer rate system is directly proportional to the number of disks. The larger the number of physical disks striped together, the larger the total transfer rate of the system. Hence, the overall performance and disk accessing speed is also enhanced. The enhanced version of this scheme is mirroring or shadowing. In this RAID organisation a duplicate copy of each disk is kept. It is costly but a much faster and more reliable approach. The disadvantage with disk striping is that, if one of the  $N$  disks becomes damaged, then the data on all  $N$  disks is lost. Thus striping needs to be combined with a reliable form of backup in order to be successful.

Another RAID scheme uses some disk space for holding parity blocks. Suppose, three or more disks are used, then one of the disks will act as a parity block, which contains corresponding bit positions in all blocks. In case some error occurs or the disk develops a problem all its data bits can be reconstructed. This technique is known as disk striping with parity or block interleaved parity, which increases speed. But writing or updating any data on a disk requires corresponding recalculations and changes in parity block. To overcome this the parity blocks can be distributed over all disks.

### **3.7 DISK CACHE**

---

Disk caching is an extension of buffering. Cache is derived from the French word *cacher*, meaning to hide. In this context, a *cache* is a collection of blocks that logically belong on the disk, but are kept in memory for performance reasons. It is used in multiprogramming environment or in disk file servers, which maintain a separate section of main memory called disk cache. These are sets of buffers (cache) that contain the blocks that are recently used. The cached buffers in memory are copies of the disk blocks and if any data here is modified only its local copy is updated. So, to maintain integrity, updated blocks must be transferred back to the disk. Caching is based on the assumption that most shortly accessed blocks are likely to be accessed again soon. In case some new block is required in the cache buffer, one block already there can be selected for “flushing” to the disk. Also to avoid loss of updated information in case of failures or loss of power, the system can periodically flush cache blocks to the disk. The key to disk caching is keeping frequently accessed records in the disk cache buffer in primary storage.

#### **☞ Check Your Progress 1**

- 1) Indicate the major characteristics which differentiate I/O devices.

.....  
.....  
.....

- 2) Explain the term device independence. What is the role of device drivers in this context?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

- 3) Describe the ways in which a device driver can be implemented?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

- 4) What is the advantage of the double buffering scheme over single buffering?

.....  
.....  
.....

- 5) What are the key objectives of the I/O system?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

---

### **3.8 COMMAND LANGUAGE USER'S VIEW OF THE FILE SYSTEM**

---

The most important aspect of a file system is its appearance from the user's point of view. The user prefers to view the naming scheme of files, the constituents of a file, what the directory tree looks like, protection specifications, file operations allowed on them and many other interface issues. The internal details like, the data structure used for free storage management, number of sectors in a logical block etc. is of less interest to the users. From a user's perspective, a file is the smallest allotment of logical secondary storage. Users should be able to refer to their files by symbolic names rather than having to use physical device names.

The operating system allows users to define named objects called files which can hold interrelated data, programs or any other thing that the user wants to store/save.

---

### **3.9 THE SYSTEM PROGRAMMER'S VIEW OF THE FILE SYSTEM**

---

As discussed earlier, the system programmer's and designer's view of the file system is mainly concerned with the details/issues like whether linked lists or simple arrays are used for keeping track of free storage and also the number of sectors useful in any logical block. But it is rare that physical record size will

exactly match the length of desired logical record. The designers are mainly interested in seeing how disk space is managed, how files are stored and how to make everything work efficiently and reliably.

## 3.10 THE OPERATING SYSTEM'S VIEW OF FILE MANAGEMENT

As discussed earlier, the operating system abstracts (maps) from the physical properties of its storage devices to define a logical storage unit i.e., the file. The operating system provides various system calls for file management like creating, deleting files, read and write, truncate operations etc. All operating systems focus on achieving device-independence by making the access easy regardless of the place of storage (file or device). The files are mapped by the operating system onto physical devices. Many factors are considered for file management by the operating system like directory structure, disk scheduling and management, file related system services, input/output etc. Most operating systems take a different approach to storing information. Three common file organisations are byte sequence, record sequence and tree of disk blocks. UNIX files are structured in simple byte sequence form. In record sequence, arbitrary records can be read or written, but a record cannot be inserted or deleted in the middle of a file. CP/M works according to this scheme. In tree organisation each block hold  $n$  keyed records and a new record can be inserted anywhere in the tree. The mainframes use this approach. The OS is responsible for the following activities in regard to the file system:

- The creation and deletion of files
- The creation and deletion of directory
- The support of system calls for files and directories manipulation
- The mapping of files onto disk
- Backup of files on stable storage media (non-volatile).

The coming sub-sections cover these details as viewed by the operating system.

### 3.10.1 Directories

A file directory is a group of files organised together. An entry within a directory refers to the file or another directory. Hence, a tree structure/hierarchy can be formed. The directories are used to group files belonging to different applications/users. Large-scale time sharing systems and distributed systems store thousands of files and bulk of data. For this type of environment a file system must be organised properly. A File system can be broken into partitions or volumes. They provide separate areas within one disk, each treated as separate storage devices in which files and directories reside. Thus directories enable files to be separated on the basis of user and user applications, thus simplifying system management issues like backups, recovery, security, integrity, name-collision problem (file name clashes), housekeeping of files etc.

The device directory records information like name, location, size, and type for all the files on partition. A root refers to the part of the disk from where the root directory begins, which points to the user directories. The root directory is distinct

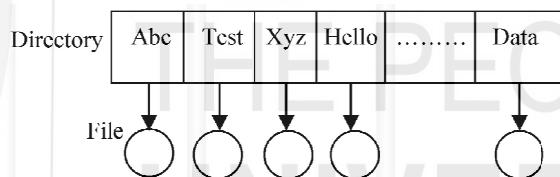
from sub-directories in that it is in a fixed position and of fixed size. So, the directory is like a symbol table that converts file names into their corresponding directory entries. The operations performed on a directory or file system are:

- 1) Create, delete and modify files.
- 2) Search for a file.
- 3) Mechanisms for sharing files should provide controlled access like read, write, execute or various combinations.
- 4) List the files in a directory and also contents of the directory entry.
- 5) Renaming a file when its contents or uses change or file position needs to be changed.
- 6) Backup and recovery capabilities must be provided to prevent accidental loss or malicious destruction of information.
- 7) Traverse the file system.

The most common schemes for describing logical directory structure are:

#### (i) Single-level directory

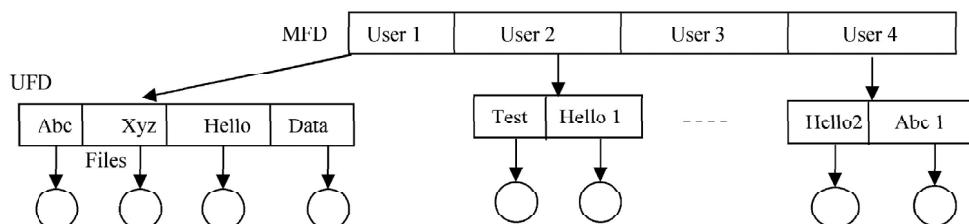
All the files are inside the same directory, which is simple and easy to understand; but the limitation is that all files must have unique names. Also, even with a single user as the number of files increases, it is difficult to remember and to track the names of all the files. This hierarchy is depicted in *Figure 8*.



**Figure 8: Single-level directory**

#### (ii) Two-level directory

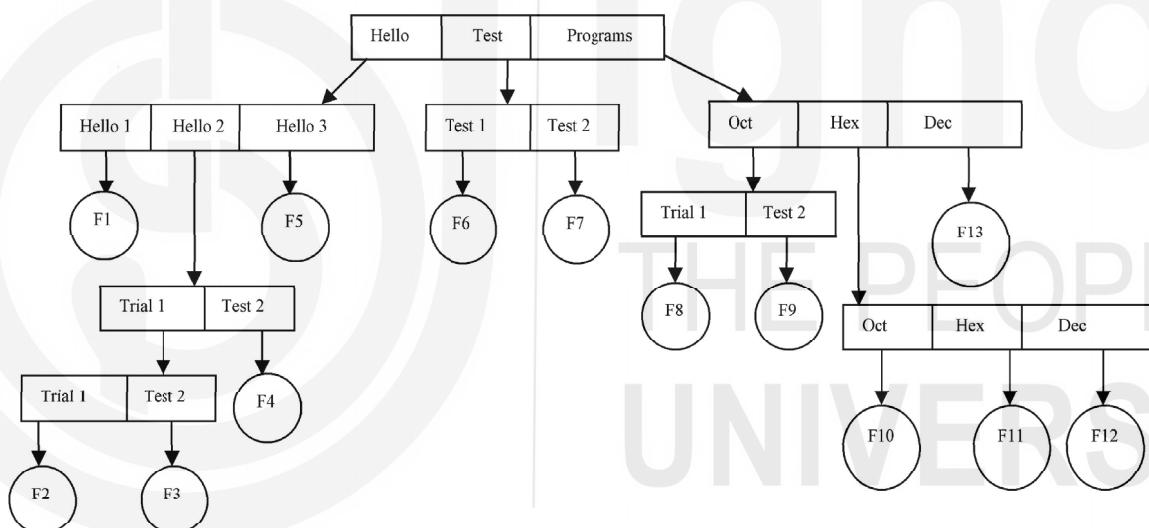
We can overcome the limitations of the previous scheme by creating a separate directory for each user, called User File Directory (UFD). Initially when the user logs in, the system's Master File Directory (MFD) is searched which is indexed with respect to username/account and UFD reference for that user. Thus different users may have same file names but within each UFD they should be unique. This resolves name-collision problem up to some extent but this directory structure isolates one user from another, which is not desired sometimes when users need to share or cooperate on some task. *Figure 9* shows this scheme clearly.



**Figure 9: Two-level directory**

The two-level directory structure is like a 2-level tree. Thus to generalise, we can extend the directory structure to a tree of arbitrary height. Thus the user can create his/her own directory and subdirectories and can also organise files. One bit in each directory entry defines entry as a file (0) or as a subdirectory(1).

The tree has a root directory and every file in it has a unique path name (path from root, through all subdirectories, to a specified file). The pathname prefixes the filename, helps to reach the required file traversed from a base directory. The pathnames can be of 2 types: absolute path names or relative path names, depending on the base directory. An absolute path name begins at the root and follows a path to a particular file. It is a full pathname and uses the root directory. Relative defines the path from the current directory. For example, if we assume that the current directory is /Hello2 then the file F4.doc has the absolute pathname /Hello/Hello2/Test2/F4.doc and the relative pathname is /Test2/F4.doc. The pathname is used to simplify the searching of a file in a tree-structured directory hierarchy. *Figure 10* shows the layout:



**Figure 10: Tree-structured directory**

#### (iv) Acyclic-graph directory:

As the name suggests, this scheme has a graph with no cycles allowed in it. This scheme added the concept of shared common subdirectory / file which exists in file system in two (or more) places at once. Having two copies of a file does not reflect changes in one copy corresponding to changes made in the other copy.

But in a shared file, only one actual file is used and hence changes are visible. Thus an acyclic graph is a generalisation of a tree-structured directory scheme. This is useful in a situation where several people are working as a team, and need access to shared files kept together in one directory. This scheme can be implemented by creating a new directory entry known as a link which points to another file or subdirectory. *Figure 11* depicts this structure for directories.

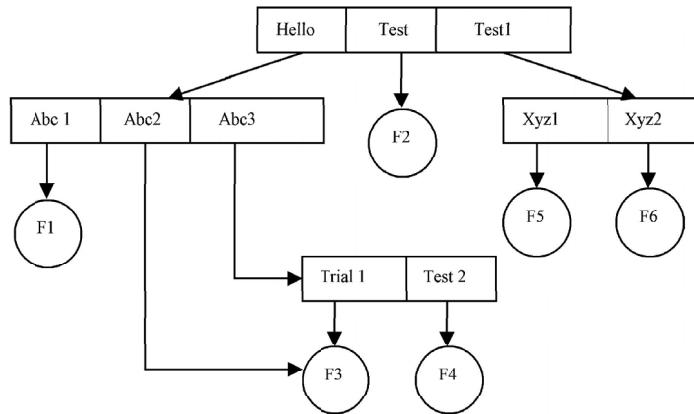


Figure 11: Acyclic-graph directory

The limitations of this approach are the difficulties in traversing an entire file system because of multiple absolute path names. Another issue is the presence of dangling pointers to the files that are already deleted, though we can overcome this by preserving the file until all references to it are deleted. For this, every time a link or a copy of directory is established, a new entry is added to the file-reference list. But in reality as the list is too lengthy, only a count of the number of references is kept. This count is then incremented or decremented when the reference to the file is added or it is deleted respectively.

#### (v) General graph Directory:

Acyclic-graph does not allow cycles in it. However, when cycles exist, the reference count may be non-zero, even when the directory or file is not referenced anymore. In such situation garbage collection is useful. This scheme requires the traversal of the whole file system and marking accessible entries only. The second pass then collects everything that is unmarked on a free-space list. This is depicted in *Figure 12*.

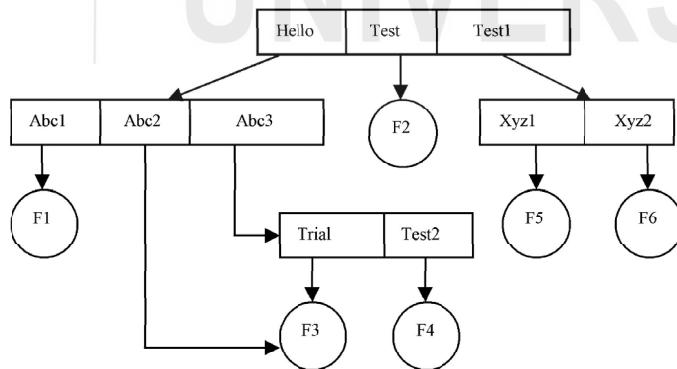


Figure 12: General-graph directory

### 3.10.2 Disk Space Management

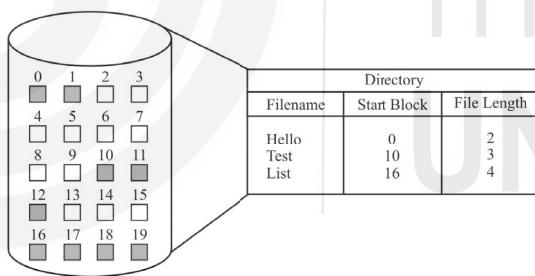
The direct-access of disks and keeping files in adjacent areas of the disk is highly desirable. But the problem is how to allocate space to files for effective disk space utilization and quick access. Also, as files are allocated and freed, the space on a disk become fragmented. The major methods of allocating disk space are:

- i) Continuous
- ii) Non-continuous (Indexing and Chaining)

### i) Continuous

This is also known as contiguous allocation as each file in this scheme occupies a set of contiguous blocks on the disk. A linear ordering of disk addresses is seen on the disk. It is used in VM/CMS – an old interactive system. The advantage of this approach is that successive logical records are physically adjacent and require no head movement. So disk seek time is minimal and speeds up access of records. Also, this scheme is relatively simple to implement. The technique in which the operating system provides units of file space on demand by user running processes, is known as dynamic allocation of disk space. Generally space is allocated in units of a fixed size, called an allocation unit or a ‘cluster’ in MS-DOS. Cluster is a simple multiple of the disk physical sector size, usually 512 bytes. Disk space can be considered as a one-dimensional array of data stores, each store being a cluster. A larger cluster size reduces the potential for fragmentation, but increases the likelihood that clusters will have unused space. Using clusters larger than one sector reduces fragmentation, and reduces the amount of disk space needed to store the information about the used and unused areas on the disk.

Contiguous allocation merely retains the disk address (start of file) and length (in block units) of the first block. If a file is  $n$  blocks long and it begins with location  $b$  (blocks), then it occupies  $b, b+1, b+2, \dots, b+n-1$  blocks. First-fit and best-fit strategies can be used to select a free hole from available ones. But the major problem here is searching for sufficient space for a new file. *Figure 13* depicts this scheme:



**Figure 13: Contiguous Allocation on the Disk**

This scheme exhibits similar fragmentation problems as in variable memory partitioning. This is because allocation and deallocation could result in regions of free disk space broken into chunks (pieces) within active space, which is called external fragmentation. A repacking routine called compaction can solve this problem. In this routine, an entire file system is copied onto tape or another disk and the original disk is then freed completely. Then from the copied disk, files are again stored back using contiguous space on the original disk. But this approach can be very expensive in terms of time. Also, size-declaration in advance is a problem because each time, the size of file is not predictable. But it supports both sequential and direct accessing. For sequential access, almost no seeks are required. Even direct access with seek and read is fast. Also, calculation of blocks holding data is quick and easy as we need just offset from the start of the file.

## ii) Non-Continuous (Chaining and Indexing)

This scheme has replaced the previous ones. The popular non-contiguous storages allocation schemes are:

- Linked/Chained allocation
- Indexed Allocation.

**Linked/Chained allocation:** All files are stored in fixed size blocks and adjacent blocks are linked together like a linked list. The disk blocks may be scattered anywhere on the disk. The directory contains a pointer to the first and last block of the file. Also each block contains pointers to the next block, which are not made available to the user. There is no external fragmentation in this as any free block can be utilised for storage. So, compaction and relocation is not required. But the disadvantage here is that it is potentially inefficient for direct-accessible files since blocks are scattered over the disk and have to follow pointers from one disk block to the next. It can be used effectively for sequential access only but there also it may generate long seeks between blocks. Another issue is the extra storage space required for pointers. Yet the reliability problem is also there due to loss/damage of any pointer. The use of doubly linked lists could be a solution to this problem but it would add more overheads for each file. A doubly linked list also facilitates searching as blocks are threaded both forward and backward. The *Figure 14* depicts linked /chained allocation where each block contains the information about the next block (i.e., pointer to next block).

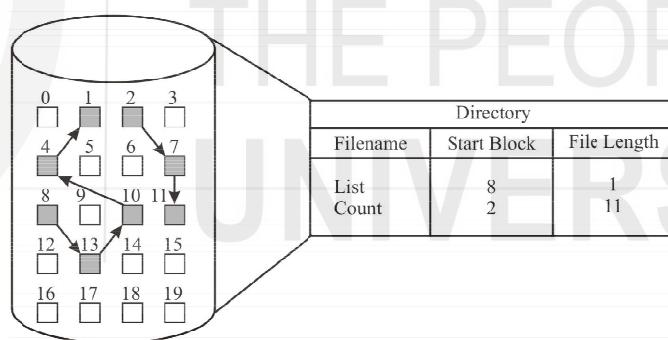
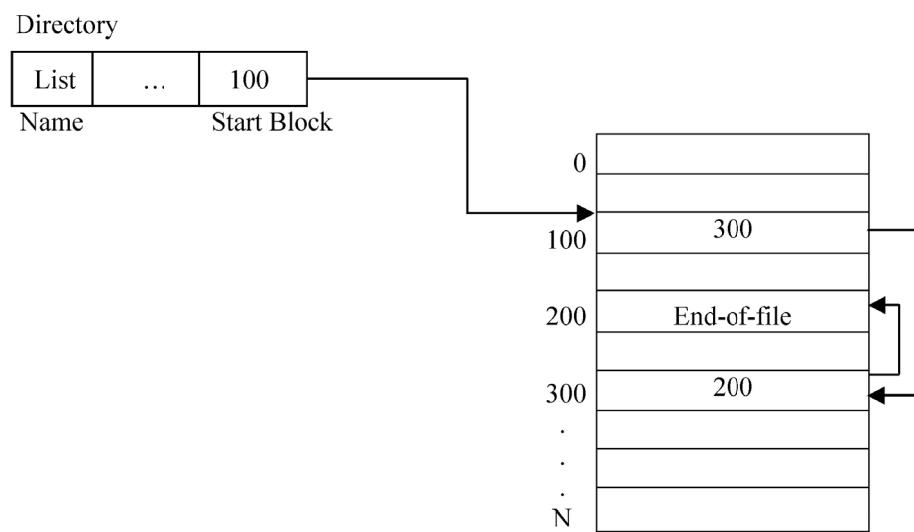


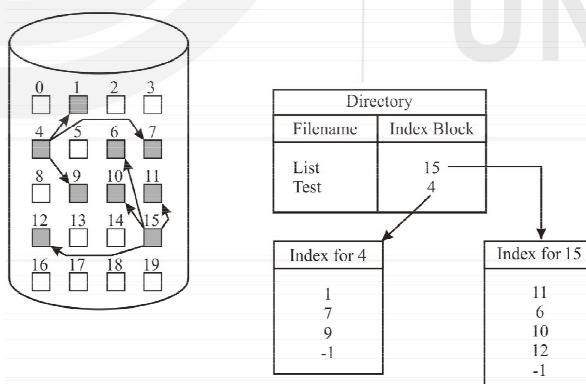
Figure 14: Linked Allocation on the Disk

MS-DOS and OS/2 use another variation on linked list called FAT (File Allocation Table). The beginning of each partition contains a table having one entry for each disk block and is indexed by the block number. The directory entry contains the block number of the first block of file. The table entry indexed by block number contains the block number of the next block in the file. The Table pointer of the last block in the file has EOF pointer value. This chain continues until EOF (end of file) table entry is encountered. We still have to linearly traverse next pointers, but at least we don't have to go to the disk for each of them. 0(Zero) table value indicates an unused block. So, allocation of free blocks with FAT scheme is straightforward, just search for the first block with 0 table pointer. MS-DOS and OS/2 use this scheme. This scheme is depicted in *Figure 15*.



**Figure 15: File-Allocation Table (FAT)**

**Indexed Allocation:** In this each file has its own index block. Each entry of the index points to the disk blocks containing actual file data i.e., the index keeps an array of block pointers for each file. So, index block is an array of disk block addresses. The  $i^{th}$  entry in the index block points to the  $i^{th}$  block of the file. Also, the main directory contains the address where the index block is on the disk. Initially, all the pointers in index block are set to **NIL**. The advantage of this scheme is that it supports both sequential and random access. The searching may take place in index blocks themselves. The index blocks may be kept close together in secondary storage to minimize seek time. Also space is wasted only on the index which is not very large and there's no external fragmentation. But a few limitations of the previous scheme still exists in this, like, we still need to set maximum file length and we can have overflow scheme of the file larger than the predicted value. Insertions can require complete reconstruction of index blocks also. The indexed allocation scheme is diagrammatically shown in *Figure 16*.



**Figure 16: Indexed Allocation on the Disk**

### 3.10.3 Disk Address Translation

We have seen in Unit-1 memory management that the virtual addresses generated by a program is different from the physical. The translation of virtual addresses to physical addresses is performed by MMU. Disk address translation considers the aspects of data storage on the disk. Hard disks are totally enclosed devices, which are more finely engineered and therefore require protection from dust. A

hard disk spins at a constant speed. Briefly, hard disks consist of one or more rotating platters. A read-write head is positioned above the rotating surface and is able to read or write the data underneath the current head position. The hard drives are able to present the “geometry” or “addressing scheme” of the drive. Consider the disk internals first. Each track of the disk is divided into sections called sectors. A sector is the smallest physical storage unit on the disk. The size of a sector is always a power of two, and is almost always 512 bytes. A sector is the part of a slice that lies within a track. The position of the head determines which track is being read. A cylinder is almost the same as a track, except that it means all tracks lining up under each other on all the surfaces. The head is equivalent to side(s). It simply means one of the rotating platters or one of the sides on one of the platters. If a hard disk has three rotating platters, it usually has 5 or 6 readable sides, each with its own read-write head.

The MS-DOS file systems allocate storage in clusters, where a cluster is one or more contiguous sectors. MS-DOS bases the cluster size on the size of the partition. As a file is written on the disk, the file system allocates the appropriate number of clusters to store the file’s data. For the purposes of isolating special areas of the disk, most operating systems allow the disk surface to be divided into *partitions*. A partition (also called a *cylinder group*) is just that: a group of cylinders, which lie next to each other. By defining partitions we divide up the storage of data to special areas, for convenience. Each partition is assigned a separate logical device and each device can only write to the cylinders, which are defined as being its own. To access the disk the computer needs to convert physical disk geometry (the number of cylinders on the disk, number of heads per cylinder, and sectors per track) to a logical configuration that is compatible with the operating system. This conversion is called translation. Since sector translation works between the disk itself and the system BIOS or firmware, the operating system is unaware of the actual characteristics of the disk, if the number of cylinders, heads, and sectors per track the computer needs is within the range supported by the disk. MS-DOS presents disk devices as logical volumes that are associated with a drive code (A, B, C, and so on) and have a volume name (optional), a root directory, and from zero to many additional directories and files.

### 3.10.4 File Related System Services

A file system enables applications to store and retrieve files on storage devices. Files are placed in a hierarchical structure. The file system specifies naming conventions for files and the format for specifying the path to a file in the tree structure. OS provides the ability to perform input and output (I/O) operations on storage components located on local and remote computers. In this section we briefly describe the system services, which relate to file management. We can broadly classify these under categories:

- i) Online services
- ii) Programming services.
- i) **Online-services:** Most operating systems provide interactive facilities to enable the on-line users to work with files. Few of these facilities are built-in commands of the system while others are provided by separate utility

programs. But basic operating systems like MS-DOS with limited security provisions can be potentially risky because of these user owned powers. So, these must be used by technical support staff or experienced users only. For example: DEL \*.\* Command can erase all the files in the current directory. Also, FORMAT c: can erase the entire contents of the mentioned drive/disk. Many such services provided by the operating system related to directory operations are listed below:

- Create a file
- Delete a file
- Copy a file
- Rename a file
- Display a file
- Create a directory
- Remove an empty directory
- List the contents of a directory
- Search for a file
- Traverse the file system.

ii) **Programming services:** The complexity of the file services offered by the operating system vary from one operating system to another but the basic set of operations like: open (make the file ready for processing), close (make a file unavailable for processing), read (input data from the file), write (output data to the file), seek (select a position in file for data transfer).

All these operations are used in the form of language syntax procedures or built-in library routines, of high-level language used like C, Pascal, and Basic etc. More complicated file operations supported by the operating system provide wider range of facilities/services. These include facilities like reading and writing records, locating a record with respect to a primary key value etc. The software interrupts can also be used for activating operating system functions. For example, Interrupt 21(hex) function call request in MS-DOS helps in opening, reading and writing operations on a file.

In addition to file functions described above the operating system must provide directory operation support also like:

- Create or remove directory
- Change directory
- Read a directory entry
- Change a directory entry etc.

These are not always implemented in a high level language but language can be supplied with these procedure libraries. For example, UNIX uses C language as system programming language, so that all system calls requests are implemented as C procedures.

### 3.10.5 Asynchronous Input/Output

Synchronous I/O is based on blocking concept while asynchronous is interrupt-driven transfer. If an user program is doing several things simultaneously and request for I/O operation, two possibilities arise. The simplest one is that the I/O is started, then after its completion, control is transferred back to the user process. This is known as synchronous I/O where you make an I/O request and you have to wait for it to finish. This could be a problem where you would like to do some background processing and wait for a key press. Asynchronous I/O solves this problem, which is the second possibility. In this, control is returned back to the user program without waiting for the I/O completion. The I/O then continues while other system operations occur. The CPU starts the transfer and goes off to do something else until the interrupt arrives.

Asynchronous I/O operations run in the background and do not block user applications. This improves performance, because I/O operations and applications processing can run simultaneously. Many applications, such as databases and file servers, take advantage of the ability to overlap processing and I/O. To manage asynchronous I/O, each asynchronous I/O request has a corresponding control block in the application's address space. This control block contains the control and status information for the request. It can be used again when the I/O operation is completed. Most physical I/O is asynchronous.

After issuing an asynchronous I/O request, the user application can determine when and how the I/O operation is completed. This information is provided in any of three ways:

- The application can poll the status of the I/O operation.
- The system can asynchronously notify the application when the I/O operation is done.
- The application can block until the I/O operation is complete.

Each I/O is handled by using a device-status table. This table holds entry for each I/O device indicating device's type, address, and its current status like bust or idle. When any I/O device needs service, it interrupts the operating system. After determining the device, the Operating System checks its status and modifies table entry reflecting the interrupt occurrence. Control is then returned back to the user process.

#### ☞ Check Your Progress 2

- 1) What is the meaning of the term ‘virtual device’? Give an Example.

.....  
.....

- 2) What are the advantages of using directories?

.....  
.....

- 3) Explain the advantages of organising file directory structure into a tree structure?

- .....  
.....  
.....  
.....
- 4) List few file attributes?

.....  
.....

- 5) Why is SCAN scheduling also called Elevator Algorithm?

.....  
.....

- 6) In an MS-DOS disk system, calculate the number of entries (i.e., No. of clusters) required in the FAT table. Assume the following parameters:

Disk Capacity - 40 Mbytes

Block Size - 512 Bytes

Blocks/Cluster- 4

.....  
.....

- 7) Assuming a cluster size of 512 bytes calculate the percentage wastage in file space due to incomplete filling of last cluster, for the file sizes below:

(i) 1000 bytes      (ii) 20,000 bytes

.....  
.....

- 8) What is meant by an ‘alias filename’ and explain its UNIX implementation.

.....  
.....

### **3.11 SUMMARY**

This unit briefly describes the aspects of I/O and File Management. We started by looking at I/O controllers, organisation and I/O buffering. We briefly described various buffering approaches and how buffering is effective in smoothing out the speed mismatch between I/O rates and processor speed. We also looked at the four levels of I/O software: the interrupt handlers, device drivers, the device independent I/O software, and the I/O libraries and user-level software.

A well-designed file system should provide a user-friendly interface. The file system generally includes access methods, file management issues like file integrity, storage, sharing, security and protection etc. We have discussed the services provided by the operating system to the user to enable fast access and processing of files.

The important concepts related to the file system are also introduced in this unit like file concepts, attributes, directories, tree structure, root directory, pathnames, file services etc. Also a number of techniques applied to improve disk system performance have been discussed and in summary these are: disk caching, disk scheduling algorithms (FIFO, SSTF, SCAN, CSCAN, LOOK etc.), types of disk space management (contiguous and non-contiguous-linked and indexed), disk address translation, RAID based on interleaving concept etc. Auxiliary storage management is also considered as it is mainly concerned with allocation of space for files:

---

## **3.12 SOLUTIONS/ANSWERS**

---

### **Check Your Progress 1**

- 1) The major characteristics are:

Data Rate	Disk-2Mbytes/sec Keyboard-10-15 bytes/sec
Units of transfer Operation	Disk-read, write, seek Printer-write, move, select font
Error conditions	Disk-read errors Printer-paper out etc.

- 2) Device independence refers to making the operating system software and user application independent of the devices attached. This enables the devices to be changed at different executions. Output to the printer can be sent to a disk file. Device drivers act as software interface between these I/O devices and user-level software.
- 3) In some operating systems like UNIX, the driver code has to be compiled and linked with the kernel object code while in some others, like MS-DOS, device drivers are installed and loaded dynamically. The advantage of the former way is its simplicity and run-time efficiency but its limitation is that addition of a new device requires regeneration of kernel, which is eliminated in the latter technique.
- 4) In double - buffering the transfers occur at maximum rate hence it sustains device activity at maximum speed, while single buffering is slowed down by buffer to transfer times.
- 5) The key objectives are to maximize the utilization of the processor, to operate the devices at their maximum speed and to achieve device independence.

### **Check Your Progress 2**

- 1) A virtual device is a simulation of an actual device by the operating system. It responds to the system calls and helps in achieving device independence. Example: Print Spooler.
- 2) Directories enable files to be separated on the basis of users and their applications. Also, they simplify the security and system management problems.

3) Major advantages are:

- This helps to avoid possible file name clashes
- Simplifies system management and installations
- Facilitates file management and security of files
- Simplifies running of different versions of same application.

4) File attributes are: Name, Type (in UNIX), Location at which file is stored on disk, size, protection bits, date and time, user identification etc.

5) Since an elevator continues in one direction until there are no more requests pending and then it reverses direction just like SCAN scheduling.

6) Cluster size =  $4 * 512 = 2048$  bytes

$$\text{Number of clusters} = (40 * 1,000,000) / 2048 = 19531 \text{ approximately}$$

7) (i) File size = 1000 bytes

$$\text{No. of clusters} = 1000 / 512 = 2 \text{ (approximately)}$$

$$\text{Total cluster capacity} = 2 * 512 = 1024 \text{ bytes}$$

$$\text{Wasted space} = 1024 - 1000 = 24 \text{ bytes}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Percentage Wasted space} &= (24 / 1024) * 100 \\ &= 2.3\% \end{aligned}$$

(ii) File size = 20,000 bytes

$$\text{No. of clusters} = 20,000 / 512 = 40 \text{ (approximately)}$$

$$\text{Total cluster capacity} = 40 * 512 = 20480 \text{ bytes}$$

$$\text{Wasted space} = 20480 - 20,000 = 480 \text{ bytes}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Percentage Wasted space} &= (480 / 20480) * 100 \\ &= 2.3\% \end{aligned}$$

8) An alias is an alternative name for a file, possibly in a different directory. In UNIX, a single inode is associated with each physical file. Alias names are stored as separate items in directories but point to the same inode. It allows one physical file to be referenced by two or more different names or same name in different directory.

### **3.13 FURTHER READINGS**

- 1) Abraham Silberschatz and Peter Baer Galvin, *Operating System Concepts*, Wiley and Sons (Asia) Publications, New Delhi.
- 2) H.M.Deitel, *Operating Systems*, Pearson Education Asia Place, New Delhi.
- 3) Andrew S.Tanenbaum, *Operating Systems- Design and Implementation*, Prentice Hall of India Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.

- 4) Colin Ritchie, *Operating Systems incorporating UNIX and Windows*, BPB Publications, New Delhi.
- 5) J. Archer Harris, *Operating Systems*, Schaum's Outlines, TMGH, 2002, New Delhi.
- 6) Achyut S Godbole, *Operating Systems*, Second Edition, TMGH, 2005, New Delhi.
- 7) Milan Milenkovic, *Operating Systems*, TMGH, 2000, New Delhi.
- 8) D. M. Dhamdhere, *Operating Systems – A Concept Based Approach*, TMGH, 2002, New Delhi.
- 9) William Stallings, *Operating Systems*, Pearson Education, 2003, New Delhi.
- 10) Gary Nutt, *Operating Systems – A Modern Perspective*, Pearson Education, 2003, New Delhi.



---

## **UNIT 4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION**

---

### **Structure**

- 4.0 Introduction
- 4.1 Objectives
- 4.2 Security Threats
- 4.3 Security Policies and Mechanisms
- 4.4 Authentication
  - 4.4.1 Passwords
  - 4.4.2 Alternative Forms of Authentication
- 4.5 Protection in Computer Systems
- 4.6 Security Models
  - 4.6.1 Access Matrix Model
  - 4.6.2 Mandatory Access Control
  - 4.6.3 Discretionary Access Control
  - 4.6.4 Rule-Based Access Control
  - 4.6.5 Role-Based Access Control
  - 4.6.6 Take-Grant Model
  - 4.6.7 Multilevel Models
- 4.7 Summary
- 4.8 Solutions/Answers
- 4.9 Further Readings

---

### **4.0 INTRODUCTION**

---

Modern organisations depend heavily on their information systems and large investments are made on them annually. These systems are now computerised, and networking has been the common trend during the last decade. The availability of information and computer resources within an organisation as well as between cooperating organisations is often critical for the production of goods and services. In addition, data stored in or derived from the system must be correct, i.e., data integrity must be ensured. In some situations, it is also of great importance to keep information confidential.

Computer security is traditionally defined by the three attributes of confidentiality, integrity, and availability. *Confidentiality* is the prevention of unauthorised disclosure of information. *Integrity* is the prevention of unauthorised modification of information, and *availability* is the prevention of unauthorised withholding of information or resources. Protection refers to a mechanism for controlling the access of programs, processes, or users to the resources defined by a computer controls to be imposed, together with some means of enforcement. Protection can improve reliability by detecting latent errors at the interfaces between component subsystems. Early detection of interface errors can often prevent contamination of a healthy subsystem by a subsystem that is malfunctioning. An

unprotected resource cannot defend against use (or misuse) by an unauthorised or incompetent user.

Even if a perfectly secure operating system was created, human error (or purposeful human malice) can make it insecure. More importantly, there is no such thing as a completely secure system. No matter how secure the experts might think a particular system is, there exists someone who is clever enough to bypass the security.

It is important to understand that a trade-off always exists between security and the ease of use. It is possible to be *too* secure but security always extracts a price, typically making it more difficult to use your systems for their intended purposes. Users of a secure system need to continually type in, continually change and memorise complex passwords for every computer operation, or use biometric systems with retina and fingerprint and voice scans. All these measures along with confirmations are likely to bring any useful work to a snail's pace. If the consequences are great enough, then you might have to accept extreme security measures. Security is a relative concept, and gains in security often come only with penalties in performance. To date, most systems designed to include security in the operating system structure have exhibited either slow response times or awkward user interfaces—or both.

This unit discusses about the various types of security threats and the commonly deployed detective and preventive methods.

---

## **4.1 OBJECTIVES**

---

After going through this unit, you should be able to:

- identify the security threats and goals;
- mention the role of security policies and mechanisms;
- discuss the significance of authentication and also describe various types of authentication procedures, and
- describe the various models of protection.

---

## **4.2 SECURITY THREATS**

---

System security can mean several things. To have system security we need to protect the system from corruption and we need to protect the data on the system. There are many reasons why these need not be secure.

- Malicious users may try to hack into the system to destroy it.
- Power failure might bring the system down.
- A badly designed system may allow a user to accidentally destroy important data.
- A system may not be able to function any longer because one user fills up the entire disk with garbage.

Although discussions of security usually concentrate on the first of these possibilities, the latter two can be equally damaging the system in practice. One can protect against power failure by using un-interruptible power supplies (UPS). These are units which detect quickly when the power falls below a certain threshold and switch to a battery. Although the battery does not last forever—the UPS gives a system administrator a chance to halt the system by the proper route.

The problem of malicious users has been heightened in recent years by the growth of international networks. Anyone connected to a network can try to log on to almost any machine. If a machine is very insecure, they may succeed. In other words, we are not only looking at our local environment anymore, we must consider potential threats to system security to come from any source. The final point can be controlled by enforcing quotas on how much disk each user is allowed to use.

We can classify the security attacks into two types as mentioned below:

- 1) **Direct:** This is any direct attack on your specific systems, whether from outside hackers or from disgruntled insiders.
- 2) **Indirect:** This is general random attack, most commonly computer viruses, computer worms, or computer Trojan horses.

These security attacks make the study of security measures very essential for the following reasons:

- **To prevent loss of data:** You don't want someone hacking into your system and destroying the work done by you or your team members. Even if you have good back-ups, you still have to identify that the data has been damaged (which can occur at a critical moment when a developer has an immediate need for the damaged data), and then restore the data as best you can from your backup systems.
- **To prevent corruption of data:** Sometimes, the data may not completely be lost, but just be partially corrupted. This can be harder to discover, because unlike complete destruction, there is still data. If the data seems reasonable, you could go a long time before catching the problem, and cascade failure could result in serious problems spreading far and wide through your systems before discovery.
- **To prevent compromise of data:** Sometimes it can be just as bad (or even worse) to have data revealed than to have data destroyed. Imagine the consequences of important trade secrets, corporate plans, financial data, etc. falling in the hands of your competitors.
- **To prevent theft of data:** Some kinds of data are subject to theft. An obvious example is the list of credit card numbers belonging to your customers. Just about anything associated with money can be stolen.
- **To prevent sabotage:** A disgruntled employee, a dishonest competitor, or even a stranger could use any combination of the above activities to maliciously harm your business. Because of the thought and intent, this is the most dangerous kind of attack, the kind that has the potential for the greatest harm to your business.

Let's now discuss some security-related issues that the OS must deal to maintain confidentiality, integrity, and availability of system resources.

## 4.3 SECURITY POLICIES AND MECHANISMS

---

Computer systems and especially their protection mechanisms must be penetration resistant. However, most, or perhaps all, current systems have security holes that make them vulnerable. As long as vulnerabilities remain in a system, the security may be circumvented. It is thus not difficult to understand why system owners would like to know how secure their particular system actually is.

Security evaluations have been performed for quite some time by mainly two different methods. The first is to classify systems into a predefined set of categories, each with different security requirements. The other method is referred to as penetration testing, which is a form of stress testing exposing weaknesses in a system. Here, the idea is to let a group of people, normally very skilled in the computer security area, attack a target system.

A **security policy** establishes accountability for information protection by defining a set of rules, conditions, and practices that regulate how an organisation manages, protects, and distributes sensitive information. While substantial effort may be put in by the vendor in implementing the mechanisms to enforce the policy and developing assurance that the mechanisms perform properly, all efforts fail if the policy itself is flawed or poorly understood. For this reason, the standards require that “there must be an explicit and well-defined security policy enforced by the system”. A security policy may address confidentiality, integrity, and/or availability.

## 4.4 AUTHENTICATION

---

It is the process of verifying a user's identity (who you are) through the use of a shared secret (such as a password), a physical token or an artifact (such as a key or a smart card), or a biometric measure (such as a fingerprint).

These three types of authentication are commonly referred to as something you have (physical token), something you know (shared secret), and something you are (biometric measure).

The types and rigor of authentication methods and technologies vary according to the security requirements or policies associated with specific situations and implementations.

The goal of authentication is to provide “reasonable assurance” that anyone who attempts to access a system or network is a legitimate user. In other words, authentication is designed to limit the possibility that an unauthorised user can gain access by impersonating as an authorised user. Here, again, the organisation's security policy should guide how difficult it is for one user to impersonate another. Highly sensitive or valuable information demands stronger authentication technologies than less sensitive or valuable information.

#### 4.4.1 Passwords

The most common and least stringent form of authentication technology demands that users provide only a valid account name and a password to obtain access to a system or network. The password-based authentication is one-way and normally stores the user-id and password combination in a file that may be stored on the server in an encrypted or plaintext file. Most people using the public e-mail systems use this form of authentication.

##### Protection of Passwords

Some systems store the passwords of all users in a protected file. However, this scheme is vulnerable to accidental disclosure and to abuse by system administrators.

UNIX stores only an encrypted form of every password; a string is the password of user X if its encrypted form matches the encrypted password stored for X.

The encrypted password is accessible to everyone, but one cannot find the clear text password without either guessing it or breaking the encryption algorithm.

##### Data Encryption Standard (DES)

Encryption is based on one-way functions: functions that are cheap to compute but whose inverse is very expensive to compute. A still widely used, though older encryption algorithm is the Data Encryption Standard (DES), which uses a 56bit key.

UNIX does not encrypt passwords with a secret key, instead, it uses the password as the key to encrypt a standard string. The latter method is not as vulnerable to attacks based on special properties of the “secret” key, which must nevertheless be known to many people.

##### Limitations of Passwords

Users tend to choose passwords that are easy to guess; persistent guessing attacks can find 80-90% of all passwords. Good guesses include the login name, first names, treat names, words in the on-line dictionary, and any of these reversed or doubled.

The way to defeat these attacks is to choose a password that does not fall into any of those categories. Preferably passwords should contain some uppercase letters, numbers and/or special characters; their presence increases the search space by a large factor.

#### 4.4.2 Alternative Forms of Authentication

Alternative forms of authentication include the following technologies:

- **Biometrics:** These systems read some physical characteristic of the user, such as their fingerprint, facial features, retinal pattern, voiceprints, signature analysis, signature motion analysis, typing rhythm analysis, finger length analysis, DNA analysis. These readings are compared to a database of authorised users to determine identity. The main problems of these schemes are high equipment cost and low acceptance rates.

- **Security Devices or Artifacts:** These systems require use of a special-purpose hardware device that functions like a customised key to gain system access. The device may be inserted into the system like a key or used to generate a code that is then entered into the system. The best example is the use of an ATM card, which is inserted in the machine and also requires password to be entered simultaneously. It holds the user information on either a magnetic strip or a smart chip capable of processing information.
- **Concentric-ring Authentication:** These systems require users to clear additional authentication hurdles as they access increasingly sensitive information. This approach minimizes the authentication burden as users access less sensitive data while requiring stronger proof of identity for more sensitive resources.

Any authentication method may be broken into, given sufficient time, expense, and knowledge. The goal of authentication technologies is to make entry into system expensive and difficult enough that malicious individuals can be deterred from trying to break the security.

## **4.5 PROTECTION IN COMPUTER SYSTEMS**

The use of computers to store and modify information can simplify the composition, editing, distribution, and reading of messages and documents. These benefits are not free, however, part of the cost is the aggravation of some of the security problems discussed above and the introduction of some new problems as well. Most of the difficulties arise because a computer and its programs are shared amongst several users.

For example, consider a computer program that displays portions of a document on a terminal. The user of such a program is very likely not its developer. It is, in general, possible for the developer to have written the program so that it makes a copy of the displayed information accessible to himself (or a third party) without the permission or knowledge of the user who requested the execution of the program. If the developer is not authorised to view this information, security has been violated.

In compensation for the added complexities automation brings to security, an automated system, if properly constructed, can bestow a number of benefits as well. For example, a computer system can place stricter limits on user discretion. In the paper system, the possessor of a document has complete discretion over its further distribution. An automated system that enforces distribution constraints strictly can prevent the recipient of a message or document from passing it to others. Of course, the recipient can always copy the information by hand or repeat it verbally, but the inability to pass it on directly is a significant barrier.

An automated system can also offer new kinds of access control. Permission to execute certain programs can be granted or denied so that specific operations can be restricted to designated users. Controls can be designed so that some users can execute a program but cannot read or modify it directly. Programs protected in this way might be allowed to access information not directly available to the user, filter it, and pass the results back to the user.

Information contained in an automated system must be protected from three kinds of threats: (1) the *unauthorised disclosure* of information, (2) the *unauthorised modification* of information, and (3) the *unauthorised withholding* of information (usually called *denial of service*).

To protect the computer systems, we often need to apply some security models. Let us see in the next section about the various security models available.

## 4.6 SECURITY MODELS

Security models are more precise and detailed expressions of security policies discussed as above and are used as guidelines to build and evaluate systems. Models can be discretionary or mandatory. In a *discretionary* model, holders of rights can be allowed to transfer them at their discretion. In a *mandatory* model only designated roles are allowed to grant rights and users cannot transfer them. These models can be classified into those based on the access matrix, and multilevel models. The first model controls access while the second one attempts to control information flow.

### Security Policy vs. Security Model

The Security Policy outlines several high level points: how the data is accessed, the amount of security required, and what the steps are when these requirements are not met. The security model is more in depth and supports the security policy. Security models are an important concept in the design of any security system. They all have different security policies applying to the systems.

#### 4.6.1 Access Matrix Model

The access matrix model for computer protection is based on abstraction of operating system structures. Because of its simplicity and generality, it allows a variety of implementation techniques, as has been widely used.

There are three principal components in the access matrix model:

- A set of passive *objects*,
- A set of active *subjects*, which may manipulate the objects,
- A set of *rules* governing the manipulation of objects by subjects.

Objects are typically files, terminals, devices, and other entities implemented by an operating system. A subject is a process and a *domain* (a set of constraints within which the process may access certain objects). It is important to note that every subject is also an object; thus it may be read or otherwise manipulated by another subject. The *access matrix* is a rectangular array with one row per subject and one column per object. The entry for a particular row and column reflects the mode of access between the corresponding subject and object. The mode of access allowed depends on the type of the object and on the functionality of the system; typical modes are read, write, append, and execute.

Objects		File 1	File 2
File 3			
Subject			
User 1	<i>r, w</i>	<i>R</i>	<i>r, w, x</i>
User 2	<i>r</i>	<i>R</i>	<i>r, w, x</i>
User 3	<i>r, w, x</i>	<i>r, w</i>	<i>r, w, x</i>

Figure 1: An access matrix

All accesses to objects by subjects are subject to some conditions laid down by an enforcement mechanism that refers to the data in the access matrix. This mechanism, called a *reference monitor*, rejects any accesses (including improper attempts to alter the access matrix data) that are not allowed by the current protection state and rules. References to objects of a given type must be validated by the *monitor* for that type.

While implementing the access matrix, it has been observed that the access matrix tends to be very sparse if it is implemented as a two-dimensional array. Consequently, implementations that maintain protection of data tend to store them either row wise, keeping with each subject a list of the objects and access modes allowed on it; or column wise, storing with each object a list of those subjects that may access it and the access modes allowed on each. The former approach is called the *capability list* approach and the latter is called the *access control list* approach.

In general, access control governs each user's ability to read, execute, change, or delete information associated with a particular computer resource. In effect, access control works at two levels: first, to grant or deny the ability to interact with a resource, and second, to control what kinds of operations or activities may be performed on that resource. Such controls are managed by an access control system. Today, there are numerous methods of access controls implemented or practiced in real-world settings. These include the methods described in the next four sections.

#### 4.6.2 Mandatory Access Control

In a **Mandatory Access Control (MAC)** environment, all requests for access to resources are automatically subject to access controls. In such environments, all users and resources are classified and receive one or more security labels (such as "Unclassified," "Secret," and "Top Secret"). When a user requests a resource, the associated security labels are examined and access is permitted only if the user's label is greater than or equal to that of the resource.

#### 4.6.3 Discretionary Access Control

In a **Discretionary Access Control (DAC)** environment, resource owners and administrators jointly control access to resources. This model allows for much greater flexibility and drastically reduces the administrative burdens of security implementation.

#### 4.6.4 Rule-Based Access Control

Security and Protection

In general, *rule-based access control* systems associate explicit access controls with specific system resources, such as files or printers. In such environments, administrators typically establish access rules on a per-resource basis, and the underlying operating system or directory services employ those rules to grant or deny access to users who request access to such resources. Rule-based access controls may use a MAC or DAC scheme, depending on the management role of resource owners.

#### 4.6.5 Role-Based Access Control

*Role-based access control (RBAC)* enforces access controls depending upon a user's role(s). Roles represent specific organisational duties and are commonly mapped to job titles such as "Administrator," "Developer," or "System Analyst." Obviously, these roles require vastly different network access privileges.

Role definitions and associated access rights must be based upon a thorough understanding of an organisation's *security policy*. In fact, roles and the access rights that go with them should be directly related to elements of the security policy.

#### 4.6.6 Take-Grant Model

The access matrix model, properly interpreted, corresponds very well to a wide variety of actual computer system implementations. The simplicity of the model, its definition of subjects, objects, and access control mechanisms, is very appealing. Consequently, it has served as the basis for a number of other models and development efforts. We now discuss a model based on access matrix.

Take-grant models use graphs to model access control. They have been well researched. Although explained in the terms of graph theory, these models are fundamentally access matrix models. The graph structure can be represented as an adjacency matrix, and labels on the arcs can be coded as different values in the matrix.

In a take-grant model, the protection state of a system is described by a directed graph that represents the same information found in an access matrix. Nodes in the graph are of two types, one corresponding to subjects and the other to objects. An arc directed from a node A to another node B indicates that the subject (or object) A has some access right(s) to subject (or object) B. The arc is labeled with the set of A's rights to B. The possible access rights are read (r), write (w), take (t), and grant (g). Read and write have the obvious meanings. "Take" access implies that node A can take node B's access rights to any other node.

For example, if there is an arc labeled (r, g) from node B to node C, and if the arc from A to B includes a "t" in its label, then an arc from A to C labeled (r, g) could be added to the graph (see *Figure 2*). Conversely, if the arc from A to B is marked with a "g", B can be granted any access right A possesses. Thus, if A has (w) access to a node D and (g) access to B, an arc from B to D marked (w) can be added to the graph (see *Figure 3*).

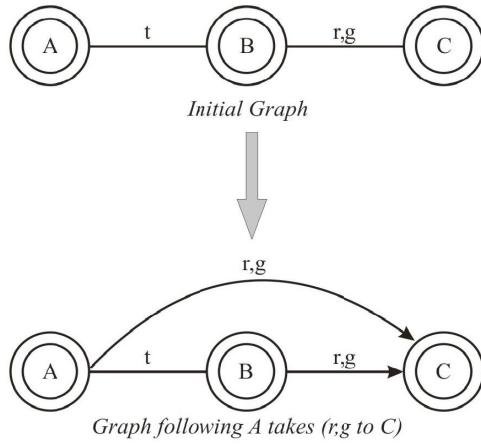


Figure 2: Example of *Take*

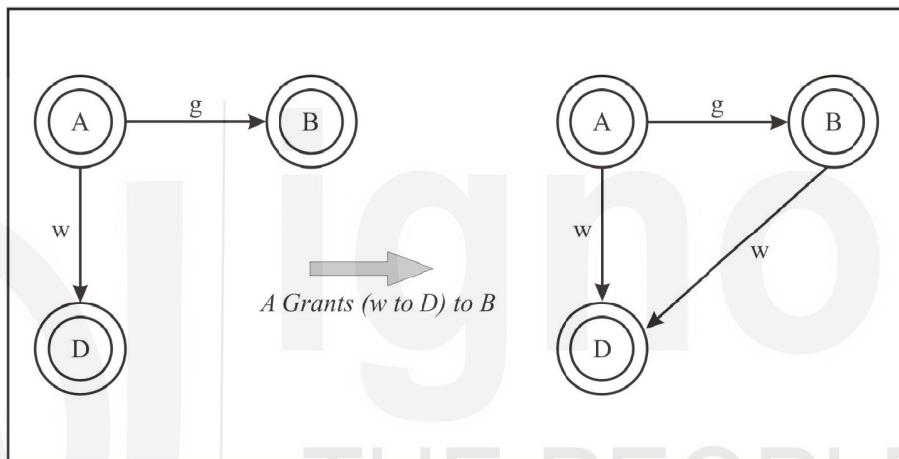


Figure 3: Example of *Grant*

Because the graph needs only the inclusion of arcs corresponding to non-null entries in the access matrix, it provides a compact way to present the same information given in a relatively sparse access matrix. Capability systems are thus prime candidates for this modeling technique; each arc would then represent a particular capability. Together with the protection graph, the model includes a set of rules for adding and deleting both nodes and arcs to the graph.

Two of these, corresponding to the exercise of “take” and “grant” access rights, have already been described. A “create” rule allows a new node to be added to the graph. If subject A creates a new node Y, both the node Y and an arc AY are added to the graph. The label on AY includes any subset of the possible access rights. A “remove” rule allows an access right to be removed from an arc; if all rights are removed from an arc, the arc is removed as well.

#### 4.6.7 Multilevel Models

This type of models corresponds to the multilevel policies where data is classified into sensitivity levels and users have access according to their clearances. Because of the way they control security they have also been called *data flow* models, they control the allowed flow of data between levels.

- The Bell-La Padula model, intended to control leakage of information between levels.

- The Biba model, which controls the integrity.
- The Lattice model, which generalises the partially ordered levels of the previous models using the concept of mathematical lattices.

### Bell and La Padula Model

Bell and La Padula use finite-state machines to formalise their model. They define the various components of the finite state machine, define what it means (formally) for a given system state to be secure, and then consider the transitions that can be allowed so that a secure state can never lead to an insecure state.

In addition to the subjects and objects of the access matrix model, it includes the security levels of the military security system: each subject has a authority and each object has a classification. Each subject also has a *current security level*, which may not exceed the subject's authority. The access matrix is defined as above, and four modes of access are named and specified as follows:

- **Read-only**: subject can read the object but not modify it;
- **Append**: subject can write the object but cannot read it;
- **Execute**: subject can execute the object but cannot read or write it directly; and
- **Read-write**: subject can both read and write the object.

A control attribute, which is like an ownership flag, is also defined. It allows a subject to pass to other subjects some or all of the access modes it possesses for the controlled object. The control attribute itself cannot be passed to other subjects; it is granted to the subject that created the object.

For a system state to be secure, it should hold the following two properties:

- (1) The *simple security property*: No subject has read access to any object that has a classification greater than the clearance of the subject; and
- (2) The *\*-property* (pronounced “star-property”): No subject has append-access to an object whose security level is not at least the current security level of the subject; no subject has read-write access to an object whose security level is not equal to the current security level of the subject; and no subject has read access to an object whose security level is not at most the current security level of the subject.

An example restatement of the model is discussed below:

- In this case, we use security levels as (*unclassified < confidential < secret < top-secret*).

The security levels are used to determine appropriate access rights.

The essence of the model can be defined as follows:

- A higher-level subject (e.g., secret level) can always “*read-down*” to the objects with level which is either equal (e.g., secret level) or lower (e.g., confidential / unclassified level). So the system high (top security level in the system) has the read-only access right to all the objects in the entire system.

- A lower-level subject can never “*read-up*” to the higher-level objects, as the model suggests that these objects do not have enough authority to read the high security level information.
- The subject will have the Read-Write access right when the objects are in the same level as the subject.
- A lower-level subject (e.g., confidential level) can always “*write-up*” (**Append** access right) to the objects with level, which is either equal (e.g., confidential level) or higher (e.g., secret / top-secret level). This happens as a result of all the subjects in the higher security levels (e.g., secret / top-secret level) having the authority to read the object from lower levels.
- A higher-level subject can never “*write-down*” to the lower level objects, as the model suggests that these objects are not secure enough to handle the high security level information.

There are also a few problems associated with this model:

- For a subject of a higher-level, all of its information is considered as the same level. So there is no passing of information from this subject to any object in the lower level.
- For an environment where security levels are not hierarchical related, the model does not account for the transfer of information between these domains.
- The model does not allow changes in access permission.
- The model deals only with confidentiality but not on integrity.

### Biba Integrity model

This model is a modification of the Bell-La Padula model, with emphasis on the integrity. There are two properties in the Biba model:

- **SI-property** (*simple integrity property*): a subject may have write access to an object only if the security level of the subject is either higher or equals to the level of the object.
- **Integrity property:** a subject has the read-only access to an object  $o$ , then it can also have the write access to another object  $p$  only if the security level of  $p$  is either lower or equals to the level of  $o$ .

The essence of the model can be defined as follows:

- The read access policy is the same as the Bell-La Padula model.
- No information from a subject can be passed onto an object in a higher security level. This prevents the contamination of the data of higher integrity from the data of lower integrity.

The major problem associated with this model is that there isn't a practical model that can fulfil the confidentiality of the Bell-La Padula model and the integrity of the Biba model.

### Information-Flow Models

The significance of the concept of information flow is that it focuses on the actual operations that transfer information between objects. Access control models

(such as the original Bell and La Padula model) represent instead the transfer or exercise by subjects of access rights to objects. Information-flow models can be applied to the variables in a program directly, while the access matrix models generally apply to larger objects such as files and processes.

The flow model, compared with the Bell and La Padula model, is relatively uncomplicated. Instead of a series of conditions and properties to be maintained, there is the single requirement that information flow obey the lattice structure as described below. An information-flow model has five components:

- A set of objects, representing information receptacles (e.g., files, program variables, bits),
- A set of processes, representing the active agents responsible for information flow,
- A set of security classes, corresponding to disjoint classes of information,
- An associative and commutative class-combining operator that specifies the class of the information generated by any binary operation on information from two classes, and
- A flow relation that, for any pair of security classes, determines whether information is allowed to flow from one to the other.

Maintaining secure information flow in the modeled system corresponds to ensuring that the actual information that flows between objects do not violate the specified flow relation. This problem is addressed primarily in the context of programming languages. Information flows from an object  $x$  to an object  $y$  whenever information stored in  $x$  is transferred directly to  $y$  or used to derive information transferred to  $y$ . Two kinds of information flow, *explicit* and *implicit*, are identified. A flow from  $x$  to  $y$  is explicit if the operations causing it are independent of the value of  $x$  (e.g., in a statement directly assigning the value of  $x$  to  $y$ ). It is implicit if the statement specifies a flow from some other object  $z$  to  $y$ , but execution of the statement depends on the value of  $x$  (e.g., in the conditional assignment *if*  $x$  *then*  $y$ : =  $z$ ; information about the value of  $x$  can flow into  $y$  whether or not the assignment is executed).

The ***lattice model*** for security levels is widely used to describe the structure of military security levels. A lattice is a finite set together with a partial ordering on its elements such that for every pair of elements there is a least upper bound and a greatest lower bound. The simple linear ordering of sensitivity levels has already been defined. Compartment sets can be partially ordered by the subset relation: one compartment set is greater than or equal to another if the latter set is a subset of the former. Classifications, which include a sensitivity level and a (perhaps empty) compartment set, can then be partially ordered as follows:

For any sensitivity levels  $a, b$  and any compartment sets  $c, d$ ; the relation  $(a, c) \geq (b, d)$  exists if and only if  $a \geq b$  and  $c \supseteq d$ . That each pair of classifications has a greatest lower bound and a least upper bound follows from these definitions and the facts that the classification “unclassified, no compartments” is a global lower bound and that we can postulate a classification “top secret, all compartments” as a global upper bound. Because the lattice model matches the military classification structure so closely, it is widely used.

☞ **Check Your Progress 1**

- 1) What is computer security and what are the several forms of damages that can be done by the intruders to the computer systems?

.....  
.....

- 2) Explain the role of Access Lists.

.....  
.....

---

## 4.7 SUMMARY

---

Security is an important aspect of an OS. The distinction between security and protection is:

*Security:* Broad sense to refer all concerns about controlled access to facilities.

*Protection:* Mechanism to support security.

In this unit, we have discussed the concept of security and various threats to it. Also we have discussed various protection and security mechanisms to enforce security to the system.

---

## 4.8 SOLUTIONS / ANSWERS

---

**Check Your Progress 1**

- 1) Computer security is required because most organisations can be damaged by hostile software or intruders. There may be several forms of damage which are obviously interrelated. These include:

- Damage or destruction of computer systems.
- Damage or destruction of internal data.
- Loss of sensitive information to hostile parties.
- Use of sensitive information to steal items of monetary value.
- Use of sensitive information against the organisation's customers which may result in legal action by customers against the organisation and loss of customers.
- Damage to the reputation of an organisation.
- Monetary damage due to loss of sensitive information, destruction of data, hostile use of sensitive data, or damage to the organisation's reputation.

- 2) The logical place to store authorisation information about a file is with the file itself or with its inode.

Each element of an Access Control List (ACL) contains a set of user names and a set of operation names. To check whether a given user is allowed to perform a given operation, the kernel searches the list until it finds an entry that applies to the user, and allows the access if the desired operation is named in that entry. The ACL usually ends with a default entry. Systems that use ACLs stop searching when they find an ACL entry that applies to the subject. If this entry denies access to the subject, it does not matter if later entries would also match and grant access; the subject will be denied access. This behaviour is useful for setting up exceptions, such as everyone can access this file except people in this group.

---

## 4.9 FURTHER READINGS

---

- 1) Abraham Silberschatz and Peter Baer Galvin, *Operating System Concepts*, Wiley and Sons (Asia) Publications, New Delhi.
- 2) H.M.Deitel, *Operating Systems*, Pearson Education Asia, New Delhi.
- 3) Andrew S. Tanenbaum, *Operating Systems- Design and implementation*, Prentice Hall of India Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.
- 4) Achyut S. Godbole, *Operating Systems*, Second Edition, TMGH, 2005, New Delhi.
- 5) Milan Milenkovic, *Operating Systems*, TMGH, 2000, New Delhi.
- 6) D. M. Dhamdhere, *Operating Systems – A Concept Based Approach*, TMGH, 2002, New Delhi.
- 7) William Stallings, *Operating Systems*, Pearson Education, 2003, New Delhi.

Indira Gandhi  
National Open University  
School of Computer and  
Information Sciences

**Block****3****ADVANCED TOPICS IN OPERATING SYSTEMS****UNIT 1**

---

<b>Multiprocessor Systems</b>	<b>5</b>
-------------------------------	----------

---

**UNIT 2**

---

<b>Distributed Operating Systems</b>	<b>19</b>
--------------------------------------	-----------

---

**UNIT 3**

---

<b>Mobile Operating Systems</b>	<b>48</b>
---------------------------------	-----------

---

## PROGRAMME/COURSE DESIGN COMMITTEE

Prof. Sanjeev K. Aggarwal, IIT, Kanpur Shri Navneet Aggarwal Trinity BPM, New Delhi Prof. M. Balakrishnan, IIT, Delhi Prof. Pandurangan, C., IIT, Madras Ms. Bhoomi Gupta Sirifort College of Computer and Technology Management, New Delhi Shri Manoj Kumar Gupta Keane India Ltd., New Delhi Shri Sachin Gupta Delhi Institute of Advanced Studies, New Delhi Prof. Harish Karnick, IIT, Kanpur Shri Anil Kumar Amity School of Engineering and Technology New Delhi Dr. Kapil Kumar, IIMT, Meerut Dr. Sachin Kumar, CCS University, Meerut Ms. Manjulata Amity School of Engineering and Technology New Delhi Shri Ajay Rana Amity School of Computer Sciences, Noida Dr. Divya Sharma Bharati College, Delhi Shri Neeraj Sharma Harvard Institute of Management Technology Noida	Shri Sanjeev Thakur Amity School of Computer Sciences, Noida Shri Amrit Nath Thulal Amity School of Engineering and Technology New Delhi Dr. Om Vikas(Retd), Ex-Sr. Director, Ministry of ICT, Delhi Shri Vishwakarma Amity School of Engineering and Technology New Delhi Prof (Retd) S. K. Gupta, IIT Delhi Prof. T.V. Vijaya Kumar, Dean, SC&SS, JNU, New Delhi Prof. Ela Kumar, Dean, CSE, IGDTUW, Delhi Prof. Gayatri Dhingra, GVMITM, Sonipat Sh. Milind Mahajani Vice President, Impressico Business Solutions, Noida, UP Prof. V. V. Subrahmanyam, Director SOCIS, New Delhi Prof. P. V. Suresh, SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi Dr. Shashi Bhushan SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi Shri Akshay Kumar, Associate Prof. SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi Shri M. P. Mishra, Associate Prof. SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi Dr. Sudhansh Sharma, Asst. Prof SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi
--	---

## BLOCK PREPARATION TEAM

Prof. D.P. Vidyarthi ( <i>Content Editor</i> ) Jawaharlal Nehru University New Delhi  Shri Sachin Gupta Delhi Institute of Advanced Studies New Delhi	Dr. Divya Sharma Bharati College, University of Delhi, Delhi  Prof. V.V. Subrahmanyam ( <i>Course Writer-Unit-3</i> ) SOCIS, IGNOU  Prof. A.K. Verma ( <i>Language Editor</i> ) Professor & Head (Retired) Mass Communication, Delhi
---	--

**Course Coordinator:** Prof. V. V. Subrahmanyam

(The Units of Block-3, Unit 1 and Unit-2 were adapted from MCS-041 Operating Systems)

## PRINT PRODUCTION

<b>Mr. Tilak Raj</b> Asst. Registrar (Pub.) MPDD, IGNOU, New Delhi	<b>Mr. Yashpal</b> Section Officer (Pub.) MPDD, IGNOU, New Delhi
--	--

March, 2021

© Indira Gandhi National Open University, 2021

All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced in any form, by mimeograph or any other means, without permission in writing from the Indira Gandhi National Open University.

Further information on the Indira Gandhi National Open University courses may be obtained from the University's office at Maidan Garhi, New Delhi-110068.

Printed and published on behalf of the Indira Gandhi National Open University, New Delhi by the MPDD, IGNOU, New Delhi

Laser Typesetting : Akashdeep Printers, 20-Ansari Road, Daryaganj, New Delhi-110002

Printed at :

## BLOCK INTRODUCTION

---

This block introduces you with the advanced topics in Operating Systems like the Multitprocessor systems, Distributed Operating Systems and Mobile Operating Systems.

The block is organised into 3 units.

**Unit 1** covers the OS technology to support the Multiprocessor systems. This unit discusses the different types of microprocessor interconnections, types of multiprocessor operating systems, functions of multiprocessor OS and synchronization aspects in the multiprocessor systems.

**Unit 2** covers the OS technology to support the distributed computing. The unit starts with the discussion on the need of the distributed systems, design goals and design issues pertaining to the distributed systems. Also it focuses on various models of distributed systems, Remote procedure calls and Distributed shared memory.

**Unit 3** covers the Mobile Operating Systems





---

# UNIT 1 MULTIPROCESSOR SYSTEMS

---

## Structure

- 1.1 Introduction
- 1.2 Objectives
- 1.3 Multiprocessing and Processor Coupling
- 1.4 Multiprocessor Interconnections
  - 1.4.1 Bus-oriented System
  - 1.4.2 Crossbar-connected System
  - 1.4.3 Hypercubes System
  - 1.4.4 Multistage Switch-based System
- 1.5 Types of Multiprocessor Operating Systems
  - 1.5.1 Separate Supervisors
  - 1.5.2 Master-Slave
  - 1.5.3 Symmetric
- 1.6 Multiprocessor Operating System - Functions and Requirements
- 1.7 Multiprocessor Synchronization
  - 1.7.1 Test-and-set
  - 1.7.2 Compare-and-Swap
  - 1.7.3 Fetch-and-Add
- 1.8 Summary
- 1.9 Solutions / Answers
- 1.10 Further Readings

---

## 1.0 INTRODUCTION

---

A multiprocessor system is a collection of a number of standard processors put together in an innovative way to improve the performance / speed of computer hardware. The main feature of this architecture is to provide high speed at low cost in comparison to uniprocessor. In a distributed system, the high cost of multiprocessor can be offset by employing them on a computationally intensive task by making it compute server. The multiprocessor system is generally characterised by - *increased system throughput and application speedup* - parallel processing.

Throughput can be improved, in a *time-sharing environment*, by executing a number of unrelated user processor on different processors in parallel. As a result a large number of different tasks can be completed in a unit of time without explicit user direction. On the other hand application speedup is possible by creating a multiple processor scheduled to work on different processors.

The scheduling can be done in two ways:

- 1) *Automatic means*, by parallelising compiler.
- 2) *Explicit-tasking approach*, where each programme submitted for execution is treated by the operating system as an independent process.

Multiprocessor operating systems aim to support high performance through multiple CPUs. An important goal is to make the number of CPUs transparent to the application. Achieving such transparency is relatively easy because the communication between different (parts of) applications uses the same primitives as those in multitasking uni-processor operating systems. The idea is that all communication is done by manipulating data at shared memory locations, and that we only have to protect that data against simultaneous access. Protection is done through synchronization primitives like semaphores and monitors.

In this unit we will study multiprocessor coupling, interconnections, types of multiprocessor operating systems and synchronization.

---

## 1.1 OBJECTIVES

---

After going through this unit, you should be able to:

- define a multiprocessor system;
- describe the architecture of multiprocessor and distinguish among various types of architecture;
- become familiar with different types of multiprocessor operating systems;
- discuss the functions of multiprocessors operating systems;
- describe the requirement of multiprocessor in Operating System, and
- discuss the synchronization process in a multiprocessor system.

---

## 1.2 MULTIPROCESSING AND PROCESSOR COUPLING

---

Multiprocessing is a general term for the use of two or more CPUs within a single computer system. There are many variations on this basic theme, and the definition of multiprocessing can vary with context, mostly as a function of how CPUs are defined. The term multiprocessing is sometimes used to refer to the execution of multiple concurrent software processes in a system as opposed to a single process at any one instant. However, the term multiprogramming is more appropriate to describe this concept, which is implemented mostly in software, whereas multiprocessing is more appropriate to describe the use of multiple hardware CPUs. A system can be both multiprocessing and multiprogramming, only one of the two, or neither of the two.

Processor Coupling is a type of multiprocessing. Let us see in the next section.

### Processor Coupling

Tightly-coupled multiprocessor systems contain multiple CPUs that are connected at the bus level. These CPUs may have access to a central shared memory (SMP), or may participate in a memory hierarchy with both local and shared memory (NUMA). *The IBM p690 Regatta* is an example of a high end SMP system. Chip multiprocessors, also known as multi-core computing, involve more than one

processor placed on a single chip and can be thought of the most extreme form of tightly-coupled multiprocessing. Mainframe systems with multiple processors are often tightly-coupled.

Loosely-coupled multiprocessor systems often referred to as clusters are based on multiple standalone single or dual processor commodity computers interconnected via a high speed communication system. A *Linux Beowulf* is an example of a loosely-coupled system.

Tightly-coupled systems perform better and are physically smaller than loosely-coupled systems, but have historically required greater initial investments and may depreciate rapidly; nodes in a loosely-coupled system are usually inexpensive commodity computers and can be recycled as independent machines upon retirement from the cluster.

Power consumption is also a consideration. Tightly-coupled systems tend to be much more energy efficient than clusters. This is due to fact that considerable economies can be realised by designing components to work together from the beginning in tightly-coupled systems, whereas loosely-coupled systems use components that were not necessarily intended specifically for use in such systems.

## **1.3 MULTIPROCESSOR INTERCONNECTIONS**

As learnt above, a multiprocessor can speed-up and can improve throughput of the computer system architecturally. The whole architecture of multiprocessor is based on the principle of parallel processing, which needs to synchronize, after completing a stage of computation, to exchange data. For this the multiprocessor system needs an efficient mechanism to communicate. This section outlines the different architecture of multiprocessor interconnection, including:

- Bus-oriented System
- Crossbar-connected System
- Hyper cubes
- Multistage Switch-based System.

### **1.3.1 Bus-oriented System**

*Figure 1* illustrates the typical architecture of a bus oriented system. As indicated, processors and memory are connected by a common bus. Communication between processors (P1, P2, P3 and P4) and with globally shared memory is possible over a shared bus. Other then illustrated many different schemes of bus-oriented system are also possible, such as:

- 1) Individual processors may or may not have private/cache memory.
- 2) Individual processors may or may not attach with input/output devices.
- 3) Input/output devices may be attached to shared bus.
- 4) Shared memory implemented in the form of multiple physical banks connected to the shared bus.

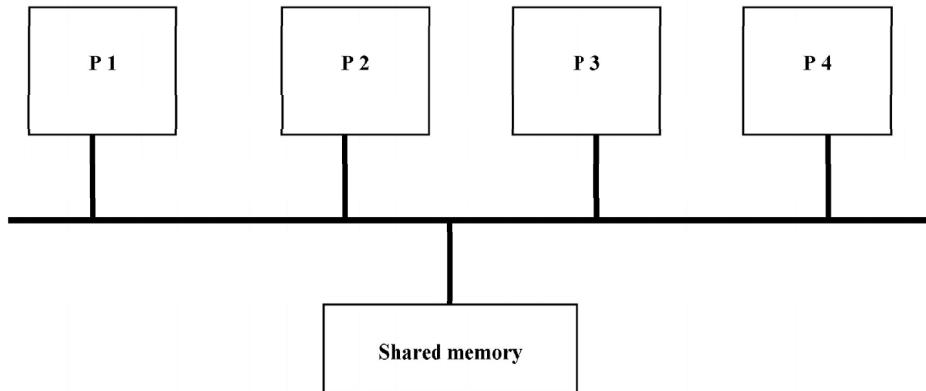


Figure 1. Bus-oriented multiprocessor interconnection

The above architecture gives rise to a problem of *contention* at two points, one is shared bus itself and the other is shared memory. Employing private/cache memory in either of two ways, explained below, the problem of contention could be reduced;

- with shared memory; and
- with cache associated with each individual processor

1) **With shared memory**

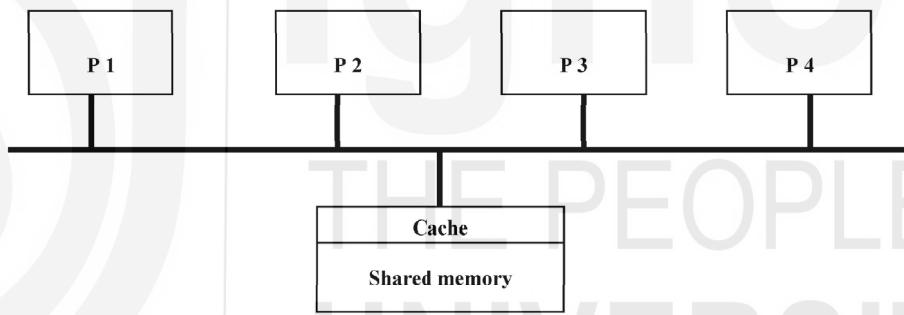


Figure 2: With shared Memory

2) **Cache associated with each individual processor.**

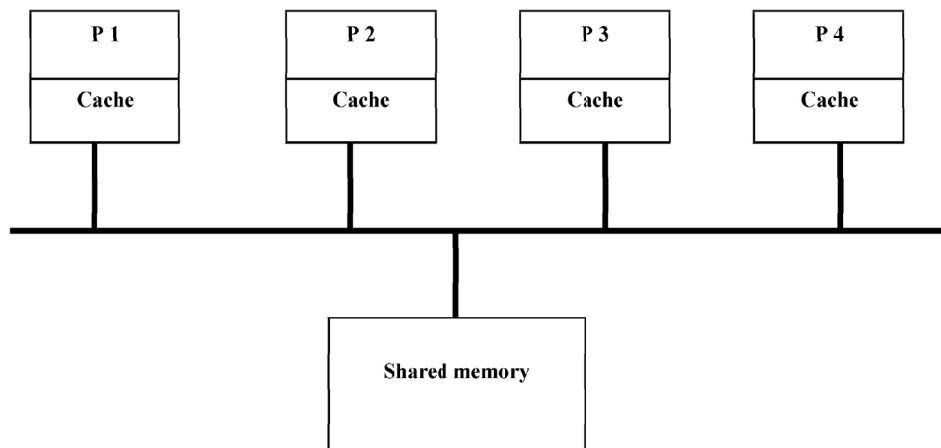
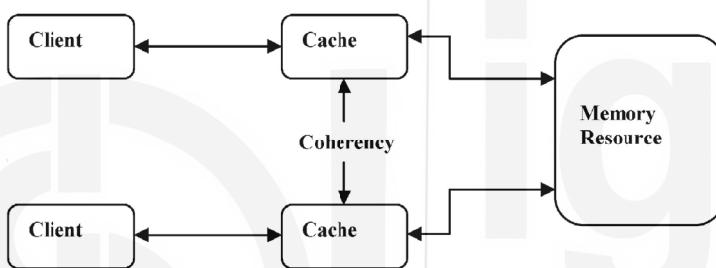


Figure 3: Individual processors with cache

The second approach where the cache is associated with each individual processor is the most popular approach because it reduces contention more effectively.

Cache attached with processor can capture many of the local memory references for example, with a cache of 90% hit ratio, a processor on average needs to access the shared memory for 1 (one) out of 10 (ten) memory references because 9 (nine) references are already captured by private memory of processor. In this case where memory access is uniformly distributed a 90% cache hit ratio can support the shared bus to speed-up 10 times more than the process without cache. The negative aspect of such an arrangement arises when in the presence of multiple cache the shared writable data are cached. In this case Cache Coherence is maintained to consistency between multiple physical copies of a single logical datum with each other in the presence of update activity. Yes, the cache coherence can be maintained by attaching additional hardware or by including some specialised protocols designed for the same but unfortunately this special arrangement will increase the bus traffic and thus reduce the benefit that processor caches are designed to provide.

Cache coherence refers to the integrity of data stored in local caches of a shared resource. Cache coherence is a special case of memory coherence.



**Figure 4: Multiple Caches of Common Resource**

When clients in a system, particularly CPUs in a multiprocessor system, maintain caches of a common memory resource, problems arise. Referring to the *Figure 4*, if the top client has a copy of a memory block from a previous read and the bottom client changes that memory block, the top client could be left with an invalid cache of memory without it knowing any better. Cache coherence is intended to manage such conflicts and maintain consistency between cache and memory.

Let us discuss some techniques which can be employed to decrease the impact of bus and memory saturation in bus-oriented system.

- 1) **Wider Bus Technique:** As suggested by its name a bus is made wider so that more bytes can be transferred in a single bus cycle. In other words, a wider parallel bus increases the bandwidth by transferring more bytes in a single bus cycle. The need of bus transaction arises when lost or missed blocks are to fetch into his processor cache. In this transaction many system supports, block-level reads and writes of main memory. In the similar way, a missing block can be transferred from the main memory to his processor cache only by a single main-memory (block) read action. The advantage of *block level access to memory over word-oriented busses* is the amortization of overhead addressing, acquisition and arbitration over a large number of items in a block. Moreover, it also enjoyed specialised burst bus cycles, which makes their transport more efficient.

- 2) **Split Request/Reply Protocols:** The memory request and reply are split into two individual works and are treated as separate bus transactions. As soon as

a processor requests a block, the bus released to other user, meanwhile it takes for memory to fetch and assemble the related group of items.

The bus-oriented system is the simplest architecture of multiprocessor system. In this way it is believed that in a tightly coupled system this organisation can support on the order of 10 processors. However, the two contention points (the bus and the shared memory) limit the scalability of the system.

### 1.3.2 Crossbar-Connected System

Crossbar-connected System (illustrated in *Figure 5*) is a grid structure of processor and memory modules. The every cross point of grid structure is attached with switch. By looking at the *Figure* it seems to be a contention free architecture of multiprocessing system, it shows simultaneous access between processor and memory modules as  $N$  number of processors are provided with  $N$  number of memory modules. Thus each processor accesses a different memory module. Crossbar needs  $N^2$  switches for fully connected network between processors and memory. Processors may or may not have their private memories. In the later case the system supports uniform-memory-access.

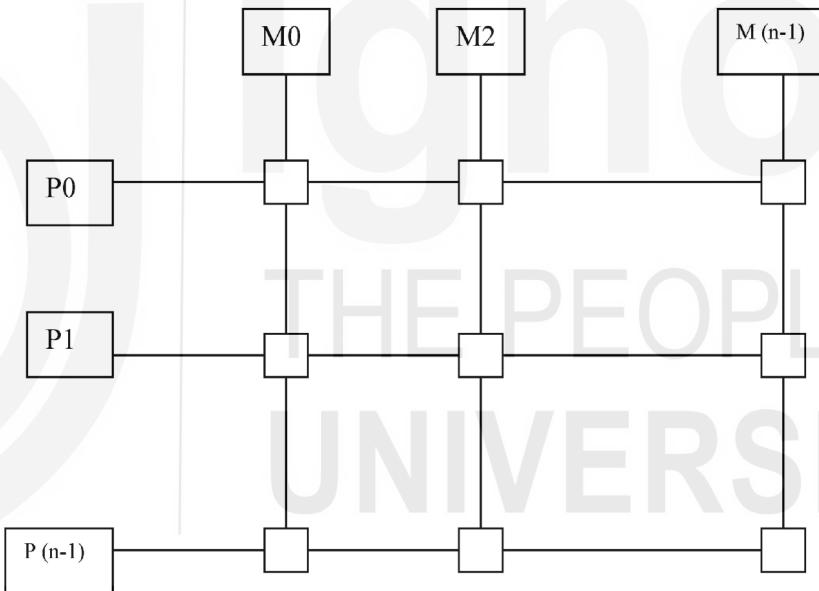


Figure 5: Crossbar-connected system

Where P= processor, M=Memory Module and =Switch

But Unfortunately this system also faces the problem of contention when,

- 1) More than two processors (P1 and P2) attempt to access the one memory module (M1) at the same time. In this condition, contention can be avoided by making any one processor (P1) deferred until the other one (P2) finishes this work or left the same memory module (M1) free for processor P1.
- 2) More than two processor attempts to access the same memory module. This problem cannot be solved by above-mentioned solution.

Thus in crossbar connection system the problem of contention occurs on at memory neither at processor nor at interconnection networks level. The solution of this problem includes quadratic growth of its switches as well as its complexity

level. Not only this, it will make the whole system expensive and also limit the scalability of the system.

### 1.3.3 Hypercubes System

Hypercube base architecture is not an old concept of multiprocessor system. This architecture has some advantages over other architectures of multiprocessing system. As the *Figure 6* indicates, the system topology can support large number of processors by providing increasing interconnections with increasing complexity. In an  $n$ -degree hypercube architecture, we have:

- 1)  $2^n$  nodes (Total number of processors)
- 2) Nodes are arranged in  $n$ -dimensional cube, i.e. each node is connected to  $n$  number of nodes.
- 3) Each node is assigned with a unique address which lies between 0 to  $2^n - 1$
- 4) The adjacent nodes ( $n-1$ ) are differing in 1 bit and the  $n^{\text{th}}$  node is having maximum ' $n$ ' internode distance.

Let us take an example of **3-degree hypercube** to understand the above structure:

- 1) 3-degree hypercube will have  $2^n$  nodes i.e.,  $2^3 = 8$  nodes
- 2) Nodes are arranged in 3-dimensional cube, that is, each node is connected to 3 number of nodes.
- 3) Each node is assigned with a unique address, which lies between 0 to 7 ( $2^n - 1$ ), i.e., 000, 001, 010, 011, 100, 101, 110, 111
- 4) Two adjacent nodes differing in 1 bit (001, 010) and the 3<sup>rd</sup> ( $n^{\text{th}}$ ) node is having maximum '3' internode distance (100).

Hypercube provide a good basis for scalable system because its communication length grows logarithmically with the number of nodes. It provides a bi-directional communication between two processors. It is usually used in loosely coupled multiprocessor system because the transfer of data between two processors goes through several intermediate processors. The longest internodes delay is  $n$ -degree. To increase the input/output bandwidth the input/output devices can be attached with every node (processor).

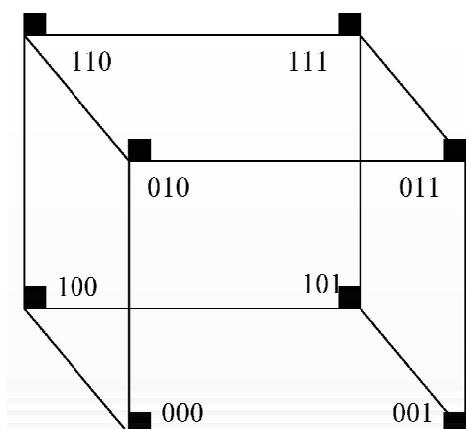


Figure 6: Hypercubes System

### 1.3.4 Multistage Switch Based system

Multistage Switch Based System permits simultaneous connection between several input-output pairs. It consists of several stages of switches which provide multistage interconnection network. A  $N$  input-output connections contains  $K = \log_2 N$  stages of  $\binom{N}{2}$  switches at each stage. In simple words,  $N^2$  processor-memory interconnection network requires  $(\binom{N}{2})^2 = \log_2 N$  switches.

For example, in a  $8 \times 8$  process-memory interconnection network requires  $(8/\binom{8}{2} \log_2 8) = 4^2 \cdot 3 = 12$  switches. Each switch acts as  $2 \times 2$  crossbar.

This network can connect any processor to any memory module by making appropriate connection of each of the ' $K$ ' stages. The binary address of processor and memory gives binary string routing path between module pairs of input and output. the routing path  $id$  decided by on the basis of destination binary address, that the sender includes with each request for connection. Various combinations of paths between sources to destination are possible by using different switch function (straight, swap, copy, etc.)

In multistage switch based system all inputs are connected to all outputs in such a way that no two-processor attempt to access the same memory at the same time. But the problem of contention, at a switch, arises when some memory modules are contested by some fixed processor. In this situation only one request is allowed to access and rest of the requests are dropped. The processor whose requests were dropped can retry the request or if buffers are attached with each switch the rejected request is forwarded by buffer automatically for transmission. This Multistage interconnection networks also called store-and-forward networks.

## 1.4 TYPES OF MULTIPROCESSOR OPERATING SYSTEMS

The multiprocessor operating systems are complex in comparison to multiprograms on an uniprocessor operating system because multiprocessor executes tasks concurrently.

Therefore, it must be able to support the concurrent execution of multiple tasks to increase processors performance.

Depending upon the control structure and its organisation the three basic types of multiprocessor operating system are:

- 1) Separate supervisor
- 2) Master-slave
- 3) Symmetric Supervision

### 1.4.1 Separate Supervisors

In separate supervisor system each process behaves independently. Each system has its own operating system which manages local input/output devices, file system and memory well as keeps its own copy of kernel, supervisor and data structures, whereas some common data structures also exist for communication between

processors. The access protection is maintained, between processor, by using some synchronization mechanism like semaphores. Such architecture will face the following problems:

- 1) Little coupling among processors.
- 2) Parallel execution of single task.
- 3) During process failure it degrades.
- 4) Inefficient configuration as the problem of replication arises between supervisor/kernel/data structure code and each processor.

### **1.4.2 Master-Slave**

In master-slave, out of many processors one processor behaves as a master whereas others behave as slaves. The master processor is dedicated to executing the operating system. It works as scheduler and controller over slave processors. It schedules the work and also controls the activity of the slaves. Therefore, usually data structures are stored in its private memory. Slave processors are often identified and work only as a schedulable pool of resources, in other words, the slave processors execute application programmes.

This arrangement allows the parallel execution of a single task by allocating several subtasks to multiple processors concurrently. Since the operating system is executed by only master processors this system is relatively simple to develop and efficient to use. Limited scalability is the main limitation of this system, because the master processor become a bottleneck and will consequently fail to fully utilise slave processors.

### **1.4.3 Symmetric**

In symmetric organisation all processors configuration are identical. All processors are autonomous and are treated equally. To make all the processors functionally identical, all the resources are pooled and are available to them. This operating system is also symmetric as any processor may execute it. In other words there is one copy of kernel that can be executed by all processors concurrently. To that end, the whole process is needed to be controlled for proper interlocks for accessing scarce data structure and pooled resources.

The simplest way to achieve this is to treat the entire operating system as a critical section and allow only one processor to execute the operating system at one time. This method is called ‘floating master’ method because in spite of the presence of many processors only one operating system exists. The processor that executes the operating system has a special role and acts as a master. As the operating system is not bound to any specific processor, therefore, it floats from one processor to another.

Parallel execution of different applications is achieved by maintaining a queue of ready processors in shared memory. Processor allocation is then reduced to assigning the first ready process to first available processor until either all processors are busy or the queue is emptied. Therefore, each idled processor fetches the next work item from the queue.

## 1.5 MULTIPROCESSOR OPERATING SYSTEM - FUNCTIONS AND REQUIREMENTS

A multiprocessor operating system manages all the available resources and schedule functionality to form an abstraction it will facilitates programme execution and interaction with users.

A processor is one of the important and basic types of resources that need to be managed. For effective use of multiprocessors the processor scheduling is necessary.

Processors scheduling undertakes the following tasks:

- (i) Allocation of processors among applications in such a manner that will be consistent with system design objectives. It affects the system throughput. Throughput can be improved by co-scheduling several applications together, thus availing fewer processors to each.
- (ii) Ensure efficient use of processors allocation to an application. This primarily affects the speedup of the system.

The above two tasks are somehow conflicting each other because maximum speedup needs dedication of a large proportion of a systems processors to a single application which will decrease throughput of the system. Due to the difficulties of automating the process, the need for explicit programmer direction arises to some degree. Generally the language translators and preprocessors provide support for explicit and automatic parallelism. The two primary facets of OS support for multiprocessing are:

- (i) Flexible and efficient interprocess and interprocessor synchronization mechanism, and
- (ii) Efficient creation and management of a large number of threads of activity, such as processes or threads.

The latter aspect is important because parallelism is often accomplished by splitting an application into separate, individually executable subtasks that may be allocated to different processors.

The **Memory management** is the second basic type of resource that needs to be managed. In multiprocessors system memory management is highly dependent on the architecture and inter-connection scheme.

- In loosely coupled systems memory is usually handled independently on a pre-processor basis whereas in multiprocessor system shared memory may be simulated by means of a message passing mechanism.
- In shared memory systems the operating system should provide a flexible memory model that facilitates safe and efficient access to share data structures and synchronization variables.

A multiprocessor operating system should provide a hardware independent, unified model of shared memory to facilitate porting of applications between different multiprocessor environments. The designers of the mach operating system exploited the duality of memory management and inter-process communication.

The third basic resource is **Device Management** but it has received little attention in multiprocessor systems to date, because earlier the main focus point is speedup of compute intensive application, which generally do not generate much input/output after the initial loading. Now, multiprocessors are applied for more balanced general-purpose applications, therefore, the input/output requirement increases in proportion with the realised throughput and speed.

## **1.6 MULTIPROCESSOR SYNCHRONIZATION**

Multiprocessor system facilitates parallel program execution and read/write sharing of data and thus may cause the processors to concurrently access location in the shared memory. Therefore, a correct and reliable mechanism is needed to serialize this access. This is called synchronization mechanism. The mechanism should make access to a shared data structure appear atomic with respect to each other. In this section, we introduce some new mechanism and techniques suitable for synchronization in multiprocessors.

### **1.6.1 Test-and-Set**

The test-and-set instruction automatically reads and modifies the contents of a memory location in one memory cycle. It is as follows:

```
function test-and-set (var m: Boolean); Boolean;
begin
  test-and set:=m;
  m:=rue
end;
```

The test-and-set instruction returns the current value of variable m (memory location) and sets it to true. This instruction can be used to implement *P* and *V* operations (Primitives) on a binary semaphore, *S*, in the following way (*S* is implemented as a memory location):

*P(S)*: while Test-and-Set (*S*) do nothing;

*V(S)*: *S*:=false;

Initially, *S* is set to false. When a *P(S)* operation is executed for the first time, test-and-set(*S*) returns a false value (and sets *S* to true) and the “while” loop of the *P(S)* operation terminates. All subsequent executions of *P(S)* keep looping because *S* is true until a *V(S)* operation is executed.

### **1.6.2 Compare-and-Swap**

The compare and swap instruction is used in the optimistic synchronization of concurrent updates to a memory location. This instruction is defined as follows (*r1* and *r2* are to registers of a processor and *m* is a memory location):

```
function test-and-set (var m: Boolean); Boolean;
var temp: integer;
begin
  temp:=m;
```

```

if temp = r1 then {m:= r2;z:=1}
else [r1:= temp; z:=0]
end;

```

If the contents of  $r1$  and  $m$  are identical, this instruction assigns the contents of  $r2$  to  $m$  and sets  $z$  to 1. Otherwise, it assigns the contents of  $m$  to  $r1$  and set  $z$  to 0. Variable  $z$  is a flag that indicates the success of the execution. This instruction can be used to synchronize concurrent access to a shared variable.

### 1.6.3 Fetch-and-Add

The fetch and add instruction is a multiple operation memory access instruction that automatically adds a constant to a memory location and returns the previous contents of the memory location. This instruction is defined as follows:

```

Function Fetch-and-add (m: integer; c: integer);
Var temp: integer;
Begin
    Temp:= m;
    M:= m + c;
    Return (temp)
end;

```

This instruction is executed by the hardware placed in the interconnection network not by the hardware present in the memory modules. When several processors concurrently execute a fetch-and-add instruction on the same memory location, these instructions are combined in the network and are executed by the network in the following way:

- A single increment, which is the sum of the increments of all these instructions, is added to the memory location.
- A single value is returned by the network to each of the processors, which is an arbitrary serialisation of the execution of the individual instructions.
- If a number of processors simultaneously perform fetch-and-add instructions on the same memory location, the net result is as if these instructions were executed serially in some unpredictable order.

The fetch-and-add instruction is powerful and it allows the implementation of P and V operations on a general semaphore, S, in the following manner:

```

P(S): while (Fetch-and-Add(S, -1) < 0) do
begin
    Fetch-and-Add (S, 1);
    while (S < 0) do nothing;
end;

```

The outer “while-do” statement ensures that only one processor succeeds in decrementing S to 0 when multiple processors try to decrement variable S. All the unsuccessful processors add 1 back to S and try again to decrement it. The “while-do” statement forces an unsuccessful processor to wait (before retrying)

*V(S): Fetch-and-Add (S, I).*

☞ **Check Your Progress 1**

- 1) What is the difference between a loosely coupled system and a tightly coupled system? Give examples.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

- 2) What is the difference between symmetric and asymmetric multiprocessing?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

---

## 1.7 SUMMARY

---

Multiprocessors systems architecture provides higher computing power and speed. It consists of multiple processors that putting power and speed to the system. This system can execute multiple tasks on different processors concurrently. Similarly, it can also execute a single task in parallel on different processors. The design of interconnection networks includes the bus, the cross-bar switch and the multistage interconnection networks. To support parallel execution this system must effectively schedule tasks to various processors. And also it must support primitives for process synchronization and virtual memory management. The three basic configurations of multiprocessor operating systems are: Separate supervisors, Master/slave and Symmetric. A multiprocessor operating system manages all the available resources and schedule functionality to form an abstraction. It includes Process scheduling, Memory management and Device management. Different mechanism and techniques are used for synchronization in multiprocessors to serialize the access of pooled resources. In this section we have discussed Test-and-Set, Compare-and-Swap and Fetch-and-Add techniques of synchronization.

---

## 1.8 SOLUTIONS/ANSWERS

---

- 1) One feature that is commonly characterizing tightly coupled systems is that they share the clock. Therefore, multiprocessors are typically tightly coupled but distributed workstations on a network are not.

Another difference is that: in a tightly-coupled system, the delay experienced when a message is sent from one computer to another is short, and data rate is high; that is, the number of bits per second that can be transferred is large.

In a loosely-coupled system, the opposite is true: the intermachine message delay is large and the data rate is low.

For example, two CPU chips on the same printed circuit board and connected by wires etched onto the board are likely to be tightly coupled, whereas two computers connected by a 2400 bit/sec modem over the telephone system are certain to be loosely coupled.

- 2) The difference between symmetric and asymmetric multiprocessing: all processors of symmetric multiprocessing are peers; the relationship between processors of asymmetric multiprocessing is a master-slave relationship. More specifically, each CPU in symmetric multiprocessing runs the same copy of the OS, while in asymmetric multiprocessing, they split responsibilities typically, therefore, each may have specialised (different) software and roles.

---

## 1.9 FURTHER READINGS

---

- 1) Singhal Mukesh and Shivaratri G. Niranjan, *Advanced Concepts in Operating Systems*, TMGH, 2003, New Delhi.
- 2) Hwang, K. and F Briggs, *Multiprocessors Systems Architectures*, McGraw-Hill, New York.
- 3) Milenkovic, M., *Operating Systems: Concepts and Design*, TMGH, New Delhi.
- 4) Silberschatz, A., J. Peterson, and D. Gavin, *Operating Systems Concepts*, 3<sup>rd</sup> ed., Addison Wesley, New Delhi.

---

## **UNIT 2 DISTRIBUTED OPERATING SYSTEMS**

---

### **Structure**

- 2.1 Introduction
- 2.2 Objectives
- 2.3 History of Distributed Computing
  - 2.3.1 Workstations – Networks
  - 2.3.2 Wide-Scale Distributed Computing and the Internet
- 2.4 Distributed Systems
- 2.5 Key Features and Advantages of a Distributed System
  - 2.5.1 Advantages of Distributed Systems Over Centralised Systems
  - 2.5.2 Advantages of Distributed Systems over Isolated PC's
  - 2.5.3 Disadvantages of Distributed Systems
- 2.6 Design Goals of Distributed Systems
  - 2.6.1 Concurrency
  - 2.6.2 Scalability
  - 2.6.3 Openness
  - 2.6.4 Fault Tolerance
  - 2.6.5 Privacy and Authentication
  - 2.6.6 Transparency
- 2.7 Design Issues Involved in Distributed Systems
  - 2.7.1 Naming
  - 2.7.2 Communication
  - 2.7.3 Software Structure
  - 2.7.4 Workload Allocation
  - 2.7.5 Consistency Maintenance
  - 2.7.6 Lamport's Scheme of Ordering of Events
- 2.8 Distributed System Structure
  - 2.8.1 Application Model 1: Client Server
  - 2.8.2 Application Model 2: Distributed Objects
  - 2.8.3 Application Model 3: Distributed Shared Memory
- 2.9 Mutual Exclusion in Distributed Systems
  - 2.9.1 Mutual Exclusion Servers
  - 2.9.2 Token Based Mutual Exclusion
  - 2.9.3 Lamport's Bakery Algorithm
  - 2.9.4 Ricart and Agrawala's Mutual Exclusion Algorithm
- 2.10 Remote Procedure Calls
  - 2.10.1 How RPC Works?
  - 2.10.2 Remote Procedure Calling Mechanism
  - 2.10.3 Implementation of RPC
  - 2.10.4 Considerations for Usage
  - 2.10.5 Limitations
- 2.11 Other Middleware Technologies
- 2.12 Summary
- 2.13 Solutions/Answers
- 2.14 Further Readings

---

## 2.0 INTRODUCTION

---

In the earlier unit we have discussed the Multiprocessor systems. In the process coupling we have come across the tightly coupled systems and loosely coupled systems. In this unit we concentrate on the loosely coupled systems called as the distributed systems. Distributed computing is the process of aggregating the power of several computing entities to collaboratively run a computational task in a transparent and coherent way, so that it appears as a single, centralised system.

The easiest way of explaining what distributed computing is all about, is by naming a few of its properties:

- Distributed computing consists of a network of more or less independent or autonomous nodes.
- The nodes do *not* share primary storage (i.e., RAM) or secondary storage (i.e., disk) - in the sense that the nodes cannot directly access another node's disk or RAM. Think about it in contrast to a multiprocessors machine where the different "nodes" (CPUs) share the same RAM and secondary storage by using a common bus.
- A well designed distributed system does not crash if a node goes down.
- If you are to perform a computing task which is parallel in nature, scaling your system is a lot cheaper by adding extra nodes, compared to getting a faster single machine. Of course, if your processing task is highly non-parallel (every result depends on the previous), using a distributed computing system may not be very beneficial.

Before going into the actual details of the distributed systems let us study how distributed computing evolved.

---

## 2.1 OBJECTIVES

---

After going through this unit, you should be able to:

- define a distributed system, key features and design goals of it;
- explain the design issues involved in the distributed systems;
- describe the models of distributed system structure;
- explain the mutual exclusion in distributed systems, and
- define RPC, its usage and limitations.

---

## 2.2 HISTORY OF DISTRIBUTED COMPUTING

---

Distributed computing began around 1970 with the emergence of two technologies:

- minicomputers, then workstations, and then PCs.
- computer networks (eventually Ethernet and the Internet).

With the minicomputer (e.g., Digital's PDP-11) came the timesharing operating system (e.g., MULTICS, Unix, RSX, RSTS) - many users using the same machine but it looks to the users as if they each have their own machine.

The problem with mini-computers was that they were slower than the mainframes made by IBM, Control Data, Univac, etc. As they became popular they failed to scale to large number of users as the mainframes could. The way to scale mini-computers was to buy more of them. The trend toward cheaper machines made the idea of having many minis as a feasible replacement for a single mainframe and made it possible to contemplate a future computing environment where every user had their own computer on their desk, which is a computer workstation.

Work on the first computer workstation began in 1970 at Xerox Corporation's Palo Alto Research Center (PARC). This computer was called the Alto. Over the next 10 years, the computer system's group at PARC would invent almost everything that's interesting about the computer workstations and personal computers we use today. The Alto introduced ideas like the workstation, bit-mapped displays (before that computer interfaces were strictly character-based) and the mouse.

Other innovations that came from PARC from 1970 to 1980 include Ethernet, the first local-area network, window- and icon-based computing (the inspiration for the Apple Lisa, the progenitor of the Macintosh, which in turn inspired Microsoft Windows and IBM OS/2 came from a visit to PARC), the first distributed fileserver XDFS , the first print server, one of the first distributed services: Grapevine (a messaging and authentication system), object-oriented programming (Smalltalk) and Hoare's condition variables and monitors were invented as part of the Mesa programming language used in the Cedar system.

## 2.2.1 Workstations-Networks

The vision of the PARC research (and the commercial systems that followed) was to replace the timesharing mini-computer with single-user workstations. The genesis of this idea is that it made computers (i.e., workstations and PCs) into a commodity item that like a TV or a car could be produced efficiently and cheaply. The main costs of a computer are the engineering costs of designing it and designing the manufacturing process to build it. If you build more units, you can amortise the engineering costs better and thus make the computers cheaper. This is a very important idea and is the main reason that distribution is an excellent way to build a cheap scalable system.

## 2.2.2 Wide-Scale Distributed Computing and the Internet

Another type of distributed computing that is becoming increasingly important today is the sort of wide-scale distribution possible with the Internet.

At roughly the same time as the workstation and local-area network were being invented, the U.S. Department of Defence was putting tons of U.S. taxpayer money to work to set up a world-wide communication system that could be used to support distributed science and engineering research needed to keep the Defence Dept. supplied with toys. They were greatly concerned that research assets not be centrally located, as doing so would allow one well-placed bomb to put them out

of business. This is an example of another benefit of distributed systems: fault tolerance through replication.

---

## 2.3 DISTRIBUTED SYSTEMS

---

Multiprocessor systems have more than one processing unit sharing memory/peripheral devices. They have greater computing power, and higher reliability. Multiprocessor systems are classified into two:

- **Tightly-coupled:** Each processor is assigned a specific duty but processors work in close association, possibly sharing one memory module.
- **Loosely-coupled (distributed):** Each processor has its own memory and copy of the OS.

A distributed computer system is a loosely coupled collection of autonomous computers connected by a network using system software to produce a single integrated computing environment.

A distributed operating system differs from a network of machines each supporting a network operating system in only one way: The machines supporting a distributed operating system are all running under a single operating system that spans the network. Thus, the print spooler might, at some instant, be running on one machine, while the file system is running on others, while other machines are running other parts of the system, and under some distributed operating systems, these software parts may at times migrate from machine to machine.

With network operating systems, each machine runs an entire operating system. In contrast, with distributed operating systems, the entire system is itself distributed across the network. As a result, distributed operating systems typically make little distinction between remote execution of a command and local execution of that same command. In theory, all commands may be executed anywhere; it is up to the system to execute commands where it is convenient.

---

## 2.4 KEY FEATURES AND ADVANTAGES OF A DISTRIBUTED SYSTEM

---

The following are the key features of a distributed system:

- They are Loosely coupled
  - remote access is many times slower than local access
- Nodes are autonomous
  - workstation resources are managed locally
- Network connections using system software
  - remote access requires explicit message passing between nodes
  - messages are CPU to CPU
  - protocols for reliability, flow control, failure detection, etc., implemented in software

- the *only* way two nodes can communicate is by sending and receiving network messages—this differs from a hardware approach in which hardware signalling can be used for flow control or failure detection.

#### 2.4.1 Advantages of Distributed Systems over Centralised Systems

- Better price/performance than mainframes
- More computing power
  - sum of the computing power of the processors in the distributed system may be greater than any single processor available (parallel processing)
- Some applications are inherently distributed
- Improved reliability because system can survive crash of one processor
- Incremental growth can be achieved by adding one processor at a time
- Shared ownership facilitated.

#### 2.4.2 Advantages of Distributed Systems over Isolated PCs

- Shared utilisation of resources.
- Communication.
- Better performance and flexibility than isolated personal computers.
- Simpler maintenance if compared with individual PC's.

#### 2.4.3 Disadvantages of Distributed Systems

Although we have seen several advantages of distributed systems, there are certain disadvantages also which are listed below:

- Network performance parameters.
- *Latency*: Delay that occurs after a send operation is executed before data starts to arrive at the destination computer.
- *Data Transfer Rate*: Speed at which data can be transferred between two computers once transmission has begun.
- *Total network bandwidth*: Total volume of traffic that can be transferred across the network in a give time.
- Dependency on reliability of the underlying network.
- Higher security risk due to more possible access points for intruders and possible communication with insecure systems.
- Software complexity.

### **2.5 DESIGN GOALS OF DISTRIBUTED SYSTEMS**

In order to design a good distributed system. There are six key design goals. They are:

- Concurrency
- Scalability
- Openness
- Fault Tolerance
- Privacy and Authentication
- Transparency.

Let us discuss them one by one.

### 2.5.1 Concurrency

A server must handle many client requests at the same time. Distributed systems are naturally concurrent; that is, there are multiple workstations running programs independently and at the same time. Concurrency is important because any distributed service that isn't concurrent would become a bottleneck that would serialise the actions of its clients and thus reduce the natural concurrency of the system.

### 2.5.2 Scalability

The goal is to be able to use the same software for different size systems. A distributed software system is scalable if it can handle increased demand on any part of the system (i.e., more clients, bigger networks, faster networks, etc.) without a change to the software. In other words, we would like the engineering impact of increased demand to be proportional to that increase. Distributed systems, however, can be built for a very wide range of scales and it is thus not a good idea to try to build a system that can handle everything. A local-area network file server should be built differently from a Web server that must handle millions of requests a day from throughout the world. The key goal is to understand the target system's expected size and expected growth and to understand how the distributed system will scale as the system grows.

### 2.5.3 Openness

Two types of openness are important: non-proprietary and extensibility.

Public protocols are important because they make it possible for many software manufacturers to build clients and servers that will be able to talk to each other. Proprietary protocols limit the “players” to those from a single company and thus limit the success of the protocol.

A system is extensible if it permits customisations needed to meet unanticipated requirements. Extensibility is important because it aids scalability and allows a system to survive over time as the demands on it and the ways it is used change.

### 2.5.4 Fault Tolerance

It is critically important that a distributed system be able to tolerate “partial failures”. Why is it so important? Two reasons are as follows:

- *Failures are more harmful:* Many clients are affected by the failure of a

distributed service, unlike a non-distributed system in which a failure affects only a single node.

- *Failures are more likely:* A distributed service depends on many components (workstation nodes, network interfaces, networks, switches, routers, etc.) all of which must work. Furthermore, a client will often depend on multiple distributed services (e.g., multiple file systems or databases) in order to function properly. The probability that such a client will experience a failure can be approximated as the sum of the individual failure probabilities of everything that it depends on. Thus, a client that depends on  $N$  components (hardware or software) that each have failure probability  $P$  will fail with probability roughly  $N*P$ . (This approximation is valid for small values of  $P$ . The exact failure probability is  $(1-(1-P)^N)$ .)

There are two aspects of failure tolerance to be studied as shown below:

### Recovery

- A failure shouldn't cause the loss (or corruption) of critical data, or computation.
- After a failure, the system should recover critical data, even data that was being modified when the failure occurred. Data that survives failures is called "persistent" data.
- Very long-running computations must also be made recoverable in order to restart them where they left off instead of from the beginning.
- For example, if a fileserver crashes, the data in the file system it serves should be intact after the server is restarted.

### Availability

- A failure shouldn't interrupt the service provided by a critical server.
- This is a bit harder to achieve than recovery. We often speak of a highly available service as one that is almost always available even if failures occur.
- The main technique for ensuring availability is service replication.
- For example, a fileserver could be made highly available by running two copies of the server on different nodes. If one of the servers fails, the other should be able to step in without service interruption.

## 2.5.5 Privacy and Authentication

Privacy is achieved when the sender of a message can control what other programs (or people) can read the message. The goal is to protect against eavesdropping. For example, if you use your credit card to buy something over the Web, you will probably want to prevent anyone but the target Web server from reading the message that contains your credit card account number. Authentication is the process of ensuring that programs can know who they are talking to. This is important for both clients and servers.

For clients authentication is needed to enable a concept called trust. For example, the fact that you are willing to give your credit card number to a merchant when

you buy something means that you are implicitly trusting that merchant to use your number according to the rules to which you have both agreed (to debit your account for the amount of the purchase and give the number to no one else). To make a Web purchase, you must trust the merchant's Web server just like you would trust the merchant for an in-person purchase. To establish this trust, however, you must ensure that your Web browser is really talking to the merchant's Web server and not to some other program that's just pretending to be their merchant.

For servers authentication is needed to enforce access control. For a server to control who has access to the resources it manages (your files if it is a fileserver, your money if it is a banking server), it must know who it is talking to. A Unix login is a crude example of an authentication used to provide access control. It is a crude example because a remote login sends your username and password in messages for which privacy is not guaranteed. It is thus possible, though usually difficult, for someone to eavesdrop on those messages and thus figure out your username and password.

For a distributed system, the only way to ensure privacy and authentication is by using cryptography.

### 2.5.6 Transparency

The final goal is transparency. We often use the term **single system image** to refer to this goal of making the distributed system look to programs like it is a tightly coupled (i.e., single) system.

This is really what a distributed system software is all about. We want the system software (operating system, runtime library, language, compiler) to deal with all of the complexities of distributed computing so that writing distributed applications is as easy as possible.

Achieving complete transparency is difficult. There are eight types, namely:

- **Access Transparency** enables local and remote resources to be accessed using identical operations
- **Location Transparency** enables resources to be accessed without knowledge of their (physical) location. Access transparency and location transparency are together referred to as network transparency.
- **Concurrency Transparency** enables several processes to operate concurrently using shared resources without interference between them.
- **Replication Transparency** enables multiple instances of resources to be used to increase reliability and performance without knowledge of the replicas by users or application programmers.
- **Failure Transparency** enables the concealment of faults, allowing users and application programs to complete their tasks despite the failure of hardware or software components.
- **Mobility Transparency** allows the movement of resources and clients within a system without affecting the operation of users or programs.

- **Performance Transparency** allows the system to be reconfigured to improve performance as loads change
- **Scaling Transparency** Transparency allows the system and applications to expand in scale without change to the system structure or the application algorithms

---

## 2.6 DESIGN ISSUES INVOLVED IN DISTRIBUTED SYSTEMS

---

There are certain design issues to be considered for distributed systems. They are:

- a) Naming
- b) Communication
- c) Software Structure
- d) Workload Allocation
- e) Consistency Maintenance

Let us discuss the issues briefly:

### 2.6.1 Naming

- A name is a string of characters used to identify and locate a distributed resource.
- An identifier is a special kind of name that is used directly by the computer to access the resource.

For example the identifier for a Unix server would include at least (1) an IP address and (2) a port number. The IP address is used to find the node that runs the server and the port number identifies the server process on that node.

- Resolution is the process of turning a name into an identifier. Resolution is performed by a Name Server. It is also called “binding” (as in binding a name to a distributed service).

For example, an IP domain name (e.g., cs.ubc.ca) is turned into a IP address by the IP Domain Name Server (DNS), a distributed hierarchical server running in the Internet.

### 2.6.2 Communication

- Getting different processes to talk to each other
- Messages
- Remote method invocation.

### 2.6.3 Software Structure

- The main issues are to choose a software structure that supports our goals, particularly the goal of openness.

- We thus want structures that promote extensibility and otherwise make it easy to program the system.
- Alternatives are:
  - A monolithic structure is basically a big pile of code; it is not so desirable because it is hard to extend or reason about a system like that.
  - A modular structure divides the system into models with well-defined interfaces that define how the models interact. Modular systems are more extensible and easier to reason about than monolithic systems.
  - A layered structure is a special type of modular structure in which modules are organised into layers (one on top of the other). The interaction between layers is restricted such that a layer can communicate directly with only the layer immediately above and the layer immediately below it. In this way, each layer defines an abstraction that is used by the layer immediately above it. Clients interact only with the top layer and only the bottom layer deals with the hardware (e.g., network, disk, etc.) Network protocols have traditionally been organised as layers (as we will see in the next class) and for this reason we often refer to these protocols as “protocol stacks”.
  - Operating systems can be either monolithic (e.g., UNIX and Windows) or modular (e.g., Mach and Windows NT). A modular operating system is called a micro kernel. A micro-kernel OS has a small minimalist kernel that includes as little functionality as possible. OS services such as VM, file systems, and networking are added to the system as separate servers and they reside in their own user-mode address spaces outside the kernel.

Let us study more details regarding the software structure in section 2.7 of this unit.

#### 2.6.4 Workload Allocation

- The key issue is load balancing: The allocation of the network workload such that network resources (e.g., CPUs, memory, and disks) are used efficiently.

For CPUs, there are two key approaches. They are:

##### Processor Pools

Put all of the workstations in a closet and give the users cheap resource-poor X terminals. User processes are allocated to the workstations by a distributed operating system that controls all of the workstations. Advantage is that process scheduling is simplified and resource utilisation more efficient because workstations aren't “owned” by anyone. The OS is free to make scheduling decisions based solely on the goal of getting the most work done. Disadvantage is that, these days, powerful workstations aren't much more expensive than cheap X terminals. So if each user has a powerful workstation instead of a cheap X terminal, then we don't need the machines in the closet and we thus have the idle-workstation model described below:

## Idle Workstations

Every user has a workstation on their desk for doing their work. These workstations are powerful and are thus valuable resources. But, really people don't use their workstations all of the time. There's napping, lunches, reading, meetings, etc. - lots of times when workstations are **idle**. In addition, when people are using their workstation, they often don't need all of its power (e.g., reading mail doesn't require a 200-Mhz CPU and 64-Mbytes of RAM). The goal then is to move processes from active workstations to idle workstations to balance the load and thus make better use of network resources. But, people "own" (or at least feel like they own) their workstations. So a key issue for using idle workstations is to avoid impacting workstation users (i.e., we can't slow them down). So what happens when I come back from lunch and find your programs running on my machine? I'll want your processes moved elsewhere NOW. The ability to move an active process from one machine to another is called **process migration**. Process migration is necessary to deal with the user-returning-from-lunch issue and is useful for rebalancing network load as the load characterises a network change over time.

## 2.6.5 Consistency Maintenance

The final issue is consistency. There are four key aspects of consistency: atomicity, coherence, failure consistency, and clock consistency.

### Atomicity

- The goal is to provide the "all-or-nothing" property for sequences of operations.
- Atomicity is important and difficult for distributed systems because operations can be messages to one or more servers. To guarantee atomicity thus requires the coordination of several network nodes.

### Coherence

Coherence is the problem of maintaining the consistency of replicated data.

We have said that replication is a useful technique for (1) increasing availability and (2) improving performance.

When there are multiple copies of an object and one of them is modified, we must ensure that the other copies are updated (or invalidated) so that no one can erroneously read an out-of-date version of the object.

A key issue for providing coherence is to deal with the event-ordering problem.

### Failure Consistency

- We talked last time about the importance of the goal of failure tolerance. To build systems that can handle failures, we need a model that clearly defines what a failure is. There are two key types of failures: *Fail-stop* and *Byzantine*.
- **Fail-stop** is a simplified failure model in which we assume that the only way a component will fail is by stopping. In particular, it will never fail by giving a wrong answer.

- **Byzantine** failure is a more encompassing model that permits failures in which a failed node might not stop but might just start giving the wrong answers. Techniques for dealing with Byzantine failure typically involve performing a computation redundantly (and often in different ways with different software). The system then compares all of the answers generated for a given computation and thus detects when one component starts giving the wrong answer. The ability to detect Byzantine failures is important for many safety-critical systems such as aircraft avionics.
- In this class we will assume failures are Fail-Stop; this is a common assumption for distributed systems and greatly simplifies failure tolerance.

### Clock Consistency

- Maintaining a consistent view of time needed to order network events is critical and challenging. This becomes further difficult when the nodes of the distributed system are geographically apart. Let us study the scheme provided by Lamport on Ordering of events in a distributed environment in the next section.

#### 2.6.6 Lamport's Scheme of Ordering of Events

Lamport proposed a scheme to provide ordering of events in a distributed environment using logical clocks. Because it is impossible to have perfectly synchronized clocks and global time in a distributed system, it is often necessary to use logical clocks instead.

##### Definitions:

**Happened Before Relation ( $\rightarrow$ ):** This relation captures causal dependencies between events, that is, whether or not events have a cause and effect relation. This relation  $\rightarrow$  is defined as follows:

- $a \rightarrow b$ , if  $a$  and  $b$  are in the same process and  $a$  Occurred before  $b$ .
- $a \rightarrow b$ , if  $a$  is the event of sending a message and  $b$  is the receipt of that message by another process.

If  $a \rightarrow b$  and  $b \rightarrow c$ , then  $a \rightarrow c$ , that is, the relation has the property of transitivity.

**Causally Related Events:** If event  $a \rightarrow$  event  $b$ , then  $a$  casually affects  $b$ .

**Concurrent Events:** Two distinct events  $a$  and  $b$  are concurrent ( $a \parallel b$ ) if (not)  $a \rightarrow b$  and (not)  $b \rightarrow a$ . That is, the events have no causal relationship. This is equivalent to  $b \parallel a$ .

For any two events  $a$  and  $b$  in a system, only one of the following is true:  $a \rightarrow b$ ,  $b \rightarrow a$ , or  $a \parallel b$ .

Lamport introduced a system of logical clocks in order to make the  $\rightarrow$  relation possible. It works like this: Each process  $P_i$  in the system has its own clock  $C_i$ .  $C_i$  can be looked at as a function that assigns a number,  $C_i(a)$  to an event  $a$ . This is the timestamp of the event  $a$  in process  $P_i$ . These numbers are not in any way related to physical time — that is why they are called logical clocks. These are generally implemented using counters, which increase each time an event occurs.

Generally, an event's timestamp is the value of the clock at the time it occurs.

**Conditions Satisfied by the Logical Clock system:**

For any events  $a$  and  $b$ , if  $a \rightarrow b$ , then  $C_i(a) < C_j(b)$ . This is true if two conditions are met:

- If  $a$  occurs before  $b$ , then  $C_i(a) < C_j(b)$ .
- If  $a$  is a message sent from  $P_i$  and  $b$  is the receipt of that same message in  $P_j$ , then  $C_i(a) < C_j(b)$ .

**Implementation Rules Required:**

Clock  $C_i$  is incremented for each event:  $C_i := C_i + d$  ( $d > 0$ )

if  $a$  is the event of sending a message from one process to another, then the receiver sets its clock to the max of its current clock and the sender's clock - that is,

$C_j := \max(C_j, t_m + d)$  ( $d > 0$ ).

## 2.7 DISTRIBUTED SYSTEM STRUCTURE

There are three main alternative ways to structure a distributed application. Each of them defines a different **application model** for writing distributed programs.

The three distributed system application models are:

- Client / Server (and RPC)
- Distributed objects
- Distributed shared memory.

Each model requires a different set of “system” software to support applications written in that style. This system software consists of a combination of operating system and runtime-library code and support from languages and compilers. What all of this code does is translate the distributed features of the particular application model into the sending and receiving of network messages. Because, remember that the only way that nodes (workstations/PCs) can communicate in a distributed system is by sending and receiving messages.

### 2.7.1 Application Model 1: Client Server

- A designated node exports a “service”; this node is called the “server”.
- Nodes that import and use the service are called “clients”.
- Clients communicate with servers using a “request-response” protocol.

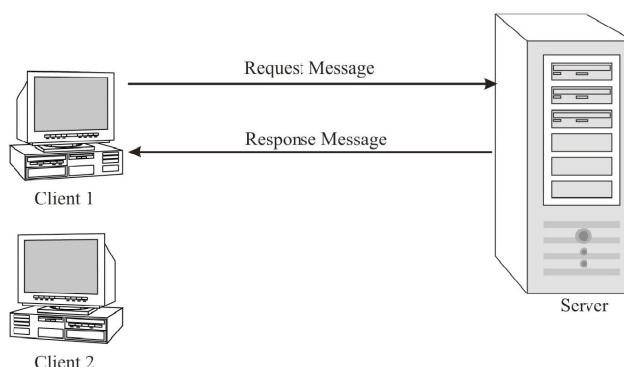


Figure 1: Client Server Model

- Request-response differs from other protocols.
  - Peer-to-peer protocols don't have a designated server.
  - Streaming protocols such as TCP/IP work differently as we will see a couple of classes from now.
- We should really use the terms client and server to refer to the pieces of the software that implement the server and not to the nodes themselves. Why? Because a node can actually be both a client and server. Consider NFS for example. One workstation might export a local filesystem to other nodes (i.e., it is a server for the file system) and import other filesystems exported by remote nodes (i.e., it is a client for these filesystems).
- Application interface can be either send/receive or RPC
  - **Send/receive** : The Unix socket interface is an example. Clients communicate with server by building a message (a sequence of characters) that it then explicitly sends to the server. Clients receive messages by issuing a “receive” call.  
We'll talk about this on Friday.
  - **RPC** : A remote procedure call interface allows a client to request a server operation by making what looks like a procedure call. The system software translates this RPC into a message send to the server and a message receives to wait for the reply. The advantages of RPC over send/receive is that the system hides some of the details of message passing from programs: it's easier to call a procedure than format a message and then explicitly send it and wait for the reply. (Study more on RPC given in section 2.9 of this unit).

### 2.7.2 Application Model 2: Distributed Objects

- Similar to RPC-based client-server.
- Language-level objects (e.g., C++, Java, Smalltalk) are used to encapsulate data and functions of a distributed service.
- Objects can reside in either the memory of a client or a server.
- Clients communicate with servers through objects that they “share” with the server. These shared objects are located in a client's memory and look to the client just like other “local” objects. We call these objects “remote” objects because they represent a remote service (i.e., something at the server). When a client invokes a method of a remote object, the system might do something locally or it might turn the method invocation into an RPC to the server. (Recall that in the object-oriented world, procedures are called methods and procedure calls are called method invocations).
- There are two main advantages of Distributed Objects over RPC: (1) objects hide even more of the details of distribution than RPC (more next week) and (2) objects allow clients and servers to communicate using in two different ways: function shipping (like RPC) and data shipping.

- **function shipping** means that a client calls the server and asks it to perform a function; this is basically like RPC.
- **data shipping** means that the server sends some data to the client (stores it as part of an object) and the client then performs subsequent functions locally instead of having to call the server every time it wants to do something.

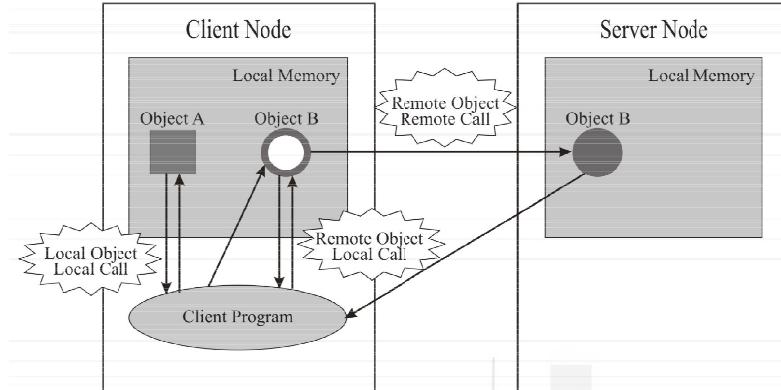


Figure 2: Distributed objects models

- For example, in the picture above, a client program running can access local object A and remote object B (controlled by the server node) in exactly the same way; the arrows show flow of a procedure call into the object and a return from it. The server can design B so that calls are turned into remote calls just like RPC (red) or it can ship some data to the client with the client's copy of the object and thus allow some calls to run locally on the client (orange).
- More on distributed objects later in the course.

### 2.7.3 Application Model 3: Distributed Shared Memory

- Usually used for peer-to-peer communication instead of client-server.
- Clients communicate with each other through shared variables.

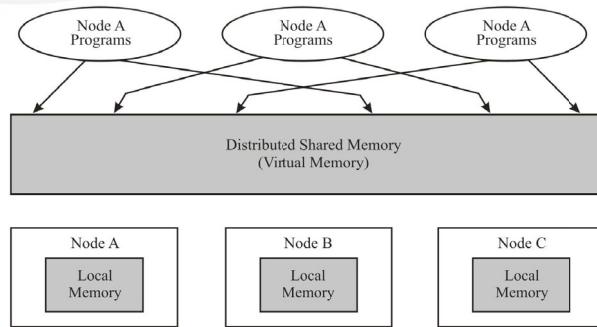


Figure 3: Distributed shared memory model

- The system implements the illusion of shared memory and translates accesses to shared data into the appropriate messages.
- To a program, the distributed system looks just like a shared-memory multiprocessor.

- The advantage is that it is really easy to program: hides all of the details of distribution.
- The disadvantage is that it often hides too much. As far as a program knows, everything in its memory is local. But really, some parts of its memory are stored on or shared with a remote node. Access to this remote data is very SLOW compared with accessing local data. For good performance, a program usually needs to know what data is local and what data is remote.
- Another disadvantage is that it is very complicated to implement a distributed-shared memory system that works correctly and performs well.
- We'll talk more about distributed shared memory towards the end of the term.

---

## 2.8 MUTUAL EXCLUSION IN DISTRIBUTED SYSTEMS

---

When all processes sharing a resource are on the same machine, mutual exclusion is easily assured by the use of a semaphore, spin-lock or other similar shared abstraction. When the processes involved are on different machines, however, mutual exclusion becomes more difficult.

Consider the following example: A number of machines in a network are competing for access to a printer. The printer is so constructed that every line of text sent to the printer must be sent in a separate message, and thus if a process wants to print an entire file, it must obtain exclusive use of the printer, somehow, send all the lines of the file it wishes to print, and then release the printer for use by others on the network.

A trivial solution to this problem is to install a print spooler process somewhere on the net. That print spooler would gather lines of files provided by various applications processes, maintain a queue of completed files that are ready to print, and print one such file at a time. This works, but it introduces some problems: First, the spooler must have buffer capacity to hold the aggregate of all the files that have not yet been printed. Second, the spooler may become a bottleneck, limiting the performance of the entire system, and third, if the processor supporting the spooler is unreliable, the spooler may limit the reliability of the system.

### 2.8.1 Mutual Exclusion Servers

In the printer example being used here, the problem of storage space in the spooler typically becomes acute with graphics printers. In such a context, it is desirable to block an applications process until the printer is ready to accept data from that applications process, and then let that process directly deliver data to the printer.

For example, an applications process may be coded as follows:

*Send request for permission to the spooler*

*Await reply giving permission to print*

*Loop*

```
send data directly to printer
End Loop

Send notice to spooler that printing is done
```

If all users of the spooler use this protocol, the spooler is no longer serving as a spooler, it is merely serving as a mutual exclusion mechanism! In fact, it implements exactly the same semantics as a binary semaphore, but it implements it using a client server model.

The process implementing a semaphore using message passing might have the following basic structure:

```
Loop
  Await message from client
  Case message type of
    P:
      If count > 0
        Send immediate reply
        count = count - 1
      Else
        Enqueue identity of client
      End if
    V:
      If queue is empty,
        count = count + 1
      Else
        Dequeue one blocked client
        Send a delayed reply
      End if
    End case
  End Loop
```

This requires a count and a queue of return addresses for each semaphore. Note that, by presenting this, we have proven that blocking message passing can be used to implement semaphores. Since we already know that semaphores plus shared memory are sufficient to implement blocking message passing, we have proven the equivalence, from a computation theory viewpoint, of these two models of interprocess communication.

The disadvantage of implementing semaphores using a server process is that server becomes a potential source of reliability problems. If we can build a mutual exclusion algorithm that avoids use of a dedicated server, for example, by having the processes that are competing for entry to a critical section negotiate directly with each other, we can potentially eliminate the reliability problem.

## 2.8.2 Token Based Mutual Exclusion

One alternative to the mutual-exclusion server given above is to arrange the competing processes in a ring and let them exchange a token. If a process receives

the token and does not need exclusive use of the resource, it must pass the token on to the next process in the ring. If a process needs exclusive use of the resource, it waits for the token and then holds it until it is done with the resource, at which point it puts the token back in circulation.

This is the exact software analog of a token ring network. In a token ring network, only one process at a time may transmit, and the circulating token is used to assure this, exactly as described. The token ring network protocol was developed for the hardware level or the link-level of the protocol hierarchy. Here, we are proposing building a virtual ring at or above the transport layer and using essentially the same token passing protocol.

This solution is not problem free. What if the token is lost? What if a process in the ring ceases transmission? Nonetheless, it is at the root of a number of interesting and useful distributed mutual exclusion algorithms. The advantage of such distributed algorithms is that they do not rest on a central authority, and thus, they are ideal candidates for use in fault tolerant applications.

An important detail in the token-based mutual exclusion algorithm is that, on receiving a token, a process *must* immediately forward the token if it is not waiting for entry into the critical section. This may be done in a number of ways:

- Each process could periodically check to see if the token has arrived. This requires some kind of non-blocking read service to allow the process to poll the incoming network connection on the token ring. The UNIX FNDELAY flag allows non-blocking read, and the Unix `select()` kernel call allows testing an I/O descriptor to see if a read from that descriptor would block; either of these is sufficient to support this polling implementation of the token passing protocol. The fact that UNIX offers two such mechanisms is good evidence that these are afterthoughts added to Unix after the original implementation was complete.
- The receipt of an incoming token could cause an interrupt. Under UNIX, for example, the SIGIO signal can be attached to a socket or communications line (see the FASYNC flag set by `fcntl`). To await the token, the process could disable the SIGIO signal and do a blocking read on the incoming token socket. To exit the critical section, the process could first enable SIGIO and then send the token. The SIGIO handler would read the incoming token and forward it before returning.
- A thread or process could be dedicated to the job of token management. We'll refer to such a thread or process as the mutual exclusion agent of the application process. Typically, the application would communicate with its agent using shared memory, semaphores, and other uni-processor tools, while the agent speaks to other agents over the net. When the user wants entry to the critical section, it sets a variable to "let me in" and then does a wait on the entry semaphore it shares with the agent. When the user is done, the user sets the shared variable to "done" and then signals the go-on semaphore it shares with the agent. The agent always checks the shared variable when it receives the token, and only forwards it when the variable is equal to "done".

### 2.8.3 Lamport's Bakery Algorithm

One decentralised algorithm in common use, for example, in bakeries, is to issue numbers to each customer. When the customers want to access the scarce resource (the clerk behind the counter), they compare the numbers on their slips and the user with the lowest numbered slip wins.

The problem with this is that there must be some way to distribute numbers, but this has been solved. In bakeries, we use a very small server to distribute numbers, in the form of a roll of tickets where conflicts between two customers are solved by the fact that human hands naturally exclude each other from the critical volume of space that must be occupied to take a ticket. We cannot use this approach for solving the problem on a computer.

Before going on to more interesting implementations for distributing numbers, note that clients of such a protocol may make extensive use of their numbers! For example, if the bakery contains multiple clerks, the clients could use their number to select a clerk (number modulo number of clerks). Similarly, in a FIFO queue implemented with a bounded buffer, the number modulo the queue size could indicate the slot in the buffer to be used, allowing multiple processes to simultaneously place values in the queue.

Lamport's Bakery Algorithm provides a decentralised implementation of the “take a number” idea. As originally formulated, this requires that each competing process share access to an array, but later distributed algorithms have eliminated this shared data structure. Here is the original formulation:

For each process,  $i$ , there are two values,  $C[i]$  and  $N[i]$ , giving the status of process  $i$  and the number it has picked. In more detail:

- $N[i] = 0 \rightarrow$  Process  $i$  is not in the bakery.
- $N[i] > 0 \rightarrow$  Process  $i$  has picked a number and is in the bakery.
- $C[i] = 0 \rightarrow$  Process  $i$  is not trying to pick a number.
- $C[i] = 1 \rightarrow$  Process  $i$  is trying to pick a number.

when

$$N[i] = \min(\text{for all } j, N[j] \text{ where } N[j] > 0)$$

Process  $i$  is allowed into the critical section.

Here is the basic algorithm used to pick a number:

```
C[i] := 1;
N[i] := max(for all j, N[j]) + 1;
C[i] := 0;
```

In effect, the customer walks into the bakery, checks the numbers of all the waiting customers, and then picks a number one larger than the number of any waiting customer.

If two customers each walk in at the same time, they are each likely to pick the same number. Lamport's solution allows this but then makes sure that customers notice that this has happened and break the tie in a sensible way.

To help the customers detect ties, each customer who is currently in the process of picking a number holds his hand up (by setting  $C[i]$  to 1. s/he pulls down his hand when s/he is done selecting a number — note that selecting a number may take time, since it involves inspecting the numbers of everyone else in the waiting room.

A process does the following to wait for the baker:

*Step 1:*

*while (for some  $j$ ,  $C(j) = 1$ ) do nothing;*

First, wait until any process which might have tied with you has finished selecting their numbers. Since we require customers to raise their hands while they pick numbers, each customer waits until all hands are down after picking a number in order to guarantee that all ties will be cleanly recognised in the next step.

*Step 2:*

*repeat*

*$W := (\text{the set of } j \text{ such that } N[j] > 0)$*

*( where  $W$  is the set of indeces of waiting processes )*

*$M := (\text{the set of } j \text{ in } W$*

*such that  $N[j] \leq N[k]$*

*for all  $k$  in  $W$ )*

*( where  $M$  is the set of process indices with minimum numbers )*

*$j := \min(M)$*

*( where  $j$  is in  $M$  and the tie is broken )*

*until  $i = j$ ;*

Second, wait until your ticket number is the minimum of all tickets in the room. There may be others with this minimum number, but in inspecting all the tickets in the room, you found them! If you find a tie, see if your customer ID number is less than the ID numbers of those with whom you've tied, and only then enter the critical section and meet with the baker.

This is inefficient, because you might wait a bit too long while some other process picks a number after the number you picked, but for now, we'll accept this cost.

If you are not the person holding the smallest number, you start checking again. If you hold the smallest number, it is also possible that someone else holds the smallest number. Therefore, what you've got to do is agree with everyone else on how to break ties.

The solution shown above is simple. Instead of computing the value of the smallest number, compute the minimum process ID among the processes that hold the smallest value. In fact, we need not seek the minimum process ID, all we need to do is use any deterministic algorithm that all participants can agree on for breaking the tie. As long as all participants apply the same deterministic algorithms to the same information, they will arrive at the same conclusion.

To return its ticket, and exit the critical section, processes execute the following trivial bit of code:

$N[i] := 0;$

When you return your ticket, if any other processes are waiting, then on their next scan of the set of processes, one of them will find that it is holding the winning ticket.

### Moving to a Distributed Context

In the context of distributed systems, Lamport's bakery algorithm has the useful property that process  $i$  only modifies its own  $N[i]$  and  $C[i]$ , while it must read the entries for all others. In effect, therefore, we can implement this in a context where each process has read-only access to the data of all other processes, and read-write access only to its own data.

A distributed implementation of this algorithm can be produced directly by storing  $N[i]$  and  $C[i]$  locally with process  $i$ , and using message passing when any process wants to examine the values of  $N$  and  $C$  for any process other than itself. In this case, each process must be prepared to act as a server for messages from the others requesting the values of its variables; we have the same options for implementing this service as we had for the token passing approach to mutual exclusion. The service could be offered by an agent process, by an interrupt service routine, or by periodic polling of the appropriate incoming message queues.

Note that we can easily make this into a fault tolerant model by using a fault-tolerant client-server protocol for the requests. If there is no reply to a request for the values of process  $i$  after some interval and a few retries, we can simply assume that process  $i$  has failed.

This demonstrates that fault tolerant mutual exclusion can be done without any central authority! This direct port of Lamport's bakery algorithm is not particularly efficient, though. Each process must read the variables of all other processes a minimum of 3 times—once to select a ticket number, once to see if anyone else is in the process of selecting a number, and once to see if it holds the minimum ticket.

For each process contending for entry to the critical section, there are about  $6N$  messages exchanged, which is clearly not very good. Much better algorithms have been devised, but even this algorithm can be improved by taking advantage of knowledge of the network structure. On an Ethernet or on a tree-structured network, a broadcast can be done in parallel, sending one message to  $N$  recipients in only a few time units. On a tree-structured network, the reply messages can be merged on the way to the root (the originator of the request) so that sorting and searching for the maximum  $N$  or the minimum nonzero  $N$  can be distributed efficiently.

### 2.8.4 Ricart and Agrawala's Mutual Exclusion Algorithm

Another alternative is for anyone wishing to enter a critical section to broadcast their request; as each process agrees that it is OK to enter the section, they reply to the broadcaster saying that it is OK to continue; the broadcaster only continues when all replies are in.

If a process is in a critical section when it receives a request for entry, it defers its reply until it has exited the critical section, and only then does it reply. If a process is not in the critical section, it replies immediately.

This sounds like a remarkably naive algorithm, but with point-to-point communications between  $N$  processes, it takes only  $2(N-1)$  messages for a process to enter the critical section,  $N-1$  messages to broadcast the request and  $N-1$  replies.

There are some subtle issues that make the result far from naive. For example, what happens if two processes each ask at the same time? What should be done with requests received while a process is waiting to enter the critical section?

Ricart and Agrawala's mutual exclusion algorithm solves these problems. In this solution, each process has 3 significant states, and its behaviour in response to messages from others depends on its state:

*Outside the critical section*

*The process replies immediately to every entry request.*

*After requesting entry, awaiting permission to enter.*

*The process replies immediately to higher priority requests and defers all other replies until exit from the critical section.*

*Inside critical section.*

*The process defers all replies until exit from the critical section.*

As with Lamport's bakery algorithm, this algorithm has no central authority. Nonetheless, the interactions between a process requesting entry to a critical section and each other process have a character similar to client-server interactions. That is, the interactions take the form of a request followed (possibly some time later) by a reply.

As such, this algorithm can be made fault tolerant by applying the same kinds of tricks as are applied in other client server applications. On receiving a request, a processor can be required to immediately send out either a reply or a negative acknowledgement. The latter says "I got your request and I can't reply yet!"

With such a requirement, the requesting process can wait for either a reply or a negative acknowledgement from every other process. If it gets neither, it can retry the request to that process. If it retries some limited number of times and still gets no answer, it can assume that the distant process has failed and give up on it.

If a process receives two consecutive requests from the same process because acknowledgements have been lost, it must resend the acknowledgement. If a process waits a long time and doesn't get an acknowledgement, it can send out a message saying "are you still there", to which the distant process would reply "I got your request but I can't reply yet". If it gets no reply, it can retry some number of times and then give up on the server as being gone.

If a process dies in its critical section, the above code solves the problem and lets one of the surviving processes in. If a process dies outside its critical section, this code also works.

### **Breaking Ties in Ricart and Agrawala's algorithm**

There are many ways to break ties between processes that make simultaneous requests; all of these are based on including the priority of each requesting process

in the request message. It is worth noting that the same alternatives apply to Lamport's bakery algorithm!

A unique process ID can be used as the priority, as was done in Lamport's bakery algorithm. This is a static priority assignment and is almost always needed to break ties in any of the more complex cases. Typically, a process will append its statically assigned process ID to any more interesting information it uses for tiebreaking, thus guaranteeing that if two processes happen to generate the same interesting information, the tie will still be broken.

The number of times the process has previously entered the same critical section can be used; if processes that have entered the critical section more frequently are given lower priority, then the system will be fair, giving the highest priority to the least frequent user of the resource.

The time since last access to the critical section offers a similar opportunity to enforce fairness if the process that used the critical section least recently is given the highest priority.

If dynamic priority assignments are used, what matters is that the priority used on any entry to the critical section is frozen prior to broadcasting the request for entry, and that it remains the same until after the process is done with that round of mutual exclusion. It is also important that each process has a unique priority, but this can be assured by appending the process ID as the least significant bits of the dynamically chosen priority.

---

## 2.9 REMOTE PROCEDURE CALLS

---

Remote Procedure Call (RPC) is a powerful technique for constructing distributed, client-server based applications. It is based on extending the notion of conventional or local procedure calling, so that the called procedure need not exist in the same address space as the calling procedure. The two processes may be on the same system, or they may be on different systems with a network connecting them. By using RPC, programmers of distributed applications avoid the details of the interface with the network. The transport independence of RPC isolates the application from the physical and logical elements of the data communications mechanism and allows the application to use a variety of transports.

RPC is a client/server infrastructure that increases the interoperability, portability and flexibility of an application by allowing the application to be distributed over multiple heterogeneous platforms. It reduces the complexity of developing applications that span multiple operating systems and network protocols by insulating the application developer from the details of the various operating system and network interfaces—function calls are the programmer's interface when using RPC. RPC makes the client/server model of computing more powerful and easier to program.

### 2.9.1 How RPC Works?

An RPC is analogous to a function call. Like a function call, when an RPC is made, the calling arguments are passed to the remote procedure and the caller waits for a response to be returned from the remote procedure. The *Figure 4*

shows the flow of activity that takes place during an RPC call between two networked systems. The client makes a procedure call that sends a request to the server and waits. The thread is blocked from processing until either a reply is received, or it times out. When the request arrives, the server calls a dispatch routine that performs the requested service, and sends the reply to the client. After the RPC call is completed, the client program continues. RPC specifically supports network applications.

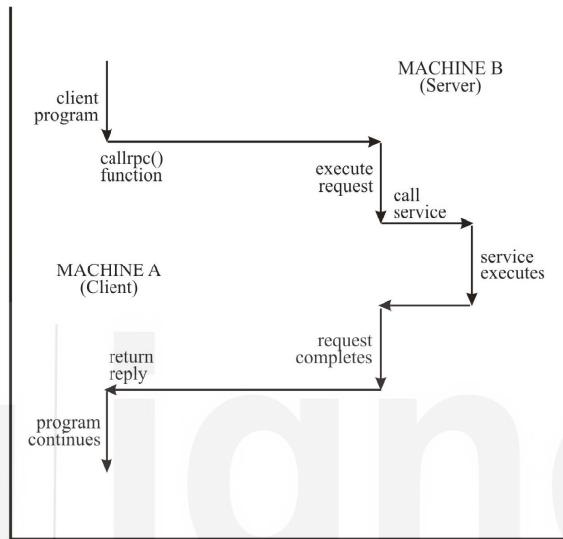


Figure 4: Flow of activity that Tables place during a RPC call between two networked system

### 2.9.2 Remote Procedure Calling Mechanism

A remote procedure is uniquely identified by the triple: (program number, version number, procedure number). The program number identifies a group of related remote procedures, each of which has a unique procedure number. A program may consist of one or more versions. Each version consists of a collection of procedures which are available to be called remotely. Version numbers enable multiple versions of a RPC protocol to be available simultaneously. Each version contains a number of procedures that can be called remotely. Each procedure has a procedure number.

### 2.9.3 Implementation of RPC

RPC is typically implemented in one of two ways:

- 1) Within a broader, more encompassing proprietary product.
- 2) By a programmer using a proprietary tool to create client/server RPC stubs.

### 2.9.4 Considerations for Usage

RPC is appropriate for client/server applications in which the client can issue a request and wait for the server's response before continuing its own processing. Because most RPC implementations do not support peer-to-peer, or asynchronous, client/server interaction, RPC is not well-suited for applications involving distributed objects or object-oriented programming.

Asynchronous and synchronous mechanisms each have strengths and weaknesses that should be considered when designing any specific application. In contrast to asynchronous mechanisms employed by Message-Oriented Middleware, the use of a synchronous request-reply mechanism in RPC requires that the client and server are always available and functioning (i.e., the client or server is not blocked). In order to allow a client/server application to recover from a blocked condition, an implementation of a RPC is required to provide mechanisms such as error messages, request timers, retransmissions, or redirection to an alternate server. The complexity of the application using a RPC is dependent on the sophistication of the specific RPC implementation (i.e., the more sophisticated the recovery mechanisms supported by RPC, the less complex the application utilising the RPC is required to be). RPC's that implement asynchronous mechanisms are very few and are difficult (complex) to implement.

When utilising RPC over a distributed network, the performance (or load) of the network should be considered. One of the strengths of RPC is that the synchronous, blocking mechanism of RPC guards against overloading a network, unlike the asynchronous mechanism of Message Oriented Middleware (MOM). However, when recovery mechanisms, such as retransmissions, are employed by an RPC application, the resulting load on a network may increase, making the application inappropriate for a congested network. Also, because RPC uses static routing tables established at compile-time, the ability to perform load balancing across a network is difficult and should be considered when designing a RPC-based application.

Tools are available for a programmer to use in developing RPC applications over a wide variety of platforms, including Windows (3.1, NT, 95), Macintosh, 26 variants of UNIX, OS/2, NetWare, and VMS. RPC infrastructures are implemented within the Distributed Computing Environment (DCE), and within Open Network Computing (ONC), developed by Sunsoft, Inc.

### 2.9.5 Limitations

RPC implementations are nominally incompatible with other RPC implementations, although some are compatible. Using a single implementation of a RPC in a system will most likely result in a dependence on the RPC vendor for maintenance support and future enhancements. This could have a highly negative impact on a system's flexibility, maintainability, portability, and interoperability.

Because there is no single standard for implementing a RPC, different features may be offered by individual RPC implementations. Features that may affect the design and cost of a RPC-based application include the following:

- support of synchronous and/or asynchronous processing
- support of different networking protocols
- support for different file systems
- whether the RPC mechanism can be obtained individually, or only bundled with a server operating system.

Because of the complexity of the synchronous mechanism of RPC and the

proprietary and unique nature of RPC implementations, training is essential even for the experienced programmer.

## **2.10 OTHER MIDDLEWARE TECHNOLOGIES**

Other middleware technologies that allow the distribution of processing across multiple processors and platforms are:

- Object Request Broker(ORB)
- Distributed Computing Environment (DCE)
- Message-Oriented Middleware (MOM)
- COM/DCOM
- Transaction Processing Monitor Technology
- 3-Tier S/W Architecture.

### **☞ Check Your Progress 1**

1) How is a distributed OS different from Network OS? Explain.

.....  
.....  
.....

2) What is a Distributed File System?

.....  
.....  
.....

3) Define Load Balancing.

.....  
.....  
.....

4) What is the significance of Time Consistency?

.....  
.....  
.....

5) What is a Remote Procedure Call and mention its use.

.....  
.....  
.....

## 2.11 SUMMARY

A distributed operating system takes the abstraction to a higher level, and allows hides from the application where things are. The application can use things on any of many computers just as if it were one big computer. A distributed operating system will also provide for some sort of security across these multiple computers, as well as control the network communication paths between them. A distributed operating system can be created by merging these functions into the traditional operating system, or as another abstraction layer on top of the traditional operating system and network operating system.

Any operating system, including distributed operating systems, provides a number of services. First, they control what application gets to use the CPU and handle switching control between multiple applications. They also manage use of RAM and disk storage. Controlling who has access to which resources of the computer (or computers) is another issue that the operating system handles. In the case of distributed systems, all of these items need to be coordinated for multiple machines. As systems grow larger handling them can be complicated by the fact that not one person controls all of the machines so the security policies on one machine may not be the same as on another.

Some problems can be broken down into very tiny pieces of work that can be done in parallel. Other problems are such that you need the results of step one to do step two and the results of step two to do step three and so on. These problems cannot be broken down into as small of work units. Those things that can be broken down into very small chunks of work are called fine-grained and those that require larger chunks are called coarse-grain. When distributing the work to be done on many CPUs there is a balancing act to be followed. You don't want the chunk of work to be done to be so small that it takes too long to send the work to another CPU because then it is quicker to just have a single CPU do the work, You also don't want the chunk of work to be done to be too big of a chunk because then you can't spread it out over enough machines to make the thing run quickly.

In this unit we have studied the features of the distributed operating system, architecture, algorithms relating to the distributed processing, shared memory concept and remote procedure calls.

## 2.12 SOLUTIONS / ANSWERS

### Check Your Progress 1

- 1) A distributed operating system differs from a network of machines each supporting a network operating system in only one way: The machines supporting a distributed operating system are all running under a single operating system that spans the network. Thus, the print spooler might, at some instant, be running on one machine, while the file system is running on others, while other machines are running other parts of the system, and under some distributed operating systems, these parts may at times migrate from machine to machine.

With network operating systems, each machine runs an entire operating system. In contrast, with distributed operating systems, the entire system is itself distributed across the network. As a result, distributed operating systems typically make little distinction between remote execution of a command and local execution of that same command. In theory, all commands may be executed anywhere; it is up to the system to execute commands where it is convenient.

- 2) Distributed File System (DFS) allows administrators to group shared folders located on different servers and present them to users as a virtual tree of folders known as a namespace. A namespace provides numerous benefits, including increased availability of data, load sharing, and simplified data migration.
- 3) Given a group of identical machines, it is wasteful to have some machines overloaded while others are almost idle. If each machine broadcasts its load average every few minutes, one can arrange for new processes to use whichever machine was least loaded at the time. However, one machine must not be given too many processes at once. If the system supports migration, and the load difference between two machines is great enough, a process should be migrated from one to the other.
- 4) Machines on a local area network have their own clocks. If these are not synchronized, strange things can happen: e.g., the modification date of a file can be in the future. All machines on a LAN should synchronize their clocks periodically, setting their own time to the “network time”. However, adjusting time by sudden jumps also causes problems: it may lead to time going backward on some machines. A better way is to adjust the speed of the clock temporarily. This is done by protocols such as NTP.
- 5) Many distributed systems use Remote Procedure Calls (RPCs) as their main communication mechanism. It is a powerful technique for constructing distributed, client server based applications. It is based on extending the notion of conventional or local procedure calling, so that the called procedure need not exist in the same address space as the calling procedure. The two processes may be on the same system, or they may be on different systems with a network connecting them. By using RPC, programmers of distributed applications avoid the details of the interface with the network. The transport independence of RPC isolates the application from the physical and the logical elements of the data communications mechanism and allows the application to use a variety of transports.

---

## 2.13 FURTHER READINGS

---

- 1) Abraham Silberschatz, Peter Baer Galvin and Greg Gagne, *Applied Operating System Concepts*, 1/e, John Wiley & Sons, Inc, New Delhi.
- 2) Maarten van Steen and Henk Sips, *Computer and Network Organization: An Introduction*, Prentice Hall, New Delhi.
- 3) Andrew S. Tanenbaum and Albert S. Woodhull, *Operating Systems Design and Implementation*, 2/e, Prentice Hall, New Delhi.

- 4) Andrew S. Tanenbaum, *Modern Operating Systems*, 2/e, Prentice Hall, New Delhi.
- 5) Maarten van Steen and Andrew S. Tanenbaum, *Distributed Systems* 1/e, Prentice Hall, New Delhi.
- 6) Andrew S. Tanenbaum, *Distributed Operating Systems*, 1/e, Prentice Hall, 1995), New Delhi.
- 7) Jean Bacon, *Concurrent Systems: An Integrated Approach to Operating Systems, Database, and Distributed Systems*, 2/e, Addison Wesley, New Delhi.
- 8) Jean bacon and Tim Harris, *Operating Systems: Concurrent and distributed software design*, Addison Wesley, 2003, New Delhi.
- 9) Coulouris, Dolimore and Kindberg, *Distributed Systems: Concepts and Design* 3/e, Addison-Wesley, New Delhi.
- 10) D.M. Dhamdhere, *Operating Systems – A Concept Based Approach*, Second Edition, TMGH, 2006, New Delhi.



**ignou**  
THE PEOPLE'S  
UNIVERSITY

---

## **UNIT 3 MOBILE OPERATING SYSTEMS**

---

### **Structure**

- 3.1 Introduction
- 3.2 Objectives
- 3.3 Mobile Devices – An Introduction
  - 3.3.1 Characteristics of Mobile Devices
  - 3.3.2 Data Input Mechanisms for Mobile Devices
  - 3.3.3 Wireless Communication
  - 3.3.4 Mobile Operating System
  - 3.3.5 Types of Processors Used by Mobile Devices
  - 3.3.6 Limitations of Mobile Devices
- 3.4 Mobile Operating System
- 3.5 Evolution of Mobile OS
- 3.6 Need for the Mobile OS
- 3.7 Characteristics of Smartphone OS
- 3.8 Design Issues in Mobile OS
- 3.9 Popular Mobile OS
- 3.10 Summary
- 3.11 Solutions/Answers
- 3.12 Further Readings

---

### **3.1 INTRODUCTION**

---

In the earlier units we have studied about the functions of traditional and desktop operating systems and in this unit we will study about the Mobile devices and Mobile Operating Systems. Earlier mobile communication technologies were dominated by vertically integrated service provision which are highly bounded mainly to voice and short message services that are organized in a monopolistic competition between few mobile virtual network operators, service providers and enhanced service providers.

In the recent years, however, radical change driven by advancements in technology, witnessed the introduction and further development of smart phones where the user can get access to new applications and services by connecting to the device manufacturer's application stores and the like. These smart phones have added many features of a full-fledged computer: high speed processors, large storage space, multitasking, high-resolution screens and cameras, multipurpose communication hardware, and so on. However, these devices market is dominated by a number of different technological platforms, including different operating systems (OS) and application development platforms, resulting in a variety of different competing solutions on the market driven by different actor. This unit is focused on mobile devices, their characteristics and mobile operating systems.

## 3.2 OBJECTIVES

After going through this unit, you should be able to:

- define and identify various mobile devices;
- understand the characteristics of mobile devices along with their constraints;
- define the mobile OS and identify its functionalities, and
- describe various design issues of mobile OS.

## 3.3 MOBILE DEVICES – AN INTRODUCTION

A wide variety of mobile devices are available to address a broad range of applications and users. They range from very inexpensive web-enabled devices to high-end customized tablets, with laptops, a variety of PDAs, and smart phones in between. Along with size differences come variations in the features and performance that these devices provide. No matter which type of mobile application you are looking to deploy, a device is available that will meet your needs. Let us study about some of the mobile devices:

### Smartphones

Smartphones have taken our society by storm. If you don't already have one, you want one. Examples include the iPhone and Android phones, including the Google Pixel phone. Smartphones are advanced versions of traditional cell phones in that they have the same features as cell phones — such as the ability to make and receive phone calls, text messages and voicemail — but they can also be used to browse the internet, send and receive email, participate in social media and shop online. They also can download apps from the internet using a cellular or Wi-Fi connection to expand the smartphone capabilities in a vast number of ways.

### Tablets

Tablets are portable, like laptops, but they provide a different experience. Instead of running a traditional laptop and desktop computer applications, they run apps designed specifically for tablets. The experience is similar, but not the same as using a laptop computer. Tablets come in all sizes, from slightly larger than a smartphone to the size of a small laptop.

Although you can buy a separate keyboard accessory, tablets come with virtual onscreen keyboards for typing and inputting information. They use touch-screen interfaces, and the familiar mouse is replaced with a tap from a finger. There are many tablet manufacturers of tablets, but among the best-reviewed are Google Pixel, Samsung Galaxy Tab, Nexus, and Apple iPad.

### E-Readers

E-Readers are specialized tablets that are designed for reading digital books. Those digital books can be purchased or downloaded free from online sources. Well-known e-reader lines include Barnes & Noble Nook, Amazon Kindle and Kobo, all of which are available in several models. You can also read digital books on tablets that have an ebook app installed. For example, Apple's iPad ships with

iBooks and supports downloadable apps to read Nook, Kindle and Kobo digital books.

### Other Mobile Devices

Some portable music players have access to the internet and can download apps to enhance their value to their owners. Apple's iPod touch is an iPhone without the phone. In all other respects, it offers the same experience. Sony's high-end Walkman is a luxurious audio player with Android streaming apps.

PDAs, the business person's best friend for years, fell out of favor with the introduction of smartphones, but some are being re-imagined with Wi-Fi access and with rugged designs that make them useful to the military and people who work outdoors.

Wearables, like smartwatches and fitness trackers, are among the newest additions to the mobile device landscape. Many are powered by the same mobile operating systems as phones and tablets, and they're capable of running their own apps. Most wearable devices are made to pair with another mobile device, like a smartphone to share data and create an altogether more convenient experience.

#### 3.2.1 Characteristics of Mobile Devices

Mobile devices come in all sizes with a wide range of features. Choosing the correct device involves evaluating a variety of criteria other than just cost. Each of these is described in detail later in this section. Some of the characteristics of the Mobile devices are:

**Limited Processing Power:** The processors used in these devices will be low processing frequency normally in the range of 50MHz to 100MHz.

**Small Screen Size:** These devices will have a very limited screen size due to limited space available on the device.

**Limited Batter Power:** These devices have limited battery power and cannot be increased beyond a limit. Power management is a big challenge for the mobile devices. In case of any power failure, the data safety also needs to be provided.

**Limited Memory:** There are 2 types of memories – ROM and RAM. ROM is for the Mobile Operating System and pre-installed programs and RAM is for users processing of data. Instead of a hard disk, mobile devices use flash memory as non-volatile memory.

There are three major factors those need to be considered – (i) Data input mechanism, (ii) wireless connectivity options and (iii) the mobile operating system that the device is using.

#### 3.2.2 Data Input Mechanisms for Mobile Devices

Along with device size and power, the data input mechanism is one of the most important aspects of selecting a mobile device. This does depend on the application, and the levels of user interaction required, but for most m-business applications where a substantial amount of data is entered into the application, data input options have to be given strong consideration. When it comes to methods of data input, several options are available.

### a. Keypad Input (Earlier Model)

Mobile phones typically implement a 12-digit keypad. This is very intuitive and effective for numerical input but cumbersome and awkward for entering text. This is because each key on a keypad represents three characters. Users have to press a key multiple times to enter a single character. Since mobile phones are primarily designed for voice usage, it is unlikely that the keypad will change anytime soon. That said, there are technologies available that make entering text easier. One of these is called T9, which stands for Text on 9 Keys. This is a predictive text input technology that allows a user to input words by pressing only one button per letter. T9 translates the button press sequences into words. It does not work in all cases, but when it does, it is about twice as fast as using traditional multi-tap systems. America Online, the owner of T9, estimates that it is accurate 95 percent of the time.

Device manufacturers are constantly looking for ways to make keypad text entry more effective. Toggle sticks, rollers, and touch screens will help to alleviate this problem in some areas, but do not expect fast data entry to be a reality on a keypad-driven device anytime soon.

### b. Physical Keyboard Input

Even with the advances being made in other forms of data input, the keyboard remains the most efficient and easy to use. Mobile devices have many ways to take advantage of keyboard data entry. Laptops and handheld PCs come equipped with physical keyboards, while the smaller palm-sized PDAs often support keyboards as a peripheral. These keyboards are usually attached as a clip-on unit or via a cable, but wireless connections are also an option. In addition, most PDAs have PC companion software, allowing the user to enter data such as contact information on the PC. Some handheld devices have taken the step of incorporating a keyboard into the unit itself. This is accomplished with small thumb-based keyboards at the bottom of the unit. Research in Motion (RIM) was the first to incorporate this concept into its BlackBerry devices. With its revolutionary design, RIM has attracted a wide variety of users to its devices, prompting other companies, including Handspring and Sharp, to adopt the thumb-sized keyboard as the means for data input.

### c. Pen-Based Input

One of the breakthroughs for handheld devices was the introduction of touch screens for pen-based input. This allows a user to enter data using a stylus, without requiring any form of physical keyboard or keypad. Several pen-based input mechanisms are available. Deciding which ones to implement will depend on the mobile operating system and device being used. The most common types of pen-based input are:

- **Soft keyboards.** The most approachable method of entering text on mobile devices is by using a soft keyboard, a keyboard displayed on the screen. Users enter data by pressing “keys”, just as they would on a physical keyboard. This method is very easy to learn and use, but it is also takes up screen space and can be limiting in terms of input speed. It is often used as a backup mechanism when other forms of data input are not effective.

- **Character recognition.** Character recognition works by interpreting which letters a user is entering on the screen. There is usually a specific area on the screen for users to construct the characters. The Windows CE operating system from Microsoft provides this capability. Software runs locally on the device to do the interpretation. The letters have to be constructed fairly accurately for them to be understood. This is usually not a problem for small amounts of data, but can be a challenge for users who need to enter data quickly. They often find the characters difficult to write, leading to mistakes.
- **Graffiti.** Palm OS introduced a new form of character recognition based up on simple character-set called Graffiti. The Graffiti characters allow for quicker data input since the letters are easy to input and recognize. There is a learning curve involved, but once Graffiti is mastered, data can be input quickly with few errors.
- **Handwriting recognition.** Some forms of handwriting recognition work by taking screen captures of the inputted text, while others actually interpret written characters. The interpretation solutions take character recognition to a new level. Instead of being able to interpret only a defined set of characters with predetermined strokes, handwriting recognition attempts to interpret a user's personal style of text entry. This requires sophisticated software and powerful hardware to do the analysis. Microsoft is implementing forms of handwriting recognition on its Tablet PC platform.

#### d. Voice Input

Voice input is both effective and easy to use. Simple voice commands, such as initiating a call or looking up a contact, can be executed directly on the mobile device. This works by prerecording voice commands into the device. When a voice command is entered, it is compared to the recorded message and executes the corresponding action. Many mobile phones come equipped with this feature.

### 3.2.3 Wireless Communication

Three basic connection options are available for obtaining wireless communication from a wireless device:

- Two-unit configuration
- Detachable, and
- Integrated

#### (i) Two-Unit Configuration

Two-unit connections require two pieces of equipment to work together, such as a PDA and a cell phone. One unit provides the wireless connectivity for the other unit to use. These devices can communicate with each other in a variety of ways:

- **Cable connection:** This involves having a physical cable connecting the cell phone and mobile device. The phone must have wireless data support as well as an interface cable to the device of choice.

- **Infrared connection:** This involves lining up the Infrared ports on the cell phone and mobile device for communication. A direct line of sight is required for this solution to work. In addition, only selected phones have infrared support available.
- **Bluetooth connection:** Bluetooth may be the best option for two-unit connectivity. It allows a mobile phone to provide connectivity through a personal area network (PAN) up to a range of about 10 meters. A direct line of sight is not required, so it is possible to have the cell phone in a different location from the mobile device. This will become an increasingly popular option as more Bluetooth-enabled devices are released.
- **Near Field Connection:** It is incorporated into many payment cards, ticketing and the like to enable swift and very easy transactions to be made. NFC technology is also used in many other areas where short range secure communications need to be made, and can even be incorporated into mobile phones and other devices. NFC is standards-based technologies used to provide short range wireless connectivity technology that carry secure two-way interactions between electronic devices. Communications are established in a simple way, not requiring set-up by users as in the case of many other wireless communications. As such NFC enables users to perform contactless transactions, access digital content and connect electronic devices by touching devices together. NFC near field communication provides contactless communication up to distances of about 4 or 5 cms.

The advantage of the two-unit configuration is that you can choose each device based on its own functionality, and you do not have to sacrifice features for wireless capabilities. The configuration also provides a great degree of flexibility. If one device becomes outdated or malfunctions, it can be replaced without having to replace the entire system. This is especially appealing when the data device is a laptop or PDA that may not need to be replaced as frequently. In addition, the cell phone can potentially provide the wireless communication for several other devices.

The downside to this configuration is its complexity. Both the cell phone and the mobile device have to be configured properly for this to work. When Bluetooth is not available, the cable or Infrared connections can become cumbersome.

This setup is recommended only where occasional wireless connectivity is required. When frequent access is necessary, it is worthwhile to investigate some of the other options available.

## (ii) Detachable Configuration

A detachable configuration involves using a plug-in module or clip-on attachment to a mobile device to provide wireless connectivity. These additional modules can provide connectivity to a variety of wireless networks with little configuration. For the plug-in modules, either CompactFlash or PCMCIA cards can be used. This obviously requires a device that has a slot for this type of peripheral. For devices that do not have integrated CompactFlash or PCMCIA slots, external jackets are often available. These jackets (often called sleds) provide the support for CompactFlash or PCMCIA cards.

The benefit of using these interfaces is that multiple wireless modems are available, providing connectivity to several wireless networks including WLANs, WANs, and PANs. You can then switch interface cards as you move into different wireless environments. Cards are also available that support connecting to multiple network protocols in one unit.

In some cases, the only available option is a clip-on modem. This is similar to the external jacket, except that the modem is incorporated directly to the unit. These modules are often purchased in conjunction with a wireless service plan since they only provide access to a single wireless protocol, most commonly a wireless WAN.

The majority of the PDAs available now use a detachable configuration for wireless connectivity. It allows users to select the PDA and wireless component separately, but at the same time have them integrate well together. The disadvantage is that the wireless modem uses the open expansion slot so other peripherals cannot be used at the same time.

### (iii) Integrated Configuration

An emerging trend is to enclose wireless connectivity within the mobile device. This has always been the case for voice-oriented devices such as cell phones and smart phones, but is a new concept for many handheld devices. This configuration has many advantages, as it alleviates complexity and provides tight integration between the mobile OS and wireless modem. Applications for these devices can be designed to take advantage of the wireless modem, knowing that it is always going to be present. Troubleshooting is also simplified, since there is only one manufacturer involved in the solution.

On the downside, some flexibility is lost. The user is now limited to the wireless net-work type that has been integrated into the device. In addition, it may become more difficult for developers to calculate the amount of power an application requires, as they will have a hard time differentiating between the power that the application requires and that of the wireless modem.

## 3.2.4 Mobile Operating System

A mobile operating system (mobile OS) is a system software that allows smartphones and other handheld / mobile devices to run applications as well as manage the device's precious resources like processing power, battery and memory.

A mobile OS typically starts up when a device powers on, presenting a screen with icons or tiles with information and through which applications can be accessed. Apart from user applications, mobile operating systems also manage network connectivity.

Android, Apple iOS and Blackberry OS and Widows Mobile OS are some of the famous mobile operating systems which provides the combined features of personal computer operating systems and the features including touch screen, cellular, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, GPS navigation system, camera, speech recognition, voice recorder, music player etc.

More details regarding Mobile OS are given in section 3.3 and onwards.

### 3.2.5 Types of Processors Used by Mobile Devices

#### Mobile Operating Systems

Let us study on the processors those are used the mobile devices. In the recent days most of our devices are come with the Octa-core or Quad-core processors. In the processors the main element is the core that reads and executes instructions. Devices began with a single-core processor, but processor companies have created more powerful devices by including more cores in one device that led to dual-core devices. Soon there were quad-core processors (as in four cores), and now there are hexa- (six) and octa-core (eight) smartphones and tablets.

#### Benefits of Multiple Cores

The more cores, faster they can divide the work you're requesting the phone to do. So the benefits of a multi-core are it enhances your device performance and your apps loads quickly on your device. You can easily capture high-quality photos and videos then browse your collection without pausing the system.

#### Some Popular Processors for Mobile Devices

- i. **Qualcomm Snapdragon** : It is a US based company, Qualcomm was the first brand that introduce CDMA technology in the market and actively involved in technology related to semiconductors designing for Mobile devices, tracking devices, satellite phones, Virtual Reality, wireless charging etc. It is widely known for its Snapdragon brand which is responsible for releasing mobile processors and LTE modems. It first claim to fame in processor market when it released the first 1 Ghz processor that time average speed of most smartphones was only 512 Mhz. The processor comes under 4 series (220, 400, 600 and 800). Qualcomm Snapdragon processors are known for its performance. The processor handles multitasking very well and can handle heavy and intensive processing which is especially good for gaming. The presence of inbuilt Adreno graphics matches the performance of processor. Snapdragon processors also produce less heat compared to other processors. Generally Snapdragon processors are costlier than other processors. Qualcomm also make processors are also used for wearable platforms, automotive platforms, embedded platforms, vision intelligence platforms and extended reality platforms.
- ii. **Apple Mobile Processors:** Apple does not manufacture any microprocessors. Instead, they make contracts with processor manufacturing companies mainly Samsung and TSMC for making custom built processors that suits their design and performance expectations. The processor comes under
  - a. A- Series: The A series is a family of “System on Chips” (SoC) used in iPhones, iPad, iPod touch & Apple TV. They are designed by Apple and manufactured by Samsung & TSMC. They integrate CPU, GPU, Cache memory and other electronics necessary to provide mobile computing functions within a single physical package.
  - b. S- Series: The S series is a family of “System in Package” (SiP) used in Apple watch. They are designed by Apple and manufactured by Samsung.
  - c. T- Series: The T-Series is designed to use in TouchID sensors in MacBook Pro. The only version released till now is Apple T1.

- d. W-Series: Apple W series is used in headphones for wireless audio connectivity. The series is currently in Apple W1 which is used in wireless headphones and AirPods.
  - e. H-Series: The Apple H1 chip was first used in the 2019 version of AirPods, and was later used in the Powerbeats Pro, the Beats Solo Pro and the AirPods Pro. Specifically designed for headphones (“H” in a model number stands for *headphones*), it has Bluetooth 5.0, supports hands-free “Hey Siri” commands, and offers 30 percent lower latency than the W1 chip used in earlier AirPods.
  - f. M-Series: The M1 chip, Apple’s first processor designed for use in Macs, is manufactured using TSMC’s 5 nm process. It was announced on November 10, 2020, and is used in the M1 MacBook Air, Mac mini, and MacBook Pro (2020).
- iii. **Intel Atom and Core M Processors:** Intel is an American multinational company synonymous with PC and microprocessors. Atom is the brand name given for the low power consuming and low cost 32 and 64 bit chips manufactured for using in smartphones and tablet devices. Intel processors are based on X86 architecture which is powerful than ARM, but consume more power compared to ARM architecture. Intel Atom processors are currently in Atom X5 and X7 series. These chips are 64 bit Quad core processors in 14 nanometer size with speeds up to 1.6 GHz that can be scaled up to 2.4 Ghz. Intel also released Intel Core M microprocessors which are ultra low-voltage designed for ultra-thin notebooks, mobile devices and 2 in 1 convertibles. The processor consumes less 4.5 watts or less power making it ideal for long battery life. These are dual core processors with speeds around 1.5Ghz which can be scaled to 3.2 GHz speeds. Intel Core M processors offer 40% boost in CPU and graphics performance than previous versions.
- iv. **Nvidia Tegra Processors:** Nvidia Corporation is an American based company technology company which specializes in making processing units for graphics, gaming units and mobile devices. Nvidia develops chips for smartphones, tablets and mobile devices under the brand Tegra. Tegra processors are built on 64 bit ARM architecture. Tegra till now have gone through Tegra 1, 3, 4, 4i, K1, X1 series. The process is Quad Core with 256 GPU cores capable of 4K video capabilities. The chips are built on 20 nm technology. The processor is currently used in Nvidia SHIELD Android TV. Tegra processors used in Andorid TVs, smartphone and tablets.
- v. **Samsung Exynos:** Exynos is a brand of Samsung Electronics which makes processors based on ARM architecture. Exynos processors are manufactured in the series of **ARMv7** and **ARMv8** SoCs. Exynos 8 Octa 8895 is the latest from Exynos. The processor is equipped with Octa-Core on 64-bit ARM architecture with Mali GPU. The processor is capable of running at 2.3 GHz speed with support for 3D gaming, 4K UHD resolution support. The chips are 10 nm technologies. The processor is used in Galaxy S8 and S8+ phones.

### 3.2.6 Limitations of Mobile Devices

There are some general limitations for mobile computing devices which are given below:

- **Insufficient bandwidth:** Mobile Internet access is generally slower than direct cable connections, using technologies such as GPRS and EDGE, and more recently HSDPA and HSUPA 3G/4G networks. These networks are usually available within range of commercial cell phone towers. Higher speed wireless LANs are inexpensive but have very limited range.
- **Security standards:** When working on mobile, one is dependent on public networks, requiring careful use of VPN. Security is a major concern while concerning the mobile computing standards on the fleet. One can easily attack the VPN through a huge number of networks interconnected through the line.
- **Power consumption:** When a power outlet or portable generator is not available, mobile computers must rely entirely on battery power. Combined with the compact size of many mobile devices, this often means unusually expensive batteries must be used to obtain the necessary battery life.
- **Transmission interferences:** Weather, terrain, and the range from the nearest signal point can all interfere with signal reception. Reception in tunnels, some buildings, and rural areas is often poor.
- **Potential health hazards:** Cell phones may interfere with sensitive medical devices. Questions concerning mobile phone radiation and health have been raised.
- **Human interface with device:** Screens and keyboards tend to be small, which may make them hard to use. Alternate input methods such as speech or handwriting recognition require training.

### **3.3 MOBILE OPERATING SYSTEM**

A mobile operating system (Mobile OS) is a software platform on top of which other programs called application programs, can run on mobile devices such as personal digital assistant (PDA), tablets, cellular phones, smart phone etc.. Over the years, Mobile OS design has experienced a three-phase evolution: from the PC-based operating system to an embedded operating system to the current smart phone-oriented operating system in the past decade. The mobile OS is designed keeping in view the physical and other limitations of the mobile devices. Depending the capabilities of the Mobile devices and the way they support, mobile OS may also differ with the devices. Mobile operating System concept becomes popular in the decade of 1990s. In 1994 IBM introduced first Smartphone called IBM Simson. It was designed with a file system from Datalight ROM-DOS. In 2000, the first modern mobile OS was introduced by Symbian. In 2007, Apple introduced the popular iOS with a lot of internet related capabilities. In 2008, Google introduced a popular Android mobile OS. Later 2010, various Mobile OS start competing for each other to bring most user friendly features.

Many mobile devices are available in the current market. These devices are running with a mobile OS. Few of devices manufatures are using their own operating systems but few others are using the available Mobiles OS from the market with or without modifications. Below are the list operating systems using in the major mobile devices.

Throughout the process, Mobile OS architecture has gone from complex to simple to something in-between. The evolution process is naturally driven by the technology advancements in hardware, software, and the Internet:

- i. *Hardware*: The industry has been reducing the factor size of microprocessors and peripherals to design actual mobile devices. Before the form factor size was reduced enough, the mobile device could not achieve both small size and processing capability at the same time. We had either a PC-sized laptop computer or a much weaker personal data assistant (PDA) in phone size. Mobile operating systems for PDAs usually did not have full multitasking or 3D graphics support. Features like sensors, such as accelerometers, and capacitor-based touch screens were not available in the past mobile operating systems.
- ii. *Software*: With a laptop computer, the software is mainly focused on the user's productivity, where support for keyboard and mouse that have precise inputs are essential. The software for a personal data assistant, as its name implies, helps the user to manage personal data such as contacts information, e-mail, and so on. The mobile operating systems were not designed for good responsiveness or smoothness with a rich user interface (UI) including both touch screen and other sensors.
- iii. *Internet*: Along with Internet development, especially after Web 2.0, there is abundant information in the network waiting to be searched, organized, mined, and brought to users. People are increasingly living with the Internet instead of just browsing the Web. More and more people are involved in the development, including information contribution, application development, and social interactions. The mobile operating systems cannot be self-contained, but have to be open systems.

The aforementioned technological advancements have resulted in a variety of different competing mobile operating system solutions on the market driven by different companies. Some of these includes Google's Android, Apple's iOS, Nokia's Symbian, RIM's BlackBerry OS, Samsung's Bada, Microsoft's Windows Phone, Hewlett-Packard's webOS, and embedded Linux distributions such as Maemo and MeeGo.

### **3.4 EVOLUTION OF MOBILE OS**

The ever growing, innovating, and awesome world of smartphones has a history as everything else. Back from the days of Palm OS to Android Honeycomb where more than half a dozen Smartphone Operating Systems are available in the global market.

Presenting below in the Table 1 is a timeline view of how the evolution has taken place from 1996 – 2021:

**Table 1: Evolution of Mobile OS**

Name of the Mobile O/S	Year of launch	New Features
Palm OS 1.0	1996	RIM applications Address, Datebook, Memo pad, To-do list

Palm OS 2.0	1997	Mail and Expense are added
Palm OS 3.0	1998	HotSync Support, Web Clipping Support, native 8-bit color support
Pocket PC 2000	2000	
Pocket PC 2002	2001	MSN Messenger, Media Player 8 Enhanced UI
Palm OS 4.0	2001	External File Systems, 16-bit color screens
Palm OS 5.0	2002	PACE Emulator, Bluetooth Emulator
Windows Mobile 2003	2003	Bluetooth Integration, Pocket Internet Explorer, Windows Media Player 9.0
Windows Mobile 2003 SE	2004	SE Portrait and Landscape switching for Pocket PCs and WPA
Palm OS Cobalt	2004	Telecommunication, Wi-Fi and Bluetooth Connectivity
Windows Mobile 5	2005	Windows Media Player 10 Mobile, Global Positioning System (GPS) Management Interface, Introduction to Office Mobile
Blackberry OS 4.1	2005	
iPhone OS 1.0	2007	Core iOS UI, Web Clips on Home Screen, Multitouch Gestures, Mobile Safari, Visual Voicemail, Maps, iTunes Sync, iTunes Wi-Fi Music Store, Multitouch Keyboard
Windows Mobile 6	2007	.NET Compact Framework v2 SP2 Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Compact Edition Windows Live
Blackberry OS 4.2	2007 folders	Voice Notes Option, Email and SMS in separate
iPhone OS 2.0	2008 contacts	Third Party Application support, Sync Google
Blackberry OS 4.5	2008	HTML emails, faster performance and improved multi-tasking, Microsoft Office Documents ToGO
Windows Mobile 6.1	2008	Threaded SMS full page, zooming in Internet Explorer and Domain Enroll
Android 1.0 Alpha	2008	Google Apps like Gmail, Maps, Calendar and Youtube
Symbian OS	2008	Desktop Interactive Widgets, FaceBook IM chat
Android 1.1 Base	2009	Support for saving attachments from MMS, Marque in layouts, API changes
Blackberry OS 5	2009	Wireless Sync, Blackberry Enterprise Server 5, almost revamped web browser

Windows 6.5	2009	Internet Explorer Mobile 6 and Multi touch support
Samsung Bada 1.0	2009	
iPhone OS 3.0	2009	Push Notifications, cut, copy and paste, Turn-by-Turn Navigation, Voice memos
HP Web OS	2009	Synergy app, multi-touch gestures and multi-tasking
Android 1.5 (Cup cake)	2009	Bluetooth A2DP and AVRCP support, Uploading videos to YouTube and pictures to Picasa
Android 1.6 (Donut)	2009	WVGA screen resolution support Google free turn-by turn navigation
Android 2.0/2.1 (Éclair)	2009	HTML5 support, Microsoft Exchange Server, Bluetooth 2.1
iPhone iOS 4.0	2010	Multitasking, Folders
Blackberry OS 6	2010	New media interface, stronger social media integration, Multiple Contact Lists, track pad support for swipe gestures
Windows Phone 7	2010	Tiled UI, Loud-based services support, Multitasking
Android 2.2 (Froyo)	2010	USB tethering and Wi-Fi hotspot functionality, Adobe Flash 10.1 support
Android 2.3 (GingerBread)	2010	Multi-touch software keyboard, Support for extra large screen sizes and resolutions
Symbian^2 OS	2010	Royalty-free version
Symbian^3 OS	2010	Native Webkit browser, 2D and 3D graphics architecture, UI improvements and support for external displays through HDMI
Android 3.0 (HoneyComb)	2011	Optimized tablet support, with a new UI, 3D desktop, Video chat with Gtalk support
iOS 5	2011	Siri, Notification center, PC-Free, iTunes Wi-Fi Sync, iMessage, iCloud
Android 4.0 (Sandwich)	2012	It combined many of the options of the tablet-only Honeycomb version with the smartphone-oriented Gingerbread.
Android 4.1 (jelly Bean)	2012	Some of the new additions in these software updates included new notification features that displayed more content or action buttons, along with full support for the Android version of Google's Chrome web browser, which was included in Android 4.2.

iOS 6	2012	iCloud tabs, Siri enhancements, mail enhancements, FaceTime over Cellular, Facebook integration, Passbook, Homegrown Maps and Turn-by-Turn navigation
Windows Phone 8	2012	Replaced Windows CE-based architecture
iOS 7	2013	Visual overhaul, control center, AirDrop, iTunes Radios, FaceTime Audio, Refreshed Core Apps
Android 4.4 KitKat	2013	It was optimized to run on smartphones that had as little as 512 MB of RAM.
Windows Phone 8.1	2014	Notification center, support for Internet Explorer 11 web browser, tab syncing among Windows 8.1 devices, separate volume controls and the option to skin and add a third column of live tiles to the Start Screen.
iOS 8	2014	Continuity, QuickType, Widgets, iCloud Drive, Extensibility, Healthkit, Homekit, Family Sharing
Android 5.0 Lollipop	2014	It was the first version of the OS that used Google's new Material Design language. It made liberal use of lighting and shadow effects, among other things, to simulate a paper-like look for the Android user interface.
Windows 10 mobile	2015	Mobile OS for smartphones and tablets running on ARM architecture. Its primary focus is unification with Windows 10, its PC counterpart.
iOS 9	2015	Night Shift, Lower Power Mode, Public Beta Program
Android 6.0 Marshmallow	2015	It included features such as a new vertically scrolling app drawer, along with Google Now on Tap, native support for fingerprint biometric unlocking, USB Type-C support, the introduction of Android Pay (now Google Pay), and much more.
Android 7.0 Nougat	2016	Nougat's many new features included better multi-tasking functions for the growing number of smartphones with bigger displays, such as split-screen mode, along with quick switching between Apps. Google made a number of big changes behind the scenes too. It switched to a new JIT compiler to speed up apps, supported the Vulkan API for faster 3D rendering, and enabled OEMs to support its now-defunct Daydream VR platform
iOS 10	2016	iMessage Apps, Delete built-in Apps

Android 8.0 Oreo	2017	As far as features go, Android Oreo packed in lots of visual changes to the Settings menu, along with native support for picture-in-picture mode, notification channels, new autofill APIs for better management of passwords and fill data, and much more. Android Oreo first came installed on Googles' own Pixel 2 phones.
iOS 11	2017	Augmented Reality, Major Enhancements on iPad, AirPlay 2
Android 9.0 Pie	2018	Android 9.0 Pie also included some new features designed to help extend your smartphone's battery life. That was achieved with the use of on-device machine learning which predicts which apps you will use now, and which apps you won't use until later. Pie also has Shush, a feature that automatically puts your phone in Do Not Disturb mode when you flip your phone screen down on a flat surface.
iOS 12	2018	Grouped Notifications, ARKit 2, Siri Improvements, Screen Time, Memoji
Android 10	2019	Android Q is officially known just as Android 10. The features included support for the rush of then-upcoming foldable phones. Android 10 also introduced a system-wide dark mode, along with new gesture-navigation controls, a more efficient sharing menu, smart reply features for all messaging apps, and more control over app-based permissions.
iOS 13	2019	System-wide Dark Mode, New Improved Siri Voice, Overhauled Stock Apps like Reminders and Notes, New Privacy and Security Options, New Portrait Lighting Option, Sign In with Apple User Account System
Android 11	2020	That includes a new Conversations notification category where all of your chats from various apps are collected in one place. You also have the option to save every notification that has appeared on your phone in the past 24 hours. A brand new feature lets you record your phone's screen, complete with audio, without needing a third-party app. There's also a new section of Android 11 dedicated to controlling smart home devices.

In the following section let us study the need for the mobile OS.

### 3.5 NEED FOR THE MOBILE OS

The Mobile OS powers mobile devices like mobile phones, Smartphones, PDAs, and Tablet PCs (a wireless PC equipped with a touch screen and a digital pen). It

manages the mobile device hardware, memory, and software resources. It controls the functioning, and the capabilities of a mobile device. The feature set, security, reliability, and the ease of use are not the only criteria that make a mobile platform good or bad, but also the flexibility of the mobile platform to integrate with diverse set of devices and software systems.

A mobile operating system controls everything from handling the input obtained from touch screen, keyboard, or some external device to controlling the memory and the overall functioning of the device. It also manages the communication and the interplay between the mobile device and other compatible hardware such as, computers, televisions, or printers.

Operating system manages and controls all the features and functionalities of the mobile device. Therefore, a Smartphone is a combination of the hardware and the operating system, which determines what capabilities it can or cannot support.

As the operating system manages the hardware and software resources of Smartphones, it is responsible for determining the functions and features available on the device. Smartphone is a combination of mobile technology that is the mobile phone and PDA, which are based on the computer applications

All Smartphones are embedded with an operating system which enables the operation of software applications. In addition to the principle features like phone calls and messaging, you can send e-mails, manage your personal and office documents, and visit websites for searching information, play online games, and read news. It also allows sharing and downloading of documents and applications.

If a Smartphone is to allow multiple applications to run simultaneously, it must have an operating system that facilitates the sharing of processing and memory resources among multiple applications. Additionally, the operating system must allow users to switch between the active applications.

### **3.6 CHARACTERISTICS OF SMARTPHONE OS**

Even though the functionality of an operating system used in computers and Smartphones are same, certain characteristics of a Smartphone operating system are different from the ones used in computers. The characteristics that a Smartphone operating system should comprise are as follows:

(i) ***Resource-limited hardware:*** Smartphones should be able to support various applications. It should also provide facility to access Internet. But to meet these requirements, Smartphones have limited memory and processing power when compared to the desktop PCs and Laptops. Thus, the operating system must be careful in using hardware resources especially memory. It should not only utilize less memory but also consist of architecture that provides support for applications to limit their use of memory. It should also have the capability to handle low-memory situations gracefully.

(ii) ***Robustness:*** A user expects a mobile operating system to be robust. This means it should be strong and unlikely to fail or crash. The device must not only be designed to avoid crash, but must also provide support functions and policies. These support functions and policies allow the device to handle

application errors and out-of-memory situations, without hampering the functionalities of the Smartphone.

- (iii) **User interface for limited user hardware:** The operating system should implement a user interface environment that is efficient and intuitive to use, despite the smaller screen and limited user input capabilities of the Smartphone. Furthermore, the screen sizes and input capabilities vary between different models of Smartphones, so the User Interface architecture should be flexible, such that it can be customized for the various user interface objects.
- (iv) **Library support:** Smartphone operating systems should contain middleware libraries and frameworks with APIs that implement and abstract the functionality of the features of the Smartphone. The purpose is to provide functional consistency and to ease the software development. Middleware library and framework is a software layer that acts as a mediatory between the application and the system's operating system. The middleware framework consists of a set of components that connects the application with the underlying OS. Examples of Smartphone middleware include libraries and frameworks for email, SMS, MMS, Bluetooth, cryptography, multimedia, User Interface features, and GSM or GPRS, which provide more support for Smartphone features.

---

## 3.7 DESIGN ISSUES IN MOBILE OS

---

Since, the mobile devices are different as compared to conventional desktop systems; the OS for them would differ. Keeping in view of the constraints of mobile devices, the design issues of Mobile OS will vary when compared with the conventional desktop versions. Let us discuss some of the design issues for a mobile OS:

### Power Management

In the power management system power management, device power management and processor power management need to be considered.

### Battery Management

Mobile OS collects the information about the state of the batteries of the device and inform the user. In case of abnormal consumption or battery discharge due to some application/game, OS must perform an emergency shutdown keeping the data loss at minimum level.

### Thermal Management

As the mobile devices operate with the batteries, heat dissipation is also a challenge. It is one of the functions' of the Mobile OS to manage and reduce the power consumption of the devices.

### Memory Management

Mobile OS should consume less space in RAM. Instead it should have a small piece of code existing in the RAM. However, to avoid RAM space there should be a provision that the kernel, applications and libraries should be directly executed in ROM. The microkernel structure of mobile OS also may help in reducing the

memory size. Also memory leakages need to be taken care by the Mobile OS. Efficient memory management techniques need to be adopted while designing the mobile OS.

### Scheduling

The mobile OS may adopt the pre-emptive scheduling mechanism. The interrupt latency and dispatch latency must be minimized in mobile OS.

### File System

Flash file systems are used in mobile devices. They offer a fast-read access. The file system should adopt the memory management techniques that minimize the fragmentation problem, caching techniques and intelligent reclaim techniques.

### Security

One of the major issues to be considered is Security. Unlike desktops, these mobile devices also may get infected with worms, Trojan horses or viruses wherein compromising the user's security and privacy. As all the mobile devices are prone to attacks any time, it is therefore the major function of the mobile OS to provide security mechanisms to address all the security issues.

In Block-4 along with case studies, the handling of various functions by the individual Mobile OS is discussed.

---

## 3.8 POPULAR MOBILE OS

---

Some of the popular mobile operating systems are:

- Android
- iOS
- Symbian
- Windows Mobile
- Linux

### Android

Android is an operating system for mobile devices that is developed by Google. Android operating systems are based on the Linux kernel and the GNU software. Android has a large community of developers writing applications that has helped to extend the functionality of the devices. The developers write managed code in Java, controlling the device via Google-developed Java libraries. Android is a mobile operating system that has an open-source framework and is based on Linux which helps us to develop advanced and user-friendly applications. It follows a Monolithic kernel approach

Now, we will start with Android Architecture, it comprises of five levels, which are the Linux kernel, Libraries, Application framework, Android runtime, and System applications.

The Android operating systems offer a virtual machine that is optimized for the mobile devices. It provides a structured data storage by the use of SQLite. It

facilitates with technologies such as, Bluetooth, 3G and WiFi that are hardware dependent. It enables reuse and replacements of components through an application framework. For example Sony Ericsson XPERIA X10 is developed using Android operating system.

A virtual machine can be referred to an environment or a program that does not physically exists but is created inside another environment.

You can study in detail on Android in Block-4 where Case Studies are discussed.

### iOS

iOS is an operating machine based on the UNIX environment constructed for Apple's iPhone, iPod touch and iPad of different cell devices. The iOS architecture is layered. It follows a hybrid kernel approach. It contains an intermediate layer between the applications and the hardware so they do not communicate directly. The lower layers in iOS provide the basic services and the higher layers provide the user interface and sophisticated graphics. iOS is also used to manage the hardware of a gadget and for supplying applied sciences required to enhance each and every application and internet applications also. iOS used to be first introduced and launched as the operating system gadget of the iPhone introduce on the twenty-ninth of June, in the year 2007. The iOS has also consisted of apps like phone, messaging, core services of CF network, security services as keychain and certificate and trust services and core os.

You can study in detail on iOS in Block-4 where Case Studies are discussed.

### Symbian

Symbian operating system is the most popular operating system used in most Smartphones and mobile phones today. The heritage of Symbian OS begins with some of the first handheld devices. This operating system began its existence in 1988 as SIBO (an acronym for '16-bit organizer'). SIBO ran on computers developed by Psion Computers, which developed operating system to run on small footprint devices. It was designed with specific criteria that can be characterized by event-driven communications, using client-server relationships and stack-based configurations. Symbian OS model follows layered approach and contains UI frame work layer, Application services layer, Base service layer and kernel services and hardware interface layer. Symbian OS has a micro kernel architecture that provides robustness, availability and responsive.

Client-server describes the relation between two computer programs. The client program sends a service request to the server program. The server program fulfils the request. The Symbian operating system is developed using C++ programming language.

The Symbian operating system is a mobile operating system that was specially built to run on a Smartphone platform. It fits in the memory of a mobile phone because of its compatibility. It is considered as a full-fledged operating system.

Symbian operating system supports multitasking and multithreading. Many processes can run concurrently, they can communicate with each other and utilize multiple threads that run internal to each process. It facilitates good support for

graphics and data management. This operating system has a file system that is compatible with Microsoft Windows operating system. It even supports other file system implementations through a plug-in interface. It uses TCP/IP networking as well as several other communication interfaces, such as serial, infrared and Bluetooth. For example, Nokia's bestseller Smartphone 6600 was developed using the Symbian operating system.

### **Windows Mobile**

Windows Mobile is an operating system used in various mobile phones and Smartphones. It encompasses the entire software stack from the kernel to the application interface. This operating system is compatible with the Microsoft Office suite of programs. The current version is called "Windows Mobile 6.5". It is based on the Windows CE 5.2 kernel. Additionally, third-party software development is available for Windows Mobile, and the software can be purchased via the Windows Marketplace for Mobile. Originally appearing as the Pocket PC 2000 operating system, most Windows Mobile devices come with a stylus pen, which is used to enter commands by tapping it on the screen.

Windows CE is a modular operating system that serves as the foundation for several classes of devices. Windows Mobile is best described as a subset of platforms based on a Windows CE. Currently, Pocket PC (now called Windows Mobile Classic), Smartphone (Windows Mobile Standard), and PocketPC Phone Edition (Windows Mobile Professional) are the three main platforms under the Windows Mobile umbrella. Windows Mobile is a Microsoft-defined custom platform for general use in Smartphones and PDAs. It consists of a Microsoft-defined set of minimum profiles (Professional Edition, Premium Edition) of software and hardware that is supported. It provides feature rich OS and interface for cellular phone handsets. It offers productivity features to business users, such as email, as well as multimedia capabilities for consumers.

### **Linux**

Linux is unique among the other operating systems. This is because its development is driven by a community of developers rather than by a single company such as Symbian operating system in Nokia phones and blackberry OS in blackberry phones. According to ARCCchart, the Linux operating system supports more processors than other operating system, though the most popular phone models still use the Symbian operating system. However, Linux is an open source operating system, where in, the developers constantly change and update it even at the kernel level platforms.

Smartphones based on the open source Linux operating system have emerged in the market. There are many advantages to using an open-source operating system like Linux. No cost and the opportunity to tap into the Linux open source community are appealing. This has made Linux grow, not only for the server and PC market space, but also in the embedded device area including handheld computers. For example, Motorola that is a notable supporter of Linux has released the A760 Smartphone based on this operating system.

The comparison of Symbian, iOS and Android are given below in Table 2.

**Table 2: Comparative Chart of Symbian, iOS and Android**

PARAMETERS	SYMBIAN	iOS	ANDROID
<b>OS family</b>	RTOS	Darwin	Linux
<b>Vendor</b>	Symbian Ltd. And Symbian foundation	Apple	OpenHandset Alliance, Google
<b>Architecture</b>	OS with applications, UI frame works and kernel on ARM Processor	This OS has kernel which interact with Driver run time, Kernel, UI	Divided into components (App Layer, libraries, runtime and Linux Kernel)
<b>User Interface</b>	User friendly	It has to load application and view it	UI is highly configurable
<b>Developed in (Programming language)</b>	C,C++,ME, Python, Ruby, Flash Lite	C, C++, Objective-C, Swift	C, C++, Java
<b>App Store</b>	Nokia Ovi Store	App Store	Google Play
<b>License</b>	Proprietary	Proprietary	Open source
<b>Battery Demand</b>	Less	Less	Highest
<b>Security</b>	Hard to crack	Hard to crack	Softest to crack
<b>Voice Assistant</b>	Vlingo 3.2	Siri	Google now
<b>Sideloadng</b>	Available	Done by installing Xcode7	Available
<b>Environment</b>	QT, Carbide, Vistamax, Eclipse	XCode(Apple), Appcode	Eclipse(Google)
<b>Processor used</b>	ARM, x86	ARM 64,ARM.	ARM, x86, MIPS
<b>Memory Utilization</b>	Memory Management Unit and cache all resides on a System on Chip	Automatic reference counting. No garbage collection	Paging, Memory Map, No Swapping
<b>Power Management</b>	When power goes below threshold then switches to low resolution display and refresh it	Not optimized power management compared to other OS	Power Management is not optimal

- 1) Explore Sailfish OS.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

- 2) Mention the features of (a) HarmonyOS (b) KaiOS

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

---

### 3.9 SUMMARY

---

In this unit, mobile devices and mobile operating systems were discussed.

Mobile devices are the devices that are easily transported and typically are handheld and powered by a battery. They would have unique challenges in their design to enable usability, ruggedness, and reliability. Characterized by relatively lightweight and small screen size, they span a wide range of device types and applications, including mobile phones and tablets. Mobile devices also include custom devices designed for specific use cases, such as military, medical, or industrial applications where particular peripherals, security, certification, or regulatory requirements must be fulfilled.

Users of mobile devices require a number of characteristics: portability, ease of use, advanced and diverse capabilities, and durability. The application may require the integration of specific sensors, connectors, communications ports, and more, compliance with a number of industry or government mandated standards, and perhaps long term availability. A successfully designed mobile device is a simultaneous solution of a broad array of competing requirements along with engineering and business constraints.

Mobile operating systems are a relatively new development in the computing world for the mobile devices. Mostly they are based on some existing older OS, typically written for stationary computers and laptops. For example, Android is based on the Linux kernel, iOS on the Mac OS X kernel, and Windows Phone on the Windows NT kernel. The mobile OS borrows many features from the desktop world; however, it needs to meet the demands of the mobile environment for communication needs, positioning of the device, power challenges caused by mobile operation with rechargeable batteries, and smaller size for the convenience and comfort of users. The OS is responsible for overseeing and managing the hardware and software components on the smartphone and it is responsible for the system-level power management.

In the following units apart from the case studies pertaining to desktops, ANDROID and iOS mobile OS will be discussed.

---

## 3.10 SOLUTIONS/ANSWERS

---

### Check Your Progress 1

- 1) **Sailfsh OS** is the logical evolution of MeeGo, an operating system developed by Nokia, based on Linux and in order to attack the market of smart phones and tablets. When Meego was dropped, some of their workers left to form Nokia Jolla, one covered by the Finnish company, which has renamed the system as Sailfsh OS. The operating system has its own programming language (Qt / QML), although accepted through their respective sdks developing apps in HTML5 (Cordoba Qt) and Java (Android apps).

The architecture is similar to what we have seen in most mobile operating systems: Linux kernel, a layer of components (based on Mer), with the interface middleware and applications. Sailfish is a modern and secure operating system combining the Linux Kernel for a particular platform use. It is a general purpose linux based operating system.

It is built on the heritage of MeeGo. Sailfish is developed by Jolla in permanent cooperation with the Sailfish community. The Sailfish community makes development requests and decides development priorities by voting. The Mer project receives contribution from Jolla community and Mer contributes middleware for jolla thereby assuring compatibility of both projects. It's like a classic Linux distribution with the great addition of the Jolla crafted Sailfish UI. There's no buttons on Sailfish devices, everything is handled with simple gestures, supported by an appealing design style. It is really a very interesting platform for both users and developer. Sailfish used in theJolla smart phone and other licensees. Sailfish OS can run Android applications through a proprietary compatibility layer.

- 2) (a) **HarmonyOS**

Huawei unrevealed HarmonyOS 2.0 in 2020. Huawei has planned to relase it as an open-source platform worldwide. It will open up and share its core capabilities in areas like connectivity, cameras and AI. It will work closely with ecosystem partners to deliver apps and services that provide consumers good experience.

*HarmonyOS is completely different from Android and iOS. It is a microkernel-based, distributed OS that delivers a smooth experience across all scenarios. It has a trustworthy and secure architecture, and it supports seamless collaboration across devices. Following are some of the features of HarmonyOS:*

- *Seamless experience*
- *Smooth performance*
- *More Secure*
- *All-in-one*

## (b) KaiOS

**KaiOS** is a web-based mobile operating system that enables a new category of smart feature phones. It is forked from B2G (Boot to Gecko), a successor of the discontinued Firefox OS. KaiOS brings support of 4G/LTE, GPS, and Wi-Fi, as well as HTML5-based apps and longer battery life, to non-touch devices. It has an optimized user interface for smart feature phones, needs little memory, and consumes less energy than other operating systems. It also comes with the KaiStore, which enables users to download applications in categories like social media, games, navigation, and streaming entertainment.

KaiOS apps are based on web technologies like HTML, CSS and Javascript and are run by Gecko runtime. If you have written a web page you already know the basics.

Rendering is done by parsing HTML/CSS and painted using graphic APIs. JavaScript are executed by the JS engine SpiderMonkey and connected to C++ components by XPCConnect and WebIDL bindings. Applications and the core process communicate only through IPC protocols defined by IPDL.

Additionally a set of core components including file and memory management, threads and data structures etc. are provided through the XPCOM component object model.

KaiOS Product is decoupled into 2 components: Core and App Profile

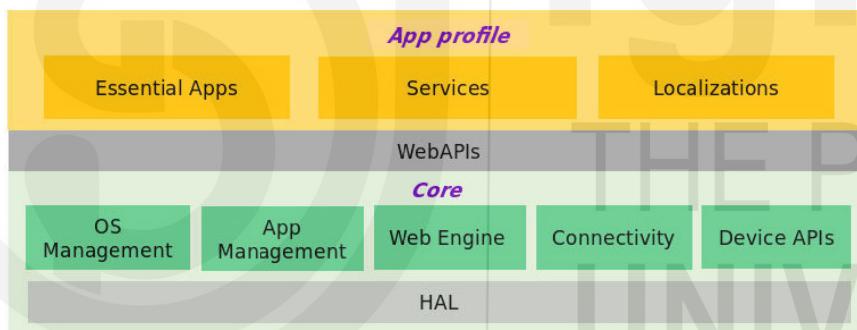


Fig 1: KaiOS Architecture

**Core:** The underlying platform that consists of the Web application runtime, i.e. Gecko, plus the hardware adaptation layer and a few other supporting module

**App Profile:** A collection of built-in web apps, which represents the user interfacing functions of KaiOS for a given device form factor.

---

## 3.11 FURTHER READINGS

---

- 1) Milan Milenkovic, *Operating Systems, Concepts and Design*, TMGH, 2000.
- 2) D.M. Dhamdhere, *Operating Systems, A concept-based approach*, TMGH, 2002.
- 3) Andrew S Tanenbaum, Herbert Bos, *Modern Operating Systems*, 4<sup>th</sup> Edition, Pearson , 2015.
- 4) Naresh Chauhan, *Principles of Operating Systems*, Oxford Press, 2014.

Indira Gandhi  
National Open University  
School of Computer and  
Information Sciences

**Block****4****CASE STUDIES****UNIT 1**

---

<b>Case Study 1 – Windows 10</b>	<b>5</b>
----------------------------------	----------

---

**UNIT 2**

<b>Case Study 2 – LINUX</b>	<b>21</b>
-----------------------------	-----------

---

**UNIT 3**

<b>Case Study 3 – Android</b>	<b>45</b>
-------------------------------	-----------

---

**UNIT 4**

<b>Case Study 4 – iOS</b>	<b>63</b>
---------------------------	-----------

---

---

## PROGRAMME/COURSEDESIGN COMMITTEE

---

Prof (Retd) S. K. Gupta,  
IIT Delhi

Prof. T.V. Vijaya Kumar, Dean,  
SC&SS, JNU,  
New Delhi

Prof. Ela Kumar, Dean, CSE, IGDTUW,  
Delhi

Prof. Gayatri Dhingra,  
GVMITM,  
Sonipat, Haryana

Sh. Milind Mahajani Vice President,  
Impressico Business Solutions  
Noida, UP

Prof. V. V. Subrahmanyam, Director  
SOCIS, New Delhi

Prof. P. V. Suresh,  
SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi

Dr. Shashi Bhushan  
SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi

Shri Akshay Kumar, Associate Prof.  
SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi

Shri M. P. Mishra, Associate Prof.  
SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi

Dr. Sudhansh Sharma, Asst. Prof  
SOCIS, IGNOU, New Delhi

---

## BLOCK PREPARATION TEAM

---

Prof. D.P. Vidyarthi (*Content Editor*)  
Jawaharlal Nehru University  
New Delhi

Prof. K. Swathi (*Course Writer- Units 2 & 3*)  
NRIIT, Vijayawada (Rural), AP

Miss Jyoti Bisht (*Course Writer – Units 1 & 4*)  
Research Scholar, SOCIS, IGNOU,  
New Delhi

Prof. V.V. Subrahmanyam  
SOCIS, IGNOU

Prof. Parmod Kumar (*Language Editor*)  
School of Humanities  
IGNOU

---

**Course Coordinator:** Prof. V. V. Subrahmanyam

---

## PRINT PRODUCTION

---

**Mr. Tilak Raj**  
Asst. Registrar (Pub.)  
MPDD, IGNOU, New Delhi

**Mr. Yashpal**  
Section Officer (Pub.)  
MPDD, IGNOU, New Delhi

March, 2021

© Indira Gandhi National Open University, 2021

All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced in any form, by mimeograph or any other means, without permission in writing from the Indira Gandhi National Open University.

Further information on the Indira Gandhi National Open University courses may be obtained from the University's office at Maidan Garhi, New Delhi-110068.

Printed and published on behalf of the Indira Gandhi National Open University, New Delhi by the MPDD, IGNOU, New Delhi

Laser Typesetting : Akashdeep Printers, 20-Ansari Road, Daryaganj, New Delhi-110002

Printed at :

---

## BLOCK INTRODUCTION

---

This block introduces you to the Case Studies on Windows 10, Linux, Android and iOS.

The block is organized into 4 units.

**Unit 1** covers the Windows 10

**Unit 2** covers the LINUX

**Unit 3** covers one of the most popular mobile operating system; the Android

**Unit 4** covers another most popular mobile operating system; the iOS.





---

# **UNIT 1 CASE STUDY - WINDOWS 10**

---

## **Structure**

- 1.0 Introduction
- 1.1 Objectives
- 1.2 Features of Windows 10
- 1.3 Evolution of Windows 10
- 1.4 Windows 10 Editions
- 1.5 Windows OS Components
- 1.6 Process Management in Windows 10
  - 1.6.1 Processes and Threads
  - 1.6.2 Scheduling
  - 1.6.3 Interprocess Communication
- 1.7 Memory Management in Windows 10
  - 1.7.1 Memory Representation
  - 1.7.2 Physical Memory Organization
  - 1.7.3 Virtual Memory Organization
  - 1.7.4 Demand Paging
  - 1.7.5 Memory Compression
- 1.8 File System Management in Windows 10
  - 1.8.1 Directory Management
  - 1.8.2 Disk Management
  - 1.8.3 File Management
  - 1.8.4 File Compression
- 1.9 Summary
- 1.10 Solutions/Answers
- 1.11 Further Readings

---

## **1.0 INTRODUCTION**

---

An operating system is set of programs that act as an interface between user and hardware. It is a type of system software that provides various low level functionalities like process management, memory management, I/O management, file management, scheduling. Examples of popular operating system are Windows, Linux, Unix, Android, iOS, Mac.

Operating system is used to perform two major activities-

- Interfacing user with hardware
- Management of Resources

Windows 10 is one of the most popular and latest operating system of Microsoft. It is introduced with the concept of “Universal apps”, which provides apps designed to work for multiple platforms like personal computers, smartphones, Xbox One consoles, laptops and other compatible devices. It is designed for various platforms.

Windows is widely used operating system for desktop users. The various reasons for its popularity among users are-

- Easy to use interface
- High availability of compatible software
- Provides support for new hardware
- Provides Plug and Play feature

Although it is popular among desktop users, it has several disadvantages over other operating systems.

- It is proprietary
- It is closed source
- It is susceptible to virus hence not secure
- Lacks good technical support
- Resource requirements are high

In this unit, we will study about the features, evolution, process management, memory management and file management in Windows 10 Operating System.

---

## **1.1 OBJECTIVES**

---

After going through this unit, you should be able to:

- Know about the features of Windows 10
- Understand various editions of Windows 10 operating system
- List various components of Windows
- Describe about Process and memory management in Windows 10
- Describe how files and disk are managed
- Know about the compression used in Windows 10

---

## **1.2 FEATURES OF WINDOWS 10**

---

Windows 10 have all the traditional features of other windows version with a wide variety of new features added to it. Features of Windows 10 are:

**1.2.1** Multi user – it can be accessed by multiple users simultaneously.

**1.2.2** Multi tasking – can perform multiple tasks at the same time.

**1.2.3** Resource sharing – files, folders, drivers etc can be shared.

**1.2.4** Different versions are available for different types of devices.

**1.2.5** Universal apps – designed to run on multiple compatible Microsoft products.

**1.2.6** Cortana – a voice controlled digital assistant included in desktop

- Xbox app – can capture and share Xbox games
- Microsoft web browser
- Continuum tablet mode – for touch sensitive devices
- Task view – a desktop management feature
- Windows Hello Face, Hello fingerprint, Hello PIN, security key, picture password sign-in options available.
- Dynamic lock – locks your PC when paired device goes out of range.
- DirectX 12 – used for handling multimedia tasks.
- New builds are available to users at no additional cost.

### **1.3 EVOLUTION OF WINDOWS 10**

---

It's been over 35 years, since Windows 1.0 was released, and now Microsoft released Windows 10.

It all started in November 1985 when the first version of Windows, **Windows 1.0** was made available. It required two floppy disks and 192KB of RAM to install and was essentially a front-end for MS-DOS, creating a graphical environment for the platform and capable of summoning certain functions.

**Windows 2.0**(in the year 1987) built on its predecessor by adding more sophisticated keyboard shortcuts, overlapping windows and support for VGA graphics and introducing features that have become staples of the Windows experience. These include the control panel, the terms *minimise* and *maximise* and support for the first Windows versions of Word and Excel. Windows 2.0 was also the last version not to need a hard disk to install.Six months later, **Windows 2.1** was released to take advantage of new Intel processors, while a further update in 1989 made minor changes to memory management, printing and drivers.

The third major release of **Windows 3.0** (in the year 1990) was arguably the first successful one, with a revamped UI, better memory management, 256 colour VGA mode and enhanced multimedia options such as support for sound cards and CD-ROMS. Notably, Windows 3.0 also separated files and applications into a list-based manager for the former and an icon-based manager for the latter.

At this point, although Microsoft didn't plan for it, the Windows line divided into the NT and 9x families. The business-focused NT 3.1, the first in the line, was built from scratch as a 32-bit operating system made to have the same aesthetics as the 16-bit Windows 3.1. It was released in July 1993 in workstation and server editions, and received an incremental update in the form of **Windows NT 3.5**. **Windows NT 4.0** (right) followed three years later, boasting a similar interface to Windows 95, although NT 4.0 was considered much more stable than its consumer counterpart.

**Windows 95**(in the year 1995) was originally meant to be based on NT architecture but Microsoft abandoned these plans amid fears an NT-based consumer operating system wouldn't run on low-end hardware and would take too long to develop, opening up a gap in the market that could be seized by others. This need to reach the shelves quickly resulted in the Windows 9x family, the first entry of which was Windows 95. 7

Backed by a huge marketing campaign, Windows 95 came with a significantly enhanced user interface which introduced the start button and taskbar. It also added simpler plug and play features and although the kernel itself was 32-bit, much of the code remained 16-bit because it was recycled from 3.1.

**Windows 98** (in the year 1998) a follow-up was released three years later and was considered to be more stable than Windows 95, with easier support for plug and play devices, larger disk partitions, more robust USB functionality, networking improvements and new system tools.

**Windows ME** was intended as a stopgap release between 98 and XP and it showed. It became notorious for instability and unreliability, but at least it introduced the ‘system restore’ feature to give users a fighting chance of getting any work done. Many of the new features had already been made available to Windows 95 and 98 users through updates and many enterprise functions were absent as Microsoft attempted to make a clear distinction between the consumer-facing ME and business-focused Windows 2000.

Later on **WINDOWS XP** was released in the year 2001, **Windows Vista** in 2007, **Windows 7** in 2009 and **Windows 8** in 2012. **Windows 10** is an operating system of Windows NT family developed by Microsoft Corporation. It was released in 2015 as a successor to Windows 8.

---

## 1.4 WINDOWS 10 EDITIONS

---

For various devices, windows 10 have total 12 editions with different set of features. Some are available only through volume licensing. Some of the major editions are-

### **Windows 10 Home**

It is designed for PC, tablets, 2 in 1 PCs. It includes features like- Universal Windows app, Cortana assistance, Continuum tablet mode, Xbox, Microsoft edge browser, biometric sign-in.

### **Windows 10 Pro**

It has all the features present in Windows 10 Home along with additional features like –Remote desktop, Bit Locker encryption, Hyper-V, group Policy, support for active directory, windows update for business.

### **Windows 10 Enterprise**

It provides all the features of Windows 10 Pro along with advanced security and management needs like- Resilient file system, windows defender credential guard, application guard and advanced threat protection.

### **Windows 10 Education**

It provides features similar to Windows Enterprise but provides tools explicitly for academic purpose.

### **Windows 10 Mobile**

It is designed for smart phones, tablets, touch screen devices but later Microsoft discontinued this due to customer dissatisfactions.

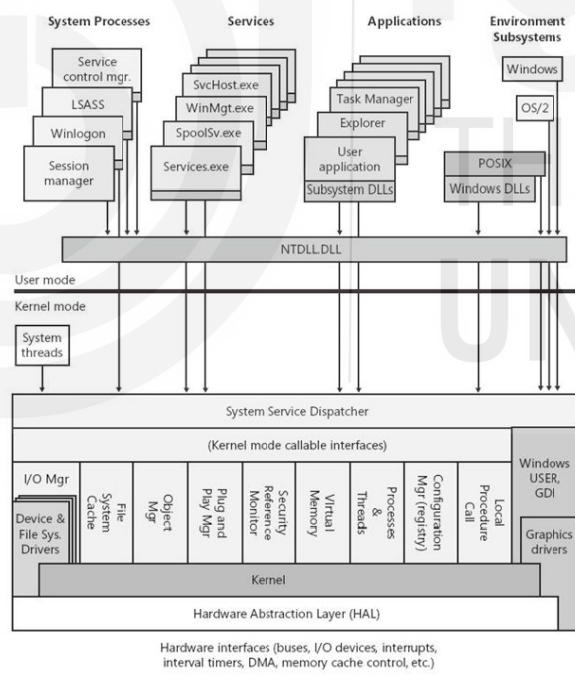
This edition is specially designed for IoT (internet of Things) devices. It provides security, manageability to IoT devices along with windows ecosystem and connectivity with cloud.

## 1.5 WINDOWS OS COMPONENTS

Windows operating system has two modes for its operation – kernel mode and User mode. User applications run in user mode and system operations runs in kernel mode. Applications that run in kernel mode shares single virtual address space while a different private virtual address space is allocated to each application in user mode.

When an application is started in user mode, a process is created by windows and a private virtual address space is allocated. Since the address space is private, applications cannot access or modify data belonging to other applications. Similarly they also cannot access virtual address reserved for operating system. Also if due to some reason an application crashes, operating system and other application will not be affected.

On the other hand, single virtual address space is shared by processes running in kernel mode. It means that processes are not isolated by each other. Drivers are usually run in kernel mode. Internal components of windows operating system is shown in figure 1.



**Fig 1: Windows Components (Source: [docs.microsoft.com](http://docs.microsoft.com))**

### Universal Windows Platform Apps

Universal Windows Platform (UWP) is introduced in Windows 10. It is common platform that can be used for different types of devices that runs windows 10. In this same core API is used for all devices. The apps are written in C++/WinRT or C++/CX and can access Win32 API which is implemented by all window 10 devices. For user interface DirectX, XAML or HTML is used. If apps need to be designed



Fig 2: Windows 10 Universal Apps Platform (Source: [docs.microsoft.com](https://docs.microsoft.com))

## 1.6 PROCESS MANAGEMENT IN WINDOWS 10

### 1.6.1 Processes and Threads

A program in execution is called a **process**. A process contains information like unique process identifiers, virtual address space, priority, environment variables, working set size, executable code and security context. Initially process starts execution with a single thread, known as primary thread but later additional threads can be created by *primary thread*. Every thread maintains information like unique thread identifier, priority, local storage, data structure to save thread context and security context. Thread context contains user stack, kernel stack, and set of registers. All threads of a single process shares system resources and virtual address space.

In windows multiple threads belonging to different processes can be executed simultaneously and creates the effect of simultaneous execution for single processor system. Hence it is called multitasking. Also windows follows preemptive approach of scheduling hence time slice is allocated to each thread. After the time slice elapses, switching is done to another thread and system saves the context of preempted thread. Context of new thread is loaded for execution.

### 1.6.2 Scheduling

Scheduling decides the order in which threads will be executed. Scheduling of threads is done by giving priorities in range between 0 to 31, where 0 represents minimum and 31 represents maximum priority. Threads with same priority are treated as equal. Time slices is assigned to thread in round-robin fashion to high priority threads. Factors to determine priority of thread are:

1. Priority class of process – process can belong to any of the class - IDLE\_PRIORITY\_CLASS, BELOW\_NORMAL\_PRIORITY\_CLASS, NORMAL\_PRIORITY\_CLASS, ABOVE\_NORMAL\_PRIORITY\_CLASS, HIGH\_PRIORITY\_CLASS, REALTIME\_PRIORITY\_CLASS
2. Priority level of thread – priority levels of thread within a process can be any one of the following- THREAD\_PRIORITY\_IDLE, THREAD\_PRIORITY\_LOWEST, THREAD\_PRIORITY\_BELOW\_NORMAL, THREAD\_PRIORITY\_NORMAL, THREAD\_PRIORITY\_ABOVE\_NORMAL, THREAD\_PRIORITY\_HIGHEST

Priority of a thread is formed by combining these two priorities- priority class of process and priority level of thread. This is called **base priority** of thread.

### **Priority Boosts**

When threads of higher priority gets execute every time, the system can suffer from the problem of starvation. To solve this problem Windows uses the concept of dynamic priorities. Initially priority of each thread is initialized with base priority. The system can later change the priority of threads so that no thread gets starved. The threads having base priority between 0 to 15 can receive priority boosts. Each time when a thread completes a time slice, its priority is reduced by one level by the scheduler until thread gets its base priority back. Once the base priority is reached, the priority is not changed further.

### **User mode scheduling**

Applications can also schedule their own threads using user mode scheduling mechanism. In this application can switch from user mode and gain control of processor without involving system scheduler. It is used for applications that require high performance to execute threads concurrently. This service is available only for 64-bit versions. Here the scheduler component must be implemented by the application

### **1.6.3 Interprocess Communication**

Interprocess communication is the mechanism which facilitates communication and sharing of data among processes or applications. Here applications requesting for a service can be called client and the application serving the request can be called server. Also applications can act as both client and server. The various IPC mechanisms available in windows are:

#### i. **Clipboard**

It is a loosely coupled medium for sharing of data. All the application needs to agree on common data format. Whenever a cut or copy operation is performed on data, it is put on clipboard which can then be used by other applications.

#### ii. **COM**

Software that uses component object model (COM) can access and communicate with variety of components. It allows one application to be embedded or linked with other components. Applications that use OLE make use of this.

#### iii. **Data Copy**

This allows sending of information from one application to another using windows messaging. The receiver must be able to identify the sender and the format of information.

#### iv. **DDE**

Dynamic data exchange is a protocol that allows variety of data formats to be exchanged. It is extension of clipboard. Unlike clipboard it continues to function without need of further interaction after one time data exchange.

#### v. **File Mapping**

In this, file is treated as block of memory that can be shared by processes. Processes that want to share this file gets a pointer to its memory location

through which they can access or even modify file contents. Processes must provide a synchronization mechanism to prevent corruption of data.

#### **vi. Mailslots**

Mailslots are used to send messages (one way) over network. Process that creates mailslot is called mail slot server. The client writes or appends the message in mailslot and sends it to mail slot server. For two way communication multiple mailslots can be created. They can also be used to broadcast message across computers in network domain.

#### **vii. Pipes**

Two types of pipes can be used – anonymous or named.

- Anonymous pipes are generally used for transfer of data between related processes like parent child. Read write pipes should be created by each of the processes to share data.
- Named pipes are used between processes on different systems or to transfer among unrelated processes. Server creates pipes and communicates it to clients. Data can be exchanged once both get connected to pipe.

#### **viii. RPC**

Remote procedure call is a mechanism used to call remote functions which can be between processes of same or different machine. It also allows data to be converted for different hardware architectures. It is used for high performance applications that are tightly coupled.

#### **ix. Windows Sockets**

It is an interface used for communication between sockets. It enables data to be transmitted independent of network protocol and hence it is called protocol independent.

## **1.7 MEMORY MANAGEMENT IN WINDOWS 10**

For efficient management of tasks in a system, proper utilization of memory is necessary. Hence memory management is one of the prime tasks performed by an operating system. The system is composed of two types of memory – Physical and Virtual memory.

#### **(i) Physical Memory**

Physical memory is also known as RAM. All the programs and data during execution along with the kernel of operating system are stored in RAM. Elements stored in this memory are directly accessible by the processor. Addresses that belong to physical memory are called physical address space. It can be further divided into user address space where user's data or program can be stored and kernel's address space where kernel is stored.

#### **(ii) Virtual Memory**

Virtual memory is capability of using hard disk as additional memory when RAM does not have sufficient capacity to store the data or programs. Data or programs stored in RAM are also mapped to virtual address space by operating system. Operating system

has a program called virtual memory manager which uses method of paging to map virtual to physical address space. If physical memory is able to accommodate the processes, then virtual addresses are directly mapped to physical address but if physical memory is not able to store processes together then virtual memory manager allocate memory to processes one by one till all the processes complete using technique disc paging and **demand Paging**.

Disc paging is space on the hard disk also called page file which is used as extension to RAM. When RAM has not enough space to keep a process it is placed in this location. However, retrieving process from this location degrades the performance. In Demand paging only the task which are currently needed, is placed in RAM.

### 1.7.1 Memory Representation

Physical memory used by a process is called **working set**. For each process this working set is composed of – private and sharable working sets. Private working set is the memory used by a process for dedicated tasks. Sharable working set is the memory used by tasks which are shared with tasks of other processes. All the system resources like drivers, DLL are shared resources whereas all the tasks performed through executable processes are private working set with sharable resources.

**Commit** memory for a process is the amount of memory reserved by operating system which is usually equal to the page file size required by a process. This memory is not allocated until it is necessary to page out a process's private working set from RAM to page file. Virtual memory required by the system from page file is hence equal to the sum of all process's commit memory. However windows allows user to modify page file and virtual memory size.

During bootup process, operating system creates two dynamic pools in physical memory for kernel components. These pools are paged and non-paged pools.

- **Paged pool** –this is the physical memory allocated for kernel components that can be later written to disk when not required.
- **Non-paged pool** –this is the physical memory allocated for kernel components or objects that should always remain in physical memory compulsorily but can optionally stored in disk.
- Allocations to both these pools can be viewed in task manager.

### 1.7.2 Physical memory organization

Physical memory or RAM in Windows 10 is composed of following sections:

- *Hardware reserved* - it is the memory not handled by memory manager and is locked. It is reserved by hardware drivers.
- *In use* – it is the sum of working sets of all running processes, non-paged kernel pool, drivers and applications.
- *Modified* –modified pages which remains idle for long time are removed from working set and shifted to this memory. If the size of this memory goes beyond the threshold limit, memory manager removes pages from this memory and writes it to page file.

- *Free* – it is the memory that can be allocated when demand for memory arises. Also the previously allocated memory which is no longer required are also returned to this memory by memory manager is available for reuse.
- *Standby* – this memory acts as a cache used to hold recent files. Unmodified files from working set of recently completed process are shifted to this memory by memory manager. This improves the performance of system by reducing the time required to fetch these pages if they will be required again by the system in near future.
- When a page is requested by a process, memory manager checks the availability of page in standby memory. If found, it is repurposed i.e. returned as working set. If not found in standby, the page is loaded from the hard disk to free memory and used as working set. If sufficient memory required by a process is not available in free memory than standby memory can be used for memory allocations. Priority is associated with each page in standby and the pages with low priority can be removed and allocated to needy process.

### 1.7.3 Virtual Memory organization

In windows 10, virtual address space is limited by the system architecture. Increasing memory beyond the limit will not improve performance. It also disallows processes to directly access primary memory and hence they are unaware of memory used by other processes. This feature provides security to the system.

Memory request made by processes are handled by Virtual Memory Manager (VMM). It allocates virtual memory in units called Page. Pages are initialized by location of hard disk where file is stored initially which is later changed to physical memory address where the file gets placed for execution. Hence virtual address can be allocated to all the processes irrespective to physical memory size. Page frames are memory units in physical memory used to store processes. Size of page frames is same as that of pages in virtual memory but they are distributed randomly across memory. Set of page frames belonging to a process forms a working set. Page tables are maintained by operating system for each process which maps pages in virtual memory to frames in physical memory if available otherwise store disk address. It is an array of addresses where index stores the virtual address and page table entries stores frame address. It also stores process control information having control bits like – Valid bit, modified bit and protection bit, which tells about the state of process.

For 32-bit architecture, maximum addressable units can be  $2^{32}-1$  i.e. 4GB. This is independent of physical RAM installed in system. If the RAM installed is more than 4GB then extra RAM will be added to Physical Address Extension (PAE). They are 36 bits long hence are capable of addressing 64GB physical memory. Since the instructions are created specific to architecture, process must run in 32 bit virtual memory mode for 32-bit system. Operating system will read and write from lowest 4GB RAM in 32 bit mode called active region and the region outside 32 bit is called passive which is usable in 36 bit mode. Processes are relocated from active to passive region by operating system when it ends by changing physical page number (PPN). Therefore adding more RAM only adds the capacity to cache more data which can lead to reduced disk paging.

For 64- bit architecture, maximum addressable units can be  $2^{64}-1$  which forms 16 Exabyte address space. Hence it allows more processes to be executed without the need of disk paging.

Memory management concepts like demand paging can be applied to both the systems since it is independent of architecture and RAM installed in system.

#### 1.7.4 Demand Paging

For each process a process control block (PCB) is maintained by operating system kernel. In physical memory, the starting address of a page table is called Page table base address. For storing the address of page table, CPU maintains a special register called **Page table base register (PTBR)**. Process control block does the mapping between process id and page table base address. Whenever switching between processes is needed, operating system simple changes the page table base address in page table base register.

CPU maintains a register called Program Counter (PC) which is used to hold the address of next instruction to be executed in a process. Address stored in PC register is divided into two parts- higher order bits stores virtual Page number (VPN) and lower order bits store offset of element within a page. Memory management unit (MMU) first checks the address of page table from page table base register and then uses VPN of PC register as index into page table to find corresponding physical page number (PPN). PPN once found is concatenated with the offset part of PC register and the resulting address is stored in memory address register (MAR). CPU can then fetch the next instruction from the address stored in MAR and execute it. Later on the offset part of PC register is incremented by one to point to the next location.

A page table is created by operating system by mapping virtual address of processes to physical address. Pages that are required to be loaded in memory at initial stage are marked by valid bit=1. Pages that are not required initially are marked with valid bit=0. Page frames are created for initially required pages in physical memory contents are loaded into them from disk. Physical address of pages in page table is then replaced by the page frame address (PPN –physical page number). The process of bringing page into page frame or physical memory only when it is required or demanded is called **demand paging**. MMU maps virtual address to physical address only when the valid bit =1. If MMU does not find a frame number corresponding to a virtual address than Page fault is generated. This mean that the page is not loaded from the disk yet. In this case page handler is invoked to check the existence of the desired page and the page if exists is loaded from the disk into a new page frame. The frame address is then updated into the page table entry and the page is marked as valid.

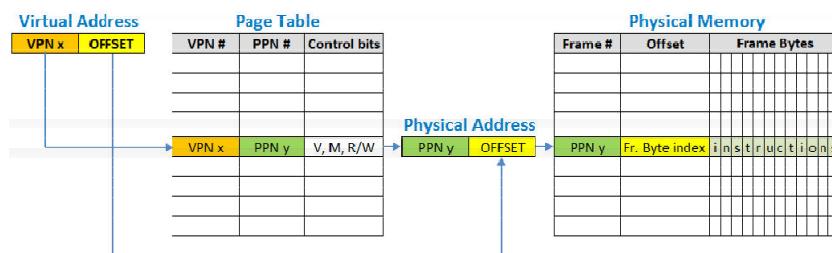


Fig3: Mapping Virtual address to Physical address (Source: answers.microsoft.com)

#### 1.7.5 Memory Compression

Windows 10 memory manager performs memory compression by compressing infrequently used memory pages instead of writing them on disk. This reduces number

room for more processes to be kept in memory and hence allowing more tasks to be executed simultaneously. As compared to previous versions windows 10 writes to disk only 50 % of the time. Windows 10 also performs simultaneous decompression of data in parallel to reading data by using multiple CPU cores. This happens because of reduced number of reads and writes. The amount of memory compressed by the system can be checked in task manager.

## **1.8 FILE SYSTEM MANAGEMENT IN WINDOWS 10**

File system enable data or files to be stored and retrieved from storage locations. Naming conventions, formats for paths are also specified by file system. Storage components in windows file system are – files, directories and volumes. A file is a group of related data. A directory is collection of files and directories stored in hierarchy. A volume is also a collection of files and directories.

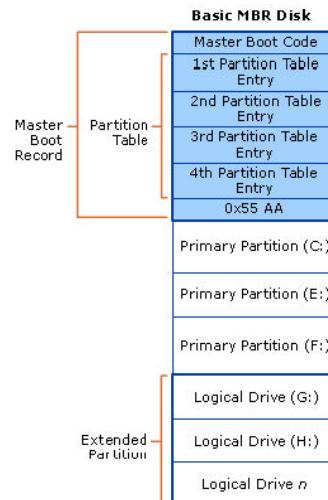
### **1.8.1 Directory Management**

The number of files in a directory is limited by the size of the disk where directory is stored. The link between the directory and files within directory is implemented as **directory entry table** by NTFS file system. One or more entries are created in this table for each file in directory. Additional entries created for a file (more than one) are called hard links. Any number of hard links can be created for a file. Whenever a file is created, its entry is added into table. Similarly when a file is moved to directory, its entry is created as moved file. When a file is deleted, its entry is also deleted from table.

### **1.8.2 Disk Management**

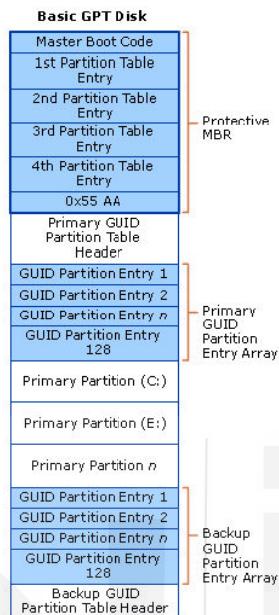
A hard disk is divided into one or more partitions, which are logical regions and created when user formats hard disk. Multiple partitions make file management easy. In storage types there are two types of disk- basic and dynamic disk.

**(i) Basic disk :** Basic disk contains primary partition and logical drives. It supports Master Boot Record partition style (like older windows versions) and GUID partition table. In the traditional MBR scheme, four primary partitions or three primary and one extended can be created. Also one or more logical drives can be created in extended partition. The extended partitions should be contiguous. The partitions are formatted to create volume. One or more volumes can be created with a single partition. Partitions which are not formatted cannot be used for storage.



**Fig4: Basic MBR Disk (Source: docs.microsoft.com)**

Globally unique identifier (GUID) can be used with MBR Partition. This style allows upto 128 primary partitions to be created hence extended partitions are not needed. It allows more than 2TB partitions to be created and also applied CRC protection and replication to partitions. It is used along with MBR for backward compatibility.



**Fig 5: Basic GPT disk (Source: [docs.microsoft.com](https://docs.microsoft.com))**

- (i) ) **Dynamic Disks:** Similar to basic disk it can use MBR and GPT partitioning but it allows added features like- it allows volume to be spanned across multiple disks and create fault tolerant volumes. Volumes created in dynamic disk are called dynamic volumes. Information of dynamic volumes is maintained in a database. It allows volume to be created on one or more physical disk noncontiguously. It makes use for logical Disk manager (LDM) and Virtual Disk service (VDS). For converting basic disk to dynamic disk atleast 1 MB of unused space is required in disk for LDM database requirements.

### 1.8.3 File Management

In windows 10, all directories, files, system code are stored by NTFS file system in a file. This help in easy access and maintenance and can also be protected by security descriptor unlike other file system which stores this data in regions of disk external to file system. Group of sectors called a cluster is the fundamental storage unit of file system. The disk data can be administered by disk controller independent of the sector size.

Files are managed in windows through file objects, file pointers and file handles.

1. A file object maintains contents written to file and other attributes maintained by kernel like- file name, current offset, share mode and others. Hence it creates a logical interface between file data and process of kernel and user mode.
2. File handle is associated with a file when a process opens the file. It remains associated with the file until the process ends or the handle is closed. They are unique and private to a process.

3. File pointer is an offset value that specifies the next byte to be read or written from a file. It is created by the system and placed at the beginning of file (offset 0) when it is opened. It progresses through the file with number of reads and writes.

#### 1.8.4 File compression

Compression of file is supported by NTFS file system. It uses a lossless compression algorithm called Lempel-Ziv compression to compress files. This allows data to be decompressed without any loss of information. Compression of files larger than 30 GB may not be successful. Applications cannot access compressed data but can only operate on those files with assistance of file compression library .

#### ☛ Check Your Progress 1

- 1) List the important new features of WINDOWS 10 Operating System.

.....

.....

.....

.....

- 2) Describe the security features in Windows 10.

.....

.....

.....

### **1.9 SUMMARY**

In this unit a case study of Windows 10 is presented. The various operating system functions like- Process management, memory management and file System management are discussed in details. Also various features newly added in Windows 10 operating system and various available versions introduced are also mentioned. In this unit, we also discussed several theoretical concepts on Windows 10 in detail, often useful in your lab for practice.

### **1.10 SOLUTIONS/ANSWERS**

- 1) Some of the new features and enhancements that will allow you to benefit from WINDOWS 10 are intelligent security, simplified updates, flexible management, and enhanced productivity. Apart from these following are the new features in WINDOWS 10:
  - Theme aware tiles in Start
  - Microsoft Edge
  - Improved Notifications

- Tablet Experience
  - Refresh Rate of Display
  - Mobile Device Management
  - Windows Autopilot (for HoloLens, Co-Management etc.)
  - Defender Application
  - Latest Cumulative Updates (LCUs) and Servicing Stack Updates(SSUs) combined into a single cumulative monthly update via Microsoft catalog
  - Secure Biometric Sign-on
  - Cortana
  - Universal Print
  - Virtual Desktop
  - MS Tunnel Gateway
  - EndpointAnalysis
  - Microsoft 365 Apps
  - Productivity Score
- 2) Windows 10 includes Windows Security, which provides the latest antivirus protection. Your device will be actively protected from the moment you start Windows 10.
- Windows Security continually scans for malware (malicious software), viruses, and security threats. In addition to this real-time protection, updates are downloaded automatically to help keep your device safe and protect it from threats.
  - Windows Security is built-in to Windows 10 and includes an antivirus program called Microsoft Defender Antivirus.
  - Virus & threat protection: Monitor threats to your device, run scans, and get updates to help detect the latest threats. (Some of these options are unavailable if you're running Windows 10 in S mode.)
  - Account protection: Access sign-in options and account settings, including Windows Hello and dynamic lock.
  - Firewall and network protection: Manage firewall settings and monitor what's happening with your networks and internet connections.
  - App and browser control: Update settings for Microsoft Defender SmartScreen to help protect your device against potentially dangerous apps, files, sites, and downloads. You'll have exploit protection and you can customize protection settings for your devices.
  - Device security. Review built-in security options to help protect your device from attacks by malicious software.

- Device performance and health: View status info about your device's performance health, and keep your device clean and up to date with the latest version of Windows 10.
- Kids Online Activity Protection: Keep track of your kids' online activity and the devices in your household.

---

## 1.11 FURTHER READINGS

---

1. Andy Mince, WINDOWS 10 Made Simple, Kindle Edition, 2020.
2. Katherine Murray, My Windows 10, Second Edition, Que, 2018.
3. Andy Rathbone, Windows 10 for Dummies, 4<sup>th</sup> Edition, Wiley, 2020.
4. docs.microsoft.com



---

## UNIT 2 CASE STUDY - LINUX

---

### Structure

- 2.1 Introduction
- 2.2 Objectives
- 2.3 Linux Operating System
- 2.4 Evolution of Linux
- 2.5 Characteristics of Linux
- 2.6 Linux Kernel
- 2.7 Fundamental Architecture of Linux
- 2.8 Process Management in Linux
- 2.9 Memory Management in Linux
- 2.10 Linux File System
- 2.11 Security Features in Linux
- 2.12 Windows Vs Linux
- 2.13 Summary
- 2.14 Solutions/Answers
- 2.15 Further Readings

---

### 2.1 INTRODUCTION

---

Operating system is system software, which acts as an interface between user applications and hardware devices such as input/output devices, memory, file system, etc. It schedules both type of tasks, systems and users', and provides common core services such as a basic user interface. The two major goals of any operating system (OS) are:

- **Convenience:** It transforms the raw hardware into a machine that is more accessible to users.
- **Efficiency:** It efficiently manages the resources of the overall computer system.

Operating system consists of the following components for achieving the goals:

- **Kernel:** The main task of the kernel is to optimize the usage of the hardware, running the required programs, satisfying the user's requirements.
- **Application Programming Interface (API):** A collection of rules, which describes how services have to be required from the kernel, and how we receive the answer from it.
- **Shell:** Its' task is the interpretation of commands. The shell can be command line (CLI - Command Line Interface, such as DOS), or graphic - GUI - interface (e.g.: Windows)
- **Services and Utilities:** These supplementary programs enhance the user's experience (e.g.: word processors, translator programs) and are not inseparable parts of the system.

Operating systems may be categorized into various types based on their functionality such as single user single task operating systems, single user multitasking operating systems, multi-programmed operating system, multiuser operating systems, distributed operating systems, network operating system, multiprocessor operating system, real time operating systems and embedded operating systems. Disk Operating System (DOS), Windows, UNIX, LINUX, Macintosh (macOS) are some of the examples of the operating systems. The typical services that an operating system provides include: a task scheduler, memory manager, disk manager, network manager, Other I/O services and security manager. This section provides a case study of LINUX operating system. This unit provides basic structure of the Linux, its process management; file management and memory management techniques.

---

## 2.2 OBJECTIVES

---

After the completion of this unit, you will be able to:

- Understand the basic functions of Linux Operating System
- Identify the characteristics of the Linux Operating System
- Know the evolution of Linux operating system
- Understand the process management of Linux and compare with other OS
- Understand the memory management approaches in Linux
- Understand the File management in Linux
- Understand the security features of Linux

---

## 2.3 LINUX OPERATING SYSTEM

---

UNIX is a well-known OS, and is widely used in mini and mainframe computer systems. In recent years the popularity of UNIX has been increasing significantly due to one of its popular descendant namely Linux operating system.

Linux is one of the popular variants' of UNIX operating System. It is an open source OS as its source code is freely available. Linux was designed considering UNIX compatibility. Its functionality is quite similar to that of UNIX. Linux is provided with GUI, so instead of typing commands to perform user tasks, one can log in graphically to fulfill their requirements. Linux also provides the facility to handle core system requirements through command line. Linux developers concentrated on networking and services in the beginning, and office applications have been the last barrier to be taken down. Apart from desktop OS, Linux is an acceptable choice as a workstation OS, providing an easy user interface and MS compatible office applications like word processors, spreadsheets, presentations and the like. Because of this, Linux has joined the desktop market.

On the server side, Linux is known as a stable and reliable platform, providing database and trading services for companies like Amazon, US Post Office, German Army and many others. Linux is used in firewall, proxy and web server. One can find a Linux box within reach of every UNIX system administrator who appreciates a comfortable management station. Clusters of Linux machines are used in the creation of movies

such as “Titanic”, “Shrek” and others. Day-to-day, thousands of heavy-duty jobs are performed by Linux across the world. It is also noteworthy that modern Linux not only runs on workstations, mid and high-end servers, but also on “gadgets” like PDA’s, mobiles, embedded applications and even on experimental wristwatches. This makes Linux the only operating system all across covering a wide range of hardware.

Linux is used in a number of consumer electronic devices worldwide. Some of the popular Linux based electronic devices are Dell Inspiron Mini (9 and 12), Garmin Nuvi (860, 880, and 5000), Google Android Dev Phone 1, HP Mini 1000, Lenovo IdeaPad S9, Motorola MotoRokr EM35 Phone, One Laptop Per Child XO2, Sony Bravia Television, Sony Reader, TiVo Digital Video Recorder, Volvo In-Car Navigation System, Yamaha Motif Keyboard etc.. From smartphones to robots, cars, supercomputers, home appliances, personal computers to Enterprise Servers, the Linux operating system is everywhere.

## **2.4 EVOLUTION OF LINUX**

By the beginning of the 90s home PCs were finally powerful enough to run UNIX. Linus Torvalds, a Computer Science student at the University of Helsinki, thought it would be a good idea to have some sort of freely available academic version of UNIX, and promptly started to code. He started to put forth questions, looking for answers and solutions that would help him get UNIX on his PC. From the start, it was Linus’s goal to have a free system that was completely compliant with the original UNIX. In those days plug-and-play wasn’t invented yet, but number of people was interested in having a UNIX system of their own. This was the only small obstacle. New drivers became available for all kinds of new hardware at a continuous rising speed. As soon as a new piece of hardware became available, someone bought it and submitted it to the Linux test, as the system was gradually being called releasing more free code for an even wider range of hardware. Around 95% of the Linux was written in C programming language and around 2.8% in *Assembly* language.

Two years after Linus’ announcement of the project, there were 12000 Linux users. The project, popular with hobbyists, grew steadily, all the while staying within the bounds of the POSIX (popular UNIX version) standard. All the features of UNIX were added over the next couple of years, resulting in the mature operating system Linux has become today. Linux is a full UNIX clone, fit for use on workstations as well as on middle-range and high-end servers. There is a wide range of variations and versions those were encountered in the development of Linux Operating System. The following table provides the details of the various versions developed and events happened related to Linux. The history of Linux is given in Table 1.

**Table 1: Evolution of Linux**

S.No.	Year	Event/Release	Version
1	1991	UniX(HP-UX)	8.0
2	1992	Hewlett Packard	9.0
3	1993	NetBSD and FreeBSD	0.8, 1.0
4	1994	Red Hat Linux, Caldera, Ransom Love and NetBSD1.0	—

**Case Studies**

5	1995	FreeBSD and HP UX	2.0, 10.0
6	1996	K Desktop Environment	—
7	1997	HP-UX	11.0
8	1998	IRIXSun Solaris OS Free BSD	6.573.0
9	2000	Caldera Systems with SCO server division announced	
10	2001	LinuxMicrosoft filed a trademark suit against Lindows.com	2.4
11	2004	Lindows name was changed to Linspire First release of Ubuntu	—
12	2005	openSUSE Project	—
13	2006	Red Hat	—
14	2007	Dell started distributing laptops with Ubuntu pre-installed	
16	2011	Linux kernel	3.0
17	2013	Googles Linux based Android	—

Linux has several distributions. Some popular and dominant LINUX distributions for Desktops include:

- Linux Mint
- Ubuntu
- OpenSUSE
- Mageia
- Manjaro
- Fedora
- ArchLinux
- Debian
- Kali Linux
- Elementary OS

Some of the popular Linux distributions, in the Servers category, include:

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL)
- CentOS
- Ubuntu Server
- SUSE Enterprise Linux

## 2.5 CHARACTERISTICS OF LINUX

Linux has several salient characteristic features, some of the important among them are:

- **Multiuser Capability:** This is a capability of Linux OS where, the same computer resources – hard disk, memory, etc. are accessible to multiple users. Of course, not on a single terminal, they are given different terminals to operate from. A terminal will consist of at least a Monitor/VDU, keyboard and mouse as input devices. All the terminals are then connected to the main Linux Server or Host Machine, whose resources and connected peripheral devices such as printer, can be used. Client/Server Architecture is an example of multiuser capability of Linux, where different clients are connected to a Linux server. The client sends request to the server with a particular data and server requests with the processed data or the file requested, client terminal is also known as a Dumb Terminal.
- **Multitasking:** Linux has the ability to handle more than one job at a time, say for example you have executed a command for sorting for a huge list and simultaneously typing in a notepad. This is managed by dividing the CPU time intelligently by the implementation of scheduling policies and the concept of context switching.
- **Portability:** Portability was the one of the main features that made Linux so popular among the users, but portability doesn't mean that it is smaller in file size and can be carried on pen drive, CDs and memory cards. Instead, here portability means that Linux OS and its application can work on different types of hardwares in the same way. Linux kernel and application programs support their installation even on very least hardware configuration.
- **Security:** Security is a very important part of any OS, for the organizations/ user who is using the system for their confidential works, Linux does provide several security concepts for protecting their users from unauthorized access of their data and system.

Linux provide three main security concepts:

- **Authentication:** This simply implies claiming the person whom you are by assigning passwords and login names to individual users, ensuring that nobody can gain access to their work.
- **Authorization:** At the file level, Linux has authorization limits to users. There are read, write and execute permissions for each file which decide who can access a particular file, who can modify it and who can execute it.
- **Encryption:** This feature encodes your files into an unreadable format that is also known as “ciphertext”, so that even if someone succeeds in opening it your secrets will be safe.

- (i) **Communication:** Linux has an excellent feature for communicating with the fellow users; it can be within the network of a single main computer, or between two or more computer networks. The users can easily exchange mail, data, program through such networks.

## Advantages of LINUX Operating System

There are several advantages of LINUX operating system. Some of them are as follows:

- **Low cost:** There is no need to spend time and huge amount money to obtain licenses since Linux and much of its software come with the GNU General Public License. There is no need to worry about any software's that you use in Linux.
- **Stability:** Linux has high stability compared with other operating systems. There is no need to reboot the Linux system to maintain performance levels. Rarely it freeze up or slow down. It has a continuous up-time of hundreds of days or more.
- **Performance:** Linux provides high performance on various networks. It has the ability to handle large numbers of users simultaneously.
- **Networking:** Linux provides a strong support for network functionality; client and server systems can be easily set up on any computer running Linux. It can perform tasks like network backup faster than other operating systems.
- **Flexibility:** Linux is very flexible. Linux can be used for high performance server applications, desktop applications, and embedded systems. You can install only the needed components for a particular use. You can also restrict the use of specific computers.
- **Compatibility:** It runs all common Unix software packages and can process all common file formats.
- **Wider Choice:** There is a large number of Linux distributions which gives you a wider choice. Each organization develop and support different distribution. You can pick the one you like best; the core functions are the same.
- **Fast and easy installation:** Linux distributions come with user-friendly installation.
- **Better use of hard disk:** Linux uses its resources well enough even when the hard disk is almost full.
- **Multitasking:** Linux is a multitasking operating system. It can handle many things at the same time.
- **Security:** Linux is one of the most secure operating systems. File ownership and permissions make Linux more secure.
- **Open source:** Linux is an Open source operating systems. You can easily get the source code for Linux and edit it to develop your personal operating system.

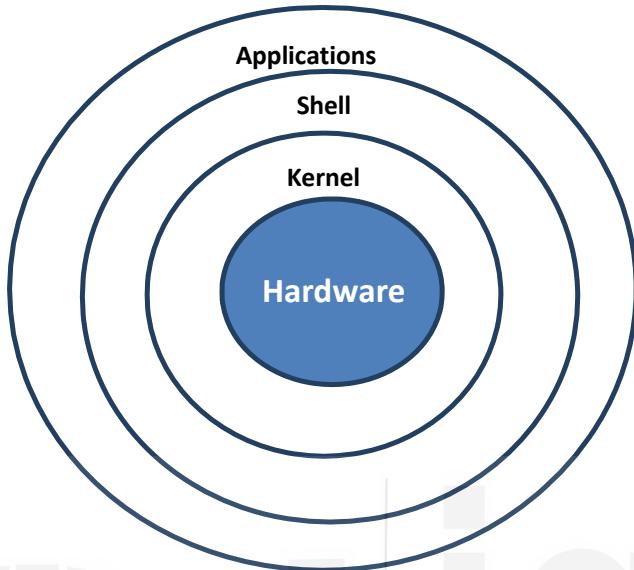
---

## 2.6 LINUX KERNEL

---

The Linux kernel is the main component of a Linux OS. This is the core interface between a computer's hardware and its processes. It communicates between the two, managing resources as efficiently as possible. The kernel is so named because—like a

seed inside a hard shell—it exists within the OS and controls all major functions of the hardware, whether it's a phone, laptop, server, or any other kind of computer. To put the kernel in context, one can think of a Linux system having four layers as shown in Fig 1.



**Fig 1: Linux Architecture**

1. **The Hardware:** The physical machine—the bottom or base of the system, made up of memory (RAM), processor or central processing unit (CPU), as well as input/output (I/O) devices such as storage, networking, and graphics. CPU performs computations and reads from, and writes to the memory.
2. **The Linux kernel:** The core of the OS. It's software residing in memory that tells the CPU what to do.
3. **Shell:** The shell layer is in between application layer and the kernel. Shell will take the input from the user applications and sends it to the kernel in form of instructions. It also takes output from the kernel and forwards it as a result to the user application.
4. **Applications / User processes:** These are the running programs that the kernel manages. User processes are what collectively make up user space. User processes are also known as just *processes*. The kernel also allows these processes and servers to communicate with each other (known as inter-process communication, or IPC).

Code executed by the system runs on CPUs in one or two modes: kernel mode or user mode. Code running in the kernel mode has unrestricted access to the hardware, while user mode restricts access to the CPU and memory to the System Call Interface. A similar separation exists for memory (kernel space and user space).

### 2.5.1 Kernel Architecture of Linux

Kernel is a small and special code which is the core component of Linux OS and directly interacts with hardware. It is the intermediate level between software and hardware which provides low level service to user mode's components. It is developed in C language. Moreover, it has different blocks which manage various operations. Kernel runs a number of processes concurrently and manages various resources. It is

viewed as a resource manager when several programs run concurrently on a system. In this case, the kernel is an instance that shares available resources like CPU time, disk space, network connections etc.

The kernel has four jobs to perform as follows:

- i. **Memory management:** Keep track of how much memory is used to store what, and where.
- ii. **Process management:** Determine which processes can use the central processing unit (CPU), when, and for how long.
- iii. **Device drivers:** Act as mediator/interpreter between the hardware and processes.
- iv. **System calls and security:** Receive requests for service from the processes

The kernel, if implemented properly, is invisible to the user, working in its own little world known as kernel space, where it allocates memory and keeps track of where everything is stored. What the user sees—like web browsers and files—are known as the user space. These applications interact with the kernel through a system call interface (SCI).

This also means that if a process fails in user mode, the damage is limited and can be recovered by the kernel. However, because of its access to memory and the processor, a kernel process crash can crash the entire system. Since there are safeguards in place and permissions required to cross boundaries, user process crashes usually can't cause too many problems.

## 2.6 FUNDAMENTAL ARCHITECTURE OF LINUX

The following is the fundamental architecture of Linux given in Fig 2.

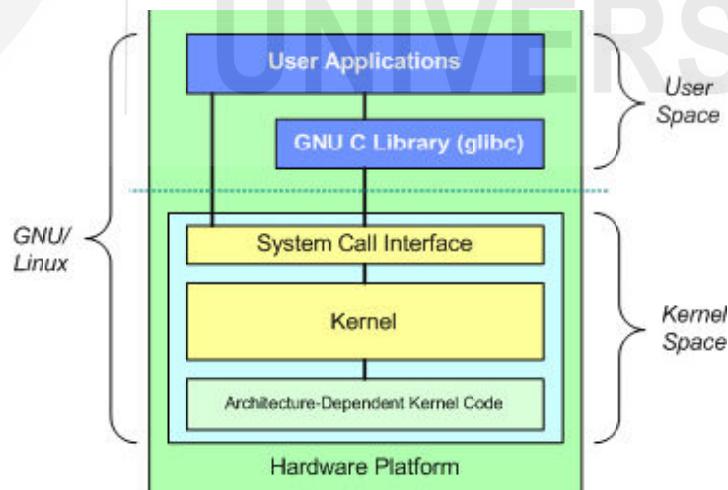


Fig. 2: Fundamental Architecture of Linux

Architecture of kernel is divided into main two parts:

1. User Space
2. Kernel Space

## 2.6.1 User Space

All user programs and applications are executed in user space. User Space cannot directly access the memory and hardware. It accesses the hardware through kernel space. Processes or programs which are running in user space only access some part of memory by system call. Due to full protection, crashes in user mode are recoverable.

GNU C library provides the mechanism switching user space application to kernel space.

## 2.6.2 Kernel Space

All kernel programs are executed in kernel space. Kernel space accesses full part of memory and directly interacts with hardware like RAM, Hard disk etc. It is divided in different blocks and modules which manage all operations (like file management, memory management, process management etc.) in kernel space and applications running in user space. Kernel space consists of system call interface, Kernel (core component of Linux) and device module.

System call interface is the intermediate layer between user space and kernel space. Each application, running in user space, can interface with kernel through system call. For example system call function on file operation are open(), write(), read() etc.

Kernel is independent from hardware. It is common for all Hardware processors which are supported by Linux. You can run kernel on any processor like Intel, ARM, etc. It acts as a resource manager in Kernel space and performs process management, file management, memory management, Interrupt handler, scheduling of process, etc. It is a powerful structure which handles all kinds of operations.

---

## 2.7 PROCESS MANAGEMENT IN LINUX

---

Multitasking is the illusion created by the kernel. The processor is capable of performing the processes in parallel by switching in between multiple tasks that are running on the system. The context switching is done in parallel rapidly and repeatedly in specific intervals. The user is not able to notice the switching of the tasks due to small intervals. Linux process can be visualized as running instance of a program. For example, just open a text editor on your Linux box and a text editor process will be born.

The following are some of the tasks of process management that are handled by the kernel.

All the processes should work independently without interfering each other until they desire to interact. The Linux environment is a multiuser system. Even though multiple processes are running concurrently, the problem occurred in one application will not affect some other application. All these applications/programs that are running in parallel will not be able to access the memory content of the other application/program. This feature provides the security for the application's data from the other users.

All the processes of the system will fairly utilize CPU time and share in between multiple applications. The applications are assigned their priorities based on which the order of the execution is determined.

The execution time allocated to each process (time quantum) and when to context switch between processes should take place is decided by the kernel. This begs the

question as to which process is actually the next. Decisions on time slot allocation and context switching are not platform-dependent.

While context switching by the kernel, the kernel will ensure that the execution environment of a process brought back is exactly the same when it last withdrew processor resources. For example, the contents of the processor registers and the structure of virtual address space must be identical. This latter task is extremely dependent on processor type. How CPU time is allocated is determined by the scheduler policy which is totally separate from the task switching mechanism needed to switch between processes.

**Process Priorities:** Not all processes are of equal importance. In addition to process priority, there are different criticality classes to satisfy differing demands. In general processes can be split into real-time processes and non-real-time processes.

Real-time processes are also of two types i.e., hard real-time and delicate real-time or soft real-time processes. Hard real-time processes are subject to strict time limits during which certain tasks must be completed. If the flight control commands of an aircraft are processed by computer, they must be forwarded as quickly as possible—within a guaranteed period of time. The key characteristic of hard real-time processes is that they must be processed within a guaranteed time frame. Note that this does not imply that the time frame is particularly short. Instead, the system must guarantee that a certain time frame is never exceeded, even when unlikely or adverse conditions prevail.

In soft real time systems, the meeting of deadline is not compulsory for every time for every task but process should get processed and give the result. Even the soft real time systems cannot miss the deadline for every task or process according to the priority it should meet the deadline or can miss the deadline. If system is missing the deadline for every time the performance of the system will be worse and cannot be used by the users. Best example for soft real time system is personal computer, audio and video systems, etc.. An illustration of a delicate real-time process is a compose activity to a CD. Information should be procured by the CD author at a specific rate since information are kept in touch with the medium in a nonstop stream. On the off chance that framework stacking is too high, the information stream might be intruded on quickly, and this may bring about an unusable CD, far less exceptional than a plane accident. All things considered, the compose process should consistently be conceded CPU time when required—before any remaining typical processes.

Linux does not support hard real-time processing, at least not in the vanilla kernel. There are, however, modified versions such as RTLinux, Xenomai, or RATI that offer this feature. The Linux kernel runs as a separate “process” in these approaches and handles less important software, while real-time work is done outside the kernel. The kernel may run only if no real-time critical actions are performed. Since Linux is optimized for throughput and tries to handle common cases as fast as possible, guaranteed response times are very hard to achieve. Nevertheless quite a bit of progress has been made during last years to decrease the overall kernel latency, i.e., the time that elapses between making a request and its fulfilment.

### Process Hierarchy

Each process is identified by a unique positive integer called the process ID (pid). The *pid* of the first process is 1, and each subsequent process receives a new, unique *pid*.

In Linux, processes form a strict hierarchy, known as the process tree. The process tree is rooted at the first process, known as the init process, which is typically the init program. New processes are created via the fork() system call. This system call creates a duplicate of the calling process. The original process is called the parent; the new process is called the child. Every process except the first has a parent. If a parent process terminates before its child, the kernel will reparent the child to the init process.

When a process terminates, it is not immediately removed from the system. Instead, the kernel keeps parts of the process resident in memory to allow the process's parent to inquire about its status upon terminating. This inquiry is known as waiting on the terminated process. Once the parent process has waited on its terminated child, the child is fully destroyed. A process that has terminated, but has not yet been waited upon, is called a zombie. The init process routinely waits on all of its children, ensuring that re-parented processes do not remain zombies forever.

### **Linux Process States**

Processes are born, share resources with parents for some time, get their own copy of resources when they are ready to make changes, go through various states depending upon their priority and then finally die. Following are the various states of Linux processes:

- RUNNING – This state specifies that the process is either in execution or waiting to get executed.
- INTERRUPTIBLE – This state specifies that the process is waiting to get interrupted as it is in sleep mode and waiting for some action to happen that can wake this process up. The action can be a hardware interrupt, signal etc.
- UN-INTERRUPTIBLE – It is just like the INTERRUPTIBLE state, the only difference being that a process in this state cannot be waken up by delivering a signal.
- STOPPED – This state specifies that the process has been stopped. This may happen if a signal like SIGSTOP, SIGTTIN etc is delivered to the process.
- TRACED – This state specifies that the process is being debugged. Whenever the process is stopped by debugger (to help user debug the code) the process enters this state.
- ZOMBIE – This state specifies that the process is terminated but still hanging around in kernel process table because the parent of this process has still not fetched the termination status of this process. Parent uses wait() family of functions to fetch the termination status.
- DEAD – This state specifies that the process is terminated and entry is removed from process table. This state is achieved when the parent successfully fetches the termination status as explained in ZOMBIE state.

### **Linux Threads Vs Light Weight Processes**

Threads in Linux are nothing but a flow of execution of the process. A process containing multiple execution flows is known as multi-threaded process. For a non multi-threaded process there is only execution flow that is the main execution flow and hence it is also known as single threaded process.

Threads are often mixed with the term Light Weight Processes (LWPs). The reason dates back to those times when Linux supported threads at user level only. This means that even a multi-threaded application was viewed by kernel as a single process only. This posed big challenges for the library that managed these user level threads because it had to take care of cases that a thread execution did not hinder if any other thread issued a blocking call. Later on the implementation changed and processes were attached to each thread so that kernel can take care of them. Linux kernel does not see them as threads; each thread is viewed as a process inside kernel. These processes are known as light weight processes.

The main difference between a LWP and a normal process is that LWPs share same address space and other resources like open files etc. As some resources are shared so these processes are considered to be light weight as compared to other normal processes and hence the name light weight processes.

So, effectively we can say that threads and light weight processes are same. It's just that thread is a term that is used at user level while light weight process is a term used at kernel level.

From implementation point of view, threads are created using functions exposed by POSIX compliant pthread library in Linux. Internally, the clone() function is used to create a normal as well as a light weight process. This means that to create a normal process fork() is used that further calls clone() with appropriate arguments while to create a thread or LWP, a function from pthread library calls clone() with relevant flags. So, the main difference is generated by using different flags that can be passed to clone() function.

## 2.8 MEMORY MANAGEMENT IN LINUX

The major part of the computer is CPU of which RAM is the frontal part of the CPU. All data items processed at CPU has to go through RAM. A process, which needs to be processed, will first be loaded in RAM and the CPU will get process data from RAM.

Memory is assisted by level one, level two, and level three cache for faster processing. As the caches are very expensive due to technology used and also not very useful for all the instructions, only small size caches are used in CPU.

Any information, related to the process, is copied from RAM to CPU registers and the CPU would build its cache. Cache plays an important part of memory management on Linux. If user requests information from hard disk, it is copied to RAM and the user is served from RAM. While the information is copied from hard disk, it is placed in page cache.

So the **page cache** stores recently requested data to make it faster if the same data is needed again. And if the user starts modifying data, it will go to RAM as well where from it will be copied to the hard However, it only happens if the data has been staying in RAM long enough.

Data won't be written immediately from RAM to hard disk, but to optimize the write operations to the hard disk, Linux works with the concept of **dirty cache**. It tries to buffer as much data in order to create an efficient write request. From figure 3, it is clear that everything on a computer goes through RAM. So using RAM on a Linux computer is essential for the well working of the Linux operating system.

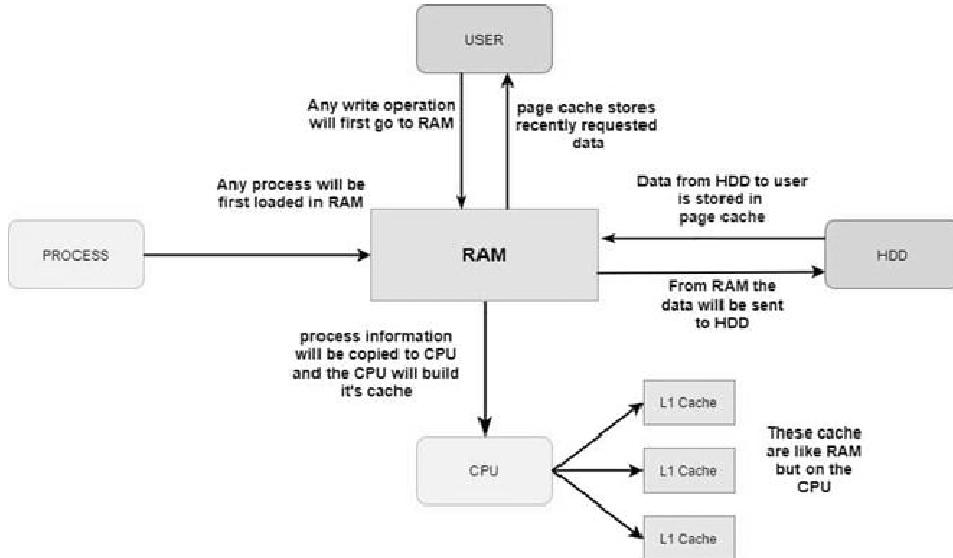


Figure 3: Memory Management in Linux

## 2.9 LINUX FILE SYSTEM

A file system is a logical collection of files on a partition or disk. A partition is a container for information and can span an entire hard drive if desired. File system hierarchy standard (FHS) describes directory structure and its content in Unix and Unix like operating system. It explains where files and directories should be located and what it should contain. Linux partially follows FHS due to its own policy to which we may notice some differences in the directory tree structure.

### The Root Directory

All the directories in the Linux system come under the root directory which is represented by a **forward slash (/)**.

Each file is categorized based on the type of the file and is stored into a particular directory. These types of directories and relevant file types are listed below in table 2.

Table 2: Directory Type and Types of the Files Stored

Directory type	Types of files stored
Binary directories	Contains binary or compiled source code files, eg, /bin, /sbin, etc.
Configuration directories	Contains configuration files of the system, eg, /etc, /boot.
Data directories	Stores data files, eg, /home, /root, etc.
Memory directories	Stores device files which doesn't take up actual hard disk space, eg, /dev, /proc, /sys.
Usr (Unix System Resources)	Contains sharable, read only data, eg, /usr/bin, /usr/lib, etc.
var (variable directory)	Contains larger size data, eg, /var/log, /var/cache, etc.
Non-standard directories	Directories which do not come under standard FHS, eg, lost+found, /run, etc.

### 2.9.1 Linux Binary Directory

Binary files are the files which contain executable files. These files are the output of compilation of the source code. These executable files can be executed on the computer. Binary directory contains following directories:

- **/bin**
- **/sbin**
- **/lib**
- **/opt**

**/bin:** The ‘/bin’ directory contains user binaries, executable files, Linux commands that are used in single user mode, and common commands that are used by all the users, like cat, cp, cd, ls, etc.

**/sbin:** The ‘/sbin’ directory also contains executable files, but unlike ‘/bin’ it only contains system binaries which require root privilege to perform certain tasks and are helpful for system maintenance purpose. e.g. fsck, root, init, ifconfig, etc.

**/lib :** The ‘/lib’ directory contains shared libraries which are often used by the ‘/bin’ and ‘/sbin’ directories. It also contains kernel module.

**/opt:** The term ‘opt’ is short for optional. Its main purpose is to store optional application software packages. Add-on applications from individual vendors should be installed in ‘/opt’. And so in some systems ‘/opt’ is empty as they may not have any add-on application.

### 2.9.2 Linux Configuration Directory

The configuration directory contains configured files which configures the parameters and initial settings for some computer programs.

Configuration directory have following sub-directories:

- **/boot**
- **/etc**

**/boot :** The ‘/boot’ directory contains boot loader files which are essential to boot the system. In other words, they only contain files which are needed for a basic Linux system to get up and going. You may find ‘/boot/grub’ directory which contains ‘/boot/grub/grub.cfg’ (older system may have /boot/grub/grub.conf) which defines boot menu that is displayed before the kernel starts.

**/etc :** All the machine related configuration files are kept in ‘/etc’. Almost everything related to the configuration of your system is placed here. It also contains startup and shutdown shell script which is used to start and stop a program. All the files are static and text based and no binary files can be placed in this directory.

### 2.9.3 Linux Data directory

Data directory is used to store data of the system. Data directory contains following directories:

- **/home**

- /root
- /srv
- /media
- /mnt
- /tmp

**/home:** The ‘/home’ directory stores users personnel files. After the ‘/home’ there is a directory which is generally named at the user’s name like we have ‘/home/sssit’. Inside this directory we have our sub-directories like Desktop, Downloads, Documents, pictures, etc.

**/root:** The ‘/root’ directory is the home directory of the root user. The ‘/root’ directory is different from (/) root.

**/srv:** The term ‘srv’ is short for **service**. The ‘/srv’ directory contains server specific data for services provided by the system like www, cvs, rysync, ftp, etc.

**/media:** The ‘/media’ directory acts as a mount point for removable media devices such as CD-Rom, floppy, USB devices, etc. This is newly introduced directory and hence a system can run without this directory also.

**/mnt :** The term ‘mnt’ stands for **mount**. The ‘/mnt’ directory should be empty and sysadmins can only mount temporary filesystems.

**/tmp :** The term ‘tmp’ stands for **temporary**. Data stored in ‘/tmp’ is temporary and may use either disk space or RAM. When system is rebooted, files under this directory is automatically deleted. So it is advisable that never use ‘/tmp’ to store important data.

## 2.9.4 Linux Memory Directory

Memory directory contains files of the whole system. All the device information, process running in data or system related information is stored in this directory. Memory directory contains the following directories:

- /dev
- /proc
- /sys

**/dev:** The term ‘dev’ is short for **device**. As you know in Linux operating system everything is a file. It appears to be an ordinary file but doesn’t take up disk space. Files which are used to represent and access devices are stored here including terminal devices like usb. All the files stored in ‘/dev’ are not related to real devices, some are related to virtual devices also.

**/dev/** The ‘/dev/tty’ file represents the command line interface that is a terminal **tty and** or console attached to the system. Typing commands in a terminal is a **/dev/** part of the graphical interface like Gnome or KDE, then terminal will be **pts:** represented as ‘/dev/pts/1’.

**/dev/** The ‘/dev/null’ file is considered as black hole, it has unlimited storage **null:** but nothing can be retrieved from it. You can discard your unwanted output from the terminal but can’t retrieve it back.

**/proc:** The term ‘proc’ is short for process. Same as ‘/dev’, ‘/proc’ also doesn’t take up disk space. It contains process information. It is a pseudo file system that contains information about running processes. It also works as virtual file system containing text information about system resources.

**/sys:** The term ‘sys’ is short for system. Basically it contains kernel information about hardware. It was created for Linux 2.6 kernel. It is a kind of ‘/proc’ and is used for plug and play configuration.

### 2.9.5 Linux System Resources (/usr)

Although it is pronounced as user but in actual it stands for **Unix System Resources**. It is also called secondary hierarchy as it contains binaries, libraries, documentation for all the user applications. It only contains shareable read-only data. The following are some of the /usr sub-directories:

- **/usr/bin**
- **/usr/include**
- **/usr/lib**
- **/usr/share**
- **/usr/local**
- **/usr/src**

**/usr/bin:** The ‘/usr/bin’ directory contains non-essential binary commands for all users. If you can’t find a command in ‘/bin’, search it in ‘/usr/bin’. It contains a lot of commands.

**/usr/include:** The ‘/usr/include’ directory contains standard include files for C.

**/usr/lib:** The ‘/usr/lib’ directory contains libraries that are not directly executed by the users. In other words, it contains binaries for the ‘/usr/bin’ and ‘/usr/sbin’.

**/usr/share:** The ‘/usr/share’ directory contains architecture independent (shared) data.

**/usr/local :** The ‘/usr/local’ directory is used to install software locally. It means all the user programs that you’ll install from source will be installed here.

**/usr/src :** The term ‘src’ is short for **source**. It is used to store source code like kernel source code with its header files.

### 2.9.6 Variable Directory (/var)

The term ‘var’ is short for **variable**. Files that have an unexpected size and whose content is expected to change continuously (that’s why it is named as variable) during normal operation of the system are stored here. For example, log files, spool files and cache files. The following are some of the /var sub-directories here:

- **/var/log**
- **/var/cache**

- /var/spool
- /var/lib

**/var/log :** The ‘/var/log’ directory contains all log files.

**/var/cache:** The ‘/var/cache’ directory stores application cache data. Cache data are locally generated by I/O or calculation. Cache must be able to regenerate or restore the data. These files can be deleted without any loss of data.

**/var/spool:** The ‘/var/spool’ directory is used to spool the files waiting to be processed. For example, printing queues and mail queues.

**/var/lib:** The ‘/var/lib’ directory stores the files that contains state information like databases. File’s data modifies as their respective programs run.

### 2.9.7 Non-Standard Directories

Directories which do not come under the standard FHS are called non-standard directories. Non-standard directories are as follows:

- /cdrom
- /run
- /lost + found

**/cdrom:** The ‘/cdrom’ directory is not in the standard FHS but cdrom can be mounted on this directory. Ideally according to standard FHS cdrom should be mounted under ‘/media’.

**/run:** The ‘/run’ directory stores run-time variable data. Run-time variable data means, data about the running system since last boot. For example, running daemons.

**/lost+found:** During system crash or in any other situation when Linux file system checker (fsck) recovers lost data, that data is stored in this directory. Data may or may not be in a good condition.

---

## 2.10 SECURITY FEATURES IN LINUX

---

Linux is both more secure and less common than Windows based systems with the consequence that attacks on Linux systems occur less frequently than on Windows systems. Some of the security features of Open Source UNIX-like operating systems, focusing on Linux distributions are as follows:

### 2.10.1 User Accounts

Linux OS includes a root account, which is the only account that may directly carry out administrative functions. All of the other accounts on the system are *unprivileged*. This means these accounts have no rights beyond access to files marked with appropriate permissions, and the ability to launch network services. Only the root account may launch network services that use port numbers lower than 1024. Any account may start network services that use higher port numbers. Each user should have a single account on the system. Network services may also have their own separate accounts,

in order to be able to access those files on the system that they require. Utilities enable authorized users to temporarily obtain root privileges when necessary, so that administrators may manage the system with their own user accounts. For convenience, accounts may be members of one or more *groups*. If a group is assigned access to a resource, then every member of the group automatically has that access. The majority of UNIX-like systems use a Pluggable Authentication Modules (PAM) facility to manage access by users. For each login attempt or password change, the relevant service runs the configured *PAM* modules in sequence. Some modules support authentication sources, such as locally-stored files or *LDAP* directory services. Administrators may enable other modules that carry out setup tasks during the login process, or check login requests against particular criteria, such as a list of time periods when access is permitted.

### 2.10.2 File Permissions

Every file and directory on a Linux is marked with three sets of file permissions that determine how it may be accessed, and by whom:

- The permissions for the *owner*, the specific account that is responsible for the file
- The permissions for the *group* that may use the file
- The permissions that apply to all *other* accounts

Each set may have none or more of the following permissions on the item – *read*, *write* and *execute*

A user may only run a program file if they belong to a set that has the *execute* permission. For directories, the *execute* permission indicates that users in the relevant set may see the files within it, although they may not actually read, write or execute any file unless the permissions of that file permit it. Executable files with the *setUID* property automatically run with the privileges of the file owner, rather than the account that activates them. Avoid setting the execute permission or *setUID* on any file or directory unless you specifically require it. The root account has full access to every file on the system, regardless of the permissions attached to that file.

### 2.10.3 Data Verification

To create a checksum for a file, or to test a file against a checksum, use the *sha1sum* utility. SHA1 supersedes the older MD5 method, and you should always use SHA1. Linux also supply the GNU Privacy Guard (GnuPG) system for encrypting and digitally signing files, such as emails. Many documents refer to GnuPG as *gpg*, which is the name of the main GnuPG command. The files that you sign or encrypt with GnuPG are compatible with other applications that follow the *OpenPGP* standard. The Evolution email application automatically supports both signing and encrypting emails with GnuPG. Evolution is the default email application for several of the main Linux distributions, including Fedora, Novell Linux Desktop, Red Hat Enterprise Linux, and Ubuntu.

### 2.10.4 Encrypted Storage

Create one or more *encrypted volumes* for your sensitive files. Each volume is a single file which may enclose other files and directories of your choice. To access the

contents of the volume, you must provide the correct decryption password to a utility, which then makes the volume available as if it were a directory or drive. The contents of an encrypted volume cannot be read when the volume is not mounted. You may store or copy encrypted volume files as you wish without affecting their security. For example, the cross-platform *Truecrypt* utility enables you to create and access your encrypted volumes with all popular operating systems. In extreme cases, you may decide to encrypt an entire disk partition that holds or caches data, so that none of the contents may be read by unauthorized persons. On Linux you may use either *LUKS*, *CryptoFS* or *EncFS* to encrypt disks.

### 2.10.5 Remote Access

Majority Linux Distributions includes a version of *OpenSSH*, an implementation of the *SSH* standard for secure remote access. An SSH service uses strong encryption by default, and provides the following facilities:

- Remote command-line access
- Remote command execution
- Remote access to graphical software
- File transfers

### 2.10.6 OS Management

Majority of Linux distributions incorporate software management facilities based on *package* files and sets of specially prepared Web sites, known as *repositories* or *channels*. Package management utilities construct or update working copies of software from these packages, and execute any other setup tasks that packages require. Repositories enable the management tools to automatically provide the correct version of each software product, by downloading the required packages directly from the relevant repository. Most systems also use checksums and digital signature tests to ensure that packages are authentic and correct. In addition, package management tools can identify outdated versions of software by checking the software installed on a system against the packages in the repositories. This means that you can ensure that all of the supported software on your system does not suffer from known security vulnerability, simply by running the update routine.

### 2.10.7 Backup and System Recovery

You may easily restore program files for all of the software that is included with your distribution with the software management tools. In order to fully recover a system from accident, or deliberate compromise, you must also have access to copies of the data, configuration, and log files. These files require some form of separate backup mechanism.

All effective backup systems provide the ability to restore versions of your files from several earlier points in time. You may discover that the current system is damaged or compromised at any time, and need to revert to previous versions of key files, so keeping only one additional copy of a key file should not be considered an adequate backup. Majority of the Linux distributions provide a wide range of backup tools, and leave it to the administrator to configure a suitable backup arrangement for their systems.

## 2.10.8 Monitoring and Audit Facilities

On Linux systems, the *syslog* and *klogd* services record activity as it is reported by different parts of the system. The Linux kernel reports to *klogd*, whilst the other services and facilities on the system send log messages to a *syslog* service. Distributions provide several tools for reading and analyzing the system log files.

Several facilities on any UNIX-like system may also email reports and notifications directly to the root account, via the *SMTP* service. Edit the *aliases* file to redirect messages for root to another email address, and you will receive these emails at the specified address.

## 2.10.9 Application Isolation

Linux operating system provides several methods of limiting the ability of a program to affect either other running programs, or the host system itself.

- *Mandatory Access Control (MAC)* supplements the normal UNIX security facilities of a system by enforcing absolute limits that cannot be circumvented by any program or account.
- *Virtualization* enables you to assign a limited set of hardware resources to a virtual machine, which may be monitored and backed up by separate processes on the host system.
- *Linux Container* facilities, such as Docker, run processes within a generated filesystem and separate them from the normal processes of the host system
- The *chroot* utility runs programs within a specified working directory, and prevents them from accessing any other directory on that system.

## 2.10.10 Protection Against Virus and Malware

The security features of Linux or UNIX-like systems described above combine to form a strong defense against malware:

- Software is often supplied in the form of packages, rather than programs
- If you download a working program, it cannot run until you choose to mark the files as executable
- By default, applications such as the OpenOffice.org suite and the Evolution email client do not run programs embedded in emails or documents
- Web browsers require you to approve the installation of plug-ins
- Software vulnerabilities can be rapidly closed by vendors supplying updated packages to the repositories

---

## 2.11 WINDOWS VS LINUX

---

Microsoft Windows offered by Microsoft mainly targets the personal computing market. Windows OS has two versions i.e. 32 bits and 64 bits and is available in both clients as well as server versions. Windows was first released in the year 1985 and the latest client version of windows is Windows 10 which was released in the year 2015. Talking about the most recent server version, we have Windows server 2019.

Linux is a group of Unix-like operating systems based on the Linux kernel. It belongs to the family of free and open source software. It is usually packaged in a Linux distribution. Linux was first released in the year 1991. It is most commonly used for servers; however, a desktop version of Linux is also available which is very much popular and give a good competition to the Windows OS.

The comparison of both the popular Operating systems is compiled in the Table 2 as shown below:

**Table 2: Windows Vs Linux Operating Systems**

Features	Windows	Linux
Developer	Microsoft Corporation	Linus Torvalds, community.
Written in	C++, Assembly	Assembly language, C
OS family	Graphical Operating system family	Unix-like Operating System family
License	Proprietary commercial software	GPL(GNU General Public License) v2 and others
User Interface	Windows shell	Unix shell
Kernel type	Windows NT family has a hybrid kernel (combination of microkernel and monolithic kernel); Windows CE(Embedded compact) also have hybrid kernel; Windows 9x and earlier series has a monolithic kernel (MS-DOS).	Monolithic kernel (whole operating system works in the kernel space).
Source model	Closed source software; source available (through shared source initiative).	Open source software
Initial release	November 20, 1985 Windows is older than Linux.	September 17, 1991
Available in	138 languages	Multi-lingual
Platforms	ARM, IA-32, Itanium, x86-64, DEC Alpha, MIPS, PowerPC.	Alpha, H8/300, Hexagon, Itanium, m68k, Microblaze, MIPS, PA-RISC, PowerPC, RISC-V, s390, SuperH, NDS32, Nios II, OpenRISC, SPARC, ARC Unicore32, x86, Xtensa, ARM, C6x.
Package manager	Windows Installer (.msi), Windows Store (.appx).	Packaged in a Linux distribution (distro).

**Case Studies**

Booting	Can only be done from disk. the prime disk.	Can be done from any
Default command line	Windows PowerShell	BASH
Ease of use	Windows has a rich GUI and can be easily used by technical as well as non-technical persons. It is very simple and user-friendly.	CUI / GUI
Reliability	Windows is less reliable than Linux. Over the recent years, Windows security, and reliability has improved a lot. However, it still has some system instabilities and security weaknesses because of its oversimplified design.	Highly reliable and secure. It has a deep-rooted emphasis on process management, system security, and reliability has been uptime.
Update	Windows update happens Users have full control when an update in the current moment is made. Installation takes less time which may be sometimes and no reboot is required. Takes more time to install and requires a reboot.	inconvenient to users.
Access	Every user does not have access to the source code. Only the selected members of the group have access to the source code.	Users have access over the source code of kernel and can modify it accordingly. This gives a benefit that bugs in OS will be fixed faster. However, the drawback is that the developers may take undue advantage of the loophole.

**☛ Check Your Progress 1**

- 1) Mention the important features of LINUX Operating System.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

- 2) Describe the architecture of LINUX.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

## 2.12 SUMMARY

In this unit, we have discussed issues broadly related to features of LINUX OS, Architecture and components of LINUX, process management, memory management and file system in LINUX operating system. In this unit, we also discussed several theoretical concepts of LINUX system in detail, often useful in your lab for practice.

## 2.13 SOLUTIONS/ANSWERS

- 1) Linux is provided with lot of features, which are listed below.
  - i. Linux operating system can work on different types of hardware devices and Linux kernel supports the installation of any kind of hardware platform.
  - ii. **Linux is an Open Source software i.e., Linux** Source code is freely available. Linux also allow us to upgrade the source code. Many collaborative groups are working to upgrade and develop their own versions.
  - iii. **Multiuser:** Linux operating system is a multiuser system, which means, multiple users can access the system resources such as RAM, Memory or Application programs at the same time.
  - iv. **Multiprogramming:** Linux operating system is a multiprogramming system, which means multiple applications can run at the same time.
  - v. **Hierarchical File System:** Linux operating system affords a standard file structure in which system files or user files are arranged.
  - vi. **Shell:** Linux operating system offers a special interpreter program that can be used to execute commands of the OS. It can be used to do several types of operations like call application programs, and so on.
  - vii. **Security:** Linux operating system offers user security systems using authentication features like encryption of data or password protection or controlled access to particular files.
- 2) **Linux Architecture:** Linux Operating System is a four-layered architecture.

**Hardware:** All physical components of the computer that provides services to the user like CPU, RAM, Hard Disk, Monitor, Printer, etc., are known as hardware components of the computers.

**Kernel:** This is the main component of the Linux operating system. Only through the Kernel, we can directly communicate with the hardware components.

**Shell:** The shell layer is in between application layer and the kernel. Shell will take the input from the user applications and sends to the kernel in the form of instructions and takes output from the kernel and forwards it as a result to the user application.

**Applications:** These are the utility programs for the users that run on shell. These applications like text editor, web browsers, spread sheet applications, etc.

---

## 2.14 FURTHER READINGS

---

1. Richard Petersen, Linux: The Complete Reference, Sixth Edition, McGraw Hill, 2017.
2. MachteltGarrels, Introduction to Linux: A Hands-On Guide, UNIX Academy Publicaions, 2007.
3. Jason Cannon, Linux for Beginners: An Introduction to the Linux Operating System and Command Line, Kindle Edition, 2013.
4. Linux System Programming, Robert Love, O'Reilly, 2014.
5. K. Srirengan, *Understanding UNIX*, PHI, 2002.



---

## **UNIT 3 CASE STUDY - ANDROID**

---

### **Structure**

- 3.0 Introduction
- 3.1 Objectives
- 3.2 Salient Features of Android
- 3.3 Evolution of Android
- 3.4. Layered Architecture of Android OS
- 3.5. Processes and Threads Management in Android
- 3.6 Memory Management in Android
- 3.7 File Management in Android
- 3.8 Security Features in Android
- 3.9 Summary
- 3.10 Solutions/Answers
- 3.11 Further Readings

---

### **3.0 INTRODUCTION**

---

Across the globe, in more than 190 countries, hundreds of millions of mobile devices are powered by Android operating system. It has strong user base and conquered around 75% of the global market share by the end of 2020. Google sponsored the project at initial stages and in the year 2005, it acquired the whole company. In September 2008, the first Android-powered device was launched in the market. It's popular because it has long list of features, user-friendly, has huge community support, provides a greater extent of customization, and a large number of companies build Android-compatible smart phones. At first, the purpose of Android was thought of as a mobile operating system. However, with the advancement of code libraries and its popularity among developers of the divergent domain, Android becomes an absolute set of software for all devices like tablets, wearables, set-top boxes, smart TVs, notebooks, etc. Android is an open-source operating system based on modified version of Linux kernel with a Java programming interface for mobile devices such as Smartphone (Touch Screen Devices who supports Android OS) as well for Tablets too.

This unit provides a case study on Android Operating System. It provides basic structure, features, process, file and memory management techniques it follows.

---

### **3.1 OBJECTIVES**

---

After completing this unit, you will be able to:

- Understand the various features of the Android system
- Know the evolution of the Android OS

- Describe the architecture of the ANDROID OS.
- Know the Process and Memory management approaches
- Understand the File management in Android
- Identify the security features in Android

---

### 3.2 SALIENT FEATURES OF ANDROID OS

---

Android is a powerful open-source operating system that provides enormous features and some of them are listed below:

- **User Interface:** Android provides a great user interface which allow user to communicate with his device. It has user friendly UI which allow the user ease of access and can learn and operate the device quickly.
- **Storage:** Uses “SQLite” to store the data. SQLite being a relational data base processing queries are fast.
- **File Manager:** Data storage related activities will be managed by the file manager.
- **Media:** Supports wide range of media like JPEF, PNG, GIF, BMP, Ogg, MIDI, MP3, ACC 5.1, Vorbis, WAV, AMR, AMR-WB etc.
- **Messaging:** Provides various messaging services like MMS, SMS.
- **Connectivity:** Android provide various range of connectivity like GSM.EDGE, CDMA, Wi-Fi, LTE, NFC WiMAX, UMTS, EV-DO, IDEN
- **GPS:** It contains multiple APIs to support location-tracking services such as GPS.
- **Multitasking:** Android provides multitasking capability for the user. They can operate multiple applications at the same time.
- **Multi touch:** Android support multi touch functionality where user is allowed to make multiple touches at the same time and the OS will process it this is majorly used for gaming.
- **Widgets:** Android OS provides widgets which allow the user to have the organize the apps based on their requirements. It also allows the user to add, remove, resize, expand and collapse based on users usage and their need.
- **Screen Capture:** Allows the user to capture the screen shot of their mobile screen.
- **Near Field Communication:** Android provides a short range of wireless connection, which allows various devices to communicate quickly within the range. It is majorly used in payment systems.
- **Recording Capability:** It supports multimedia hardware control to perform playback or recording using a camera and microphone.
- **Webkit Layout:** Android has an integrated open-source WebKit layout based web browser to support User Interface like HTML5, CSS3.

- **Virtual Reality:** It provides support for virtual reality or 2D/3D Graphics.
- **Customization:** Customization is possible in Android OS based on our requirements.

### 3.3 EVOLUTION OF ANDROID OS

Andy Rubin founded Android Inc in October 2003 and later Google acquired Android Inc. Its initial intention is for camera as they have less market, it later changed to support mobile devices. Google announced the development of Android operating system in 2007 and Android launches its first Android mobile device. Android Inc. was acquired by Google in August, 2005. Key employees of Android Inc., including Andy Rubin, Rich Miner and Chris White, stayed at the company after the acquisition. After acquisition, a team led by Rubin developed a mobile device platform implemented using Linux kernel. Google marketed the platform to handset makers and carriers on the promise of providing a flexible, upgradable system.

Android operating systems has several versions. Following are the list of these versions depicted in the table 1:

**Table 1: Android Versions**

Code Name	Version	Release Date
Apple Pie	Android 1.0	September 23, 2008
Banana Bread	Android 1.1	February 9, 2009
Cupcake	Android 1.5	April 30, 2009
Donut	Android 1.6	September 15, 2009
Eclair	Android 2.0 – 2.1	October 26, 2009
Froyo	Android 2.2 – 2.2.3	May 20, 2010
Gingerbread	Android 2.3 – 2.3.4	December 6, 2010
Honeycomb	Android 3.0.x – 3.2.x	February 22, 2011
Ice Cream Sandwich	Android 4.0 – 4.0.4	October 18, 2011
Jelly Bean	Android 4.1 – 4.1.2	July 9, 2012
Kitkat	Android 4.4 – 4.4.4	July 9, 2012
Lollipop	Android 5.0 – 5.1	October 17, 2014
Marshmallow	Android 6.0 – 6.0.1	October 5, 2015
Nougat	Android 7.0 – 7.1	August 22, 2016
Oreo	Android 8.0	August 21, 2017
Pie	Android 9.0	August 6, 2018
Android Q	Android 10.0	September 3, 2019
Android 11	Android 11.0	September 8, 2020

In the next section let us study the Layered Architecture of Android.

## 3.4 LAYERED ARCHITECTURE OF ANDROID OS

Android operating system is a stack of software components which is roughly divided into five sections and four main layers as shown below in the architecture diagram given at Figure 1.

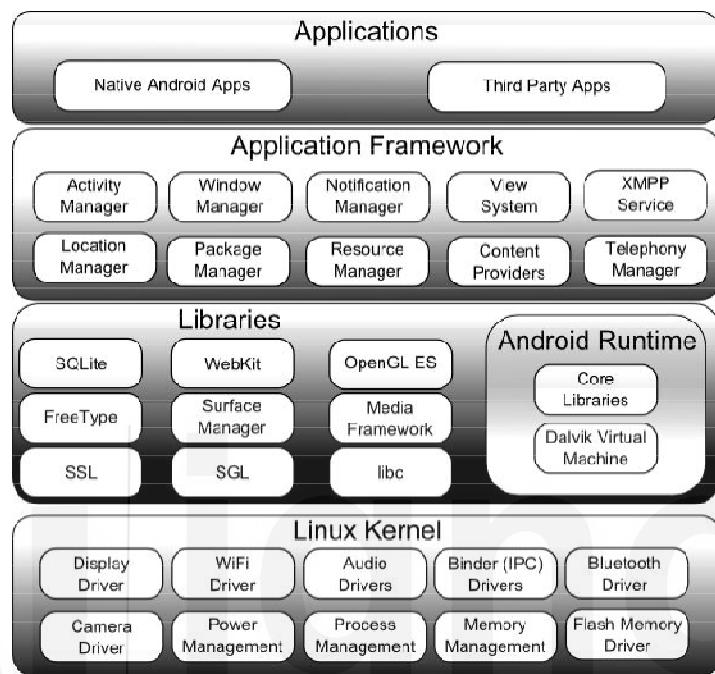


Figure 1: Architecture of Android OS (Source: developer.android.com)

### 3.4.1 Linux Kernel

Linux is the bottom layer. The bottom layer offers a level of abstraction between hardware and it contains all the essentials required for hardware drivers like camera, keypad, display etc. Also, the kernel handles all the things that Linux is really good at such as networking and a vast array of device drivers, which take the pain out of interfacing to peripheral hardware.

### 3.4.2 Libraries

A rich set of libraries are present on top of Linux kernel. Along with open-source Library Web browser engine WebKit, a collection of popular libraries like libc, SQLite database which is a useful repository for storage and sharing of application data, libraries to play and record audio and video, SSL libraries responsible for Internet security etc. Java based libraries are used for the purpose of development of Android OS. The application framework libraries in addition to those that facilitate user interface building, graphics drawing and database access.

A summary of some key core Android libraries available to the Android developer is as follows:

<b>android.app</b>	Provides access to the application model and is the cornerstone of all Android applications.
<b>android.content</b>	Facilitates content access, publishing and messaging between applications and application components.

<b>android.database</b>	Used to access data published by content providers and includes SQLite database management classes.
<b>android.opengl</b>	A Java interface to the OpenGL ES 3D graphics rendering API.
<b>android.os</b>	Provides applications with access to standard operating system services including messages, system services and inter-process communication
<b>android.text</b>	Used to render and manipulate text on a device display.
<b>android.view</b>	The fundamental building blocks of application user interfaces.
<b>android.widget</b>	A rich collection of pre-built user interface components such as buttons, labels, list views, layout managers, radio buttons etc.
<b>android.webkit</b>	A set of classes intended to allow web-browsing capabilities to be built into applications.

### 3.4.3 Android Runtime

This section is the part of the Libraries layer which contains a key component called Dalvik Virtual Machine (Dalvik VM) which is an optimized Android library acts like a Java Virtual Machine. The Dalvik VM makes use of Linux core features like memory management and multi-threading, which is intrinsic in the Java language. The Dalvik VM enables every Android application to run in its own process, with its own instance of the Dalvik virtual machine.

The Android runtime also provides a set of core libraries which enable Android application developers to write Android applications using standard Java programming language.

### 3.4.4 Application Framework

Several high level services will be provided to the applications through Application Framework layer. These application services are available in the form of Java classes. Application developers can use these services in their applications.

The Android framework includes the following key services:

- **Activity Manager** “Controls all aspects of the application lifecycle and activity stack.
- **Content Providers** “Allows applications to publish and share data with other applications.
- **Resource Manager** “Provides access to non-code embedded resources such as strings, color settings and user interface layouts.
- **Notifications Manager** “ Allows applications to display alerts and notifications to the user.
- **Windows Manager** – Allows applications to apply various operations on windows like create, minimize, resize etc.
- **View System** “An extensible set of views used to create application user interfaces.

### 3.4.5 Applications

The top layer of Android Architecture is Applications-layer. Users have to install their own applications on this layer. Browser, Games, Contacts Books, etc., are some of the examples of such applications. The application layer runs within the Android run time using the classes and services made available from the application framework.

---

## 3.5 PROCESSES AND THREADS MANAGEMENT IN ANDROID

---

Android creates a process for each application, all the components are running from a main thread in low power and low memory. Android automatically manages the processes and kills the least used or inactive process.

### 3.5.1 Process Life Cycle

The Android system tries to maintain an application process for as long as possible, but eventually needs to remove old processes to reclaim memory for new or more important processes. To determine which processes to keep and which to kill, the system places each process into an “importance hierarchy” based on the components running in the process and the state of those components. Processes with the lowest importance are eliminated first, then those with the next lowest importance, and so on, as necessary to recover system resources. There are five levels in the importance hierarchy. The following list presents the different types of processes in order of importance:

#### (i) Foreground process

A process that is required for what the user is currently doing. A process is considered to be in the foreground if any of the following conditions are true:

- It hosts an Activity that the user is interacting with.
- It hosts a Service that’s bound to the activity that the user is interacting with.
- It hosts a Service that’s running “in the foreground” and the service has called `startForeground()`.
- It hosts a Service that’s executing one of its lifecycle callbacks (`onCreate()`, `onStart()`, or `onDestroy()`).
- It hosts a BroadcastReceiver that’s executing its `onReceive()` method.

Generally, only a few foreground processes exist at any given time. They are killed only as a last resort, if memory is so low and cannot continue to run. Generally, at that point, the device has reached a memory paging state, so killing some foreground processes is required to keep the user interface responsive.

#### (ii) Visible process

A process that doesn’t have any foreground components, but still can affect what the user sees on screen. A process is considered to be visible if either of the following conditions are true:

- It hosts an Activity that is not in the foreground, but is still visible to the user (its `onPause()` method has been called).

- It hosts a Service that's bound to a visible (or foreground) activity.

A visible process is considered extremely important and will not be killed unless doing so is required to keep all foreground processes running.

### (iii) Service process

A process that is running a service that has been started with the `startService()` method and does not fall into either of the two higher categories. Although service processes are not directly tied to anything the user sees, they are generally doing things that the user cares about such as playing music in the background or downloading data on the network, so the system keeps them running unless there's not enough memory to retain them along with all foreground and visible processes.

### (iv) Background process

A process holding an activity that's not currently visible to the user (the activity's `onStop()` method has been called). These processes have no direct impact on the user experience, and the system can kill them at any time to reclaim memory for a foreground, visible, or service process. Usually there are many background processes running, so they are kept in an LRU (least recently used) list to ensure that the process with the activity that was most recently seen by the user is the last to be killed. If an activity implements its lifecycle methods correctly, and saves its current state, killing its process will not have a visible effect on the user experience, because when the user navigates back to the activity, the activity restores all of its visible state.

### (v) Empty process

A process that doesn't hold any active application components is called empty process. The only reason to keep this kind of process alive is for caching purposes, to improve startup time the next time a component needs to run in it. The system often kills these processes in order to balance overall system resources between process caches and the underlying kernel caches.

Android ranks a process at the highest level it can, based upon the importance of the components currently active in the process.

## 3.5.2 Threads

When an application is launched, the system creates a thread of execution for the application, called “main”. This thread is very important because it is in charge of dispatching events to the appropriate user interface widgets, including drawing events. It is also the thread in which your application interacts with components from the Android UI toolkit. This main thread is also sometimes called the UI thread.

The system does not create a separate thread for each instance of a component. All components that run in the same process are instantiated in the UI thread, and system calls to each component are dispatched from that thread. Consequently, methods that respond to system callbacks (such as `onKeyDown()` to report user actions or a lifecycle callback method) always run in the UI thread of the process.

For instance, when the user touches a button on the screen, your app's UI thread dispatches the touch event to the widget, which in turn sets its pressed state and posts an invalidate request to the event queue. The UI thread dequeues the request and notifies the widget that it should redraw itself.

When your app performs intensive work in response to user interaction, this single thread model can yield poor performance unless you implement your application properly. Specifically, if everything is happening in the UI thread, performing long operations such as network access or database queries will block the whole UI. When the thread is blocked, no events can be dispatched, including drawing events. From the user's perspective, the application appears to hang. Even worse, if the UI thread is blocked for more than a few seconds (about 5 seconds currently) the user is presented with the infamous "application not responding" (ANR) dialog. The user might then decide to quit your application and uninstall it if they are unhappy. Additionally, the Android UI toolkit is not thread-safe.

### Interprocess Communication

Android offers a mechanism for Interprocess Communication (IPC) using remote procedure calls (RPCs), in which a method is called by an activity or other application component, but executed remotely (in another process), with any result returned back to the caller. This entails decomposing a method call and its data to a level the operating system can understand, transmitting it from the local process and address space to the remote process and address space, then reassembling and reenacting the call there. Return values are then transmitted in the opposite direction. Android provides all the code to perform these IPC transactions, so you can focus on defining and implementing the RPC programming interface. To perform IPC, your application must bind to a service, using `bindService()`.

In the next section we will study about the Memory Management in Android OS.

---

## 3.6 MEMORY MANAGEMENT IN ANDROID

---

The Android Runtime (ART) and Dalvik Virtual Machine (DVM) use paging and memory-mapping (*mmapping*) to manage memory. This means that any memory an app modifies; whether by allocating new objects or touching *mmapped* pages, they remain resident in RAM and cannot be paged out. The only way to release memory from an app is to release object references that the app holds, making the memory available to the garbage collector. That is with one exception: any files *mmapped* in without modification, such as code, can be paged out of RAM if the system wants to use that memory elsewhere.

### 3.6.1 Shared Memory

In order to fit everything it needs in RAM, Android tries to share RAM pages across processes. It can do so in the following ways:

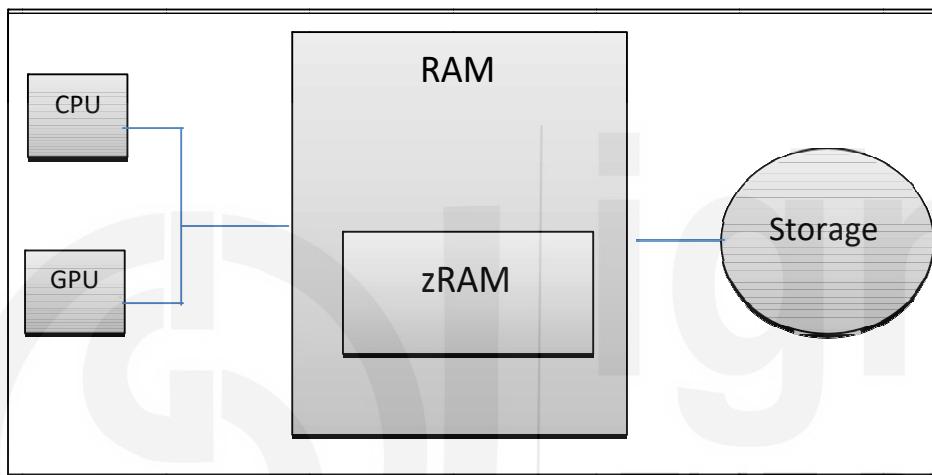
- Each app process is forked from an existing process called Zygote. The Zygote process starts when the system boots and loads common framework code and resources (such as activity themes). To start a new app process, the system forks the Zygote process then loads and runs the app's code in the new process. This approach allows most of the RAM pages allocated for framework code and resources to be shared across all app processes.
- Most static data is *mmapped* into a process. This technique allows data to be shared between processes, and also allows it to be paged out when needed. Example static data include: Dalvik code (by placing it in a pre-

linked .odex file for direct *mmapping*), app resources (by designing the resource table to be a structure that can be *mmapped* and by aligning the zip entries of the APK), and traditional project elements like native code in .so files.

- In many places, Android shares the same dynamic RAM across processes using explicitly allocated shared memory regions. For example, window surfaces use shared memory between the app and screen compositor, and cursor buffers use shared memory between the content provider and client.

### 3.6.2 Types of Memory

Android devices contain three different types of memory: RAM, zRAM, and storage. Note that both the CPU and GPU access the same RAM.



**Figure 2: Types of Memory - RAM, zRAM, and Storage**

- RAM is the fastest type of memory, but is usually limited in size. High-end devices typically have the largest amounts of RAM.
- zRAM is a partition of RAM used for swap space. Everything is compressed when placed into zRAM, and then decompressed when copied out of zRAM. This portion of RAM grows or shrinks in size as pages are moved into or taken out of zRAM. Device manufacturers can set the maximum size.
- Storage contains all of the persistent data such as the file system and the included object code for all apps, libraries, and the platform. Storage has much more capacity than the other two types of memory. On Android, storage isn't used for swap space like it is on other Linux implementations since frequent writing can cause wear on this memory, and shorten the life of the storage medium.

### 3.6.3 Memory Allocation Among Processes

The Android platform runs on the premise that free memory is wasted memory. It tries to use all of the available memory at all times. For example, the system keeps apps in memory after they've been closed so the user can quickly switch back to them. For this reason, Android devices often run with very little free memory. Memory management is vital to properly allocate memory among important system processes and many user applications.

### 3.6.4 Paging

RAM is broken up into *pages*. Typically each page is 4KB of memory. Pages are considered either *free* or *used*. Free pages are unused RAM. Used pages are RAM that the system is actively using, and are grouped into the following categories:

- ***Cached***: Memory backed by a file on storage (for example, code or memory-mapped files). There are two types of cached memory:
- ***Private***: Owned by one process and not shared.
- ***Clean***: Unmodified copy of a file on storage, can be deleted by *kswapd* to increase free memory.
- ***Dirty***: Modified copy of the file on storage; can be moved to, or compressed in, zRAM by *kswapd* to increase free memory or allows changes to be written back to the file in storage to increase free memory by *kswapd*, or explicitly using *msync()* or *munmap()* or Can be moved/compressed in zRAM by *kswapd* to increase free memory
- ***Shared***: Used by multiple processes.
- ***Anonymous***: Memory **not** backed by a file on storage (for example, allocated by *mmap()* with the *MAP\_ANONYMOUS* flag set).

### 3.6.5 Low Memory Management

Android has two main mechanisms to deal with low memory situations:

- The kernel swap daemon
- Low-memory killer

#### (i) **kernel swap daemon**

The kernel swap daemon (*kswapd*) is part of the Linux kernel, and converts used memory into free memory. The daemon becomes active when free memory on the device runs low. The Linux kernel maintains low and high free memory thresholds. When free memory falls below the low threshold, *kswapd* starts to reclaim memory. Once the free memory reaches the high threshold, *kswapd* stops reclaiming memory. *kswapd* can reclaim clean pages by deleting them because they're backed by storage and have not been modified. If a process tries to address a clean page that has been deleted, the system copies the page from storage to RAM. This operation is known as *demand paging*.

*kswapd* can move cached private dirty pages and anonymous dirty pages to zRAM, where they are compressed. Doing so frees up available memory in RAM (free pages).

If a process tries to touch a dirty page in zRAM, the page is uncompressed and moved back into RAM. If the process associated with a compressed page is killed, then the page is deleted from zRAM. If the amount of free memory falls below a certain threshold, the system starts killing processes.

## (ii) Low-Memory Killer

Many times, kswapd cannot free enough memory for the system. In this case, the system uses `onTrimMemory()` to notify an app that memory is running low and that it should reduce its allocations. If this is not sufficient, the kernel starts killing processes to free up memory. It uses the low-memory killer (LMK) to do this.

To decide which process to kill, LMK uses an “out of memory” score called `oom_adj_score` to prioritize the running processes. Processes with a high score are killed first. Background apps are first to be killed, and system processes are last to be killed. The following table lists the LMK scoring categories from high-to-low. Items in the highest-scoring category, in row one, will be killed first:

These are descriptions for the various categories in the table above:

- **Background Apps:** Apps that were run previously and are not currently active. LMK will first kill background apps starting with the one with the highest `oom_adj_score`.
- **Previous App:** The most recently-used background app. The previous app has higher priority (a lower score) than the background apps because it is more likely the user will switch to it than one of the background apps.
- **Home App:** This is the launcher app. Killing this will make the wallpaper disappear.
- **Services:** Services are started by applications and may include syncing or uploading to the cloud.
- **Perceptible Apps:** Non-foreground apps that are perceptible to the user in some way, such as running a search process that displays a small UI or listening to music.
- **Foreground App:** The app currently being used. Killing the foreground app looks like an application crash which might indicate to the user that something is going wrong with the device.
- **Persistent (services):** These are core services for the device, such as telephony and wifi.
- **System:** System processes. As these processes are killed, the phone may appear to reboot.
- **Native:** Very low-level processes used by the system (for example, kswapd).

## 3.6.6 Garbage Collection

A managed memory environment, like the ART or DVM, keeps track of each memory allocation. Once it determines that a piece of memory is no longer being used by the program, it frees it back to the heap, without any intervention from the programmer. The mechanism for reclaiming unused memory within a managed memory environment

is known as *garbage collection*. Garbage collection has two goals: find data objects in a program that cannot be accessed in the future; and reclaim the resources used by those objects.

Android's memory heap is a generational one, meaning that there are different buckets of allocations that it tracks, based on the expected life and size of an object being allocated. For example, recently allocated objects belong in the *Young generation*. When an object stays active long enough, it can be promoted to an older generation, followed by a permanent generation.

## 3.7 FILE MANAGEMENT IN ANDROID

---

Android uses different partitions to handle files and folders on the system like windows operating system. Each of these partitions has its own functionality. Mainly, there are six specific partitions in the file system of Android devices. Each model may have their own organization for this file system partitioning. But most of the Android Devices have the following list of partitions logically in common like: */boot*, */system*, */recovery*, */data*, */cache* and */misc*. The following are two separate partitions for the SD card of Android Devices */sdcard* and */sd-ext*.

### **/boot**

- This is the boot partition of your Android device, as the name suggests.
- It includes the android kernel and the ramdisk.
- The device will not boot without this partition.
- Wiping this partition from recovery should only be done if absolutely required and once done, the device must NOT be rebooted before installing a new one, which can be done by installing a ROM that includes a */boot* partition.

### **/system**

- As the name suggests, this partition contains the entire Android OS.
- This includes the Android GUI and all the system applications that come pre-installed on the device.
- Wiping this partition will remove Android from the device without rendering it unbootable, and we can still be able to place the phone into recovery or bootloader mode to install a new ROM.

### **/recovery**

- This is specially designed for backup.
- The recovery partition can be considered as an alternative boot partition, that lets the device boot into a recovery console for performing advanced recovery and maintenance operations on it.

### **/data**

- It is called user data partition.
- This partition contains the user's data like your contacts, sms, settings and all android applications that you have installed.

- While we are doing factory reset on our device, this partition will wipe out, then the device will be in the state, when we use for the first time, or the way it was after the last official or custom ROM installation.

#### /cache

- This is the partition where Android stores frequently accessed data and app components.
- Wiping the cache doesn't affect our personal data but simply gets rid of the existing data there, which gets automatically rebuilt as we continue using the device.

#### /misc

- This partition contains miscellaneous system settings in form of on/off switches.
- These settings may include CID (Carrier or Region ID), USB configuration and certain hardware settings etc.
- This is an important partition and if it is corrupt or missing, several of the device's features will not function normally.

#### /sdcard

- This is not a partition on the internal memory of the device but rather the SD card.
- In terms of usage, this is our storage space to use as you see fit, to store media, documents, ROMs etc. on it.
- Wiping it is perfectly safe as long as we backup all the data you require from it, to the computer first.
- Though several user-installed apps save their data and settings on the SD card and wiping this partition will make we lose all that data.

#### /sd-ext

- This is not a standard Android partition, but has become popular in the custom ROM scene.
- It is basically an additional partition on your SD card that acts as the /data partition.
- It is especially useful on devices with little internal memory allotted to the /data partition.
- Thus, users who want to install more programs than the internal memory allows can make this partition and use it for installing their apps.

## **3.8 SECURITY FEATURES IN ANDROID**

Android incorporates industry-leading security features and works with developers and device implementers to keep the Android platform and ecosystem safe. A robust security model is essential to enable a vigorous ecosystem of apps and devices built on and around the Android platform and supported by cloud services. As a result, through

its entire development lifecycle, Android has been subject to a rigorous security program. The key components of the Android Security include:

### 3.8.1 System and kernel security

At the operating system level, the Android platform provides the security of the Linux kernel, as well as a secure inter-process communication (IPC) facility to enable secure communication between applications running in different processes. These security features at the OS level ensure that even native code is constrained by the Application Sandbox. Whether that code is the result of included application behavior or an exploitation of application vulnerability, the system is designed to prevent the rogue application from harming other applications, the Android system, or the device itself.

The foundation of the Android platform is the Linux kernel. Linux has become a stable and secure kernel trusted by many corporations and security professionals. As the base for a mobile computing environment, the Linux kernel provides Android with several key security features, including:

- A user-based permissions model
- Process isolation
- Extensible mechanism for secure IPC
- The ability to remove unnecessary and potentially insecure parts of the kernel

As a multiuser operating system, a fundamental security objective of the Linux kernel is to isolate user resources from one another. The Linux security philosophy is to protect user resources from one another.

### 3.8.2 Verified boot

Android 6.0 and later supports verified boot and device-mapper-verity. Verified boot guarantees the integrity of the device software starting from a hardware root of trust up to the system partition. During boot, each stage cryptographically verifies the integrity and authenticity of the next stage before executing it. Android 7.0 and later supports strictly enforced verified boot, which means compromised devices cannot boot.

### 3.8.3 File System Permissions

In a UNIX-style environment, file-system permissions ensure that one user cannot alter or read another user's files. In the case of Android, each application runs as its own user. Unless the developer explicitly shares files with other applications, files created by one application cannot be read or altered by another application.

### 3.8.4 Platform Security

Android seeks to be the most secure and usable operating system for mobile platforms by repurposing traditional operating system security controls to Protect app and user data, Protect system resources (including the network), Provide app isolation from the system, other apps, and from the user. To achieve these objectives, Android provides these key security features:

- Robust security at the OS level through the Linux kernel
- Mandatory app sandbox for all apps

- Secure interprocess communication
- App signing
- App-defined and user-granted permissions

### 3.8.5 Program Level Security Features

- **Design review:** The Android security process begins early in the development lifecycle with the creation of a rich and configurable security model and design. Each major feature of the platform is reviewed by engineering and security resources, with appropriate security controls integrated into the architecture of the system.
- **Penetration testing and code review:** During the development of the platform, Android-created and open source components are subject to vigorous security reviews. These reviews are performed by the Android Security Team, Google's Information Security Engineering team, and independent security consultants. The goal of these reviews is to identify weaknesses and possible vulnerabilities well before major releases, and to simulate the types of analysis that are performed by external security experts upon release.
- **Open source and community review:** AOSP enables broad security review by any interested party. Android also uses open source technologies that have undergone significant external security review, such as the Linux kernel. Google Play provides a forum for users and companies to provide information about specific apps directly to users.
- **Incident response:** Even with these precautions, security issues may occur after shipping, which is why the Android project has created a comprehensive security response process. Full-time Android security team members monitor the Android-specific and the general security community for discussion of potential vulnerabilities and review security bugs filed on the Android bug database. Upon the discovery of legitimate issues, the Android team has a response process that enables the rapid mitigation of vulnerabilities to ensure that potential risk to all Android users is minimized. These cloud-supported responses can include updating the Android platform (AOSP updates), removing apps from Google Play, and removing apps from devices in the field.
- **Monthly security updates:** The Android security team provides monthly updates to Google Android devices and all our device manufacturing partners.

### 3.8.6 Cryptography

Android provides a set of cryptographic APIs for use by applications. These include implementations of standard and commonly used cryptographic primitives such as AES, RSA, DSA, and SHA. Additionally, APIs are provided for higher level protocols such as SSL and HTTPS.

### 3.8.7 User Security Features

This can be categorized into File System Encryption and Password Protection.

#### (i) File System Encryption

Android 3.0 and later provides full file-system encryption, so all user data can be

encrypted in the kernel. Android 5.0 and later supports full disk encryption. Full-disk encryption uses a single key—protected with the user's device password—to protect the whole of a device's user data partition. Upon boot, users must provide their credentials before any part of the disk is accessible.

Android 7.0 and later supports file-based encryption. File-based encryption allows different files to be encrypted with different keys that can be unlocked independently.

### (ii) Password Protection

Android can be configured to verify a user-supplied password prior to providing access to a device. In addition to preventing unauthorized use of the device, this password protects the cryptographic key for full file system encryption. Use of a password and/or password complexity rules can be required by a device administrator.

## 3.8.8 Device Security

Android 2.2 and later provide the Android Device Administration API, which provides device administration features at the system level. For example, the built-in Android Email application uses the APIs to improve Exchange support. Through the Email application, Exchange administrators can enforce password policies including alphanumeric passwords or numeric PINs across devices. Administrators can also remotely wipe (that is, restore factory defaults on) lost or stolen handsets.

### ☞ Check Your Progress 1

- 1) Mention and explain briefly the main building blocks of Android platform.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

- 2) Describe the new IPC mechanisms provided by Android.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

---

## 3.9 SUMMARY

---

Android is a powerful open-source operating system which provides a lot of great features. Its open-source and we can customize the OS based on our requirements. It supports connectivity for GSM, CDMA, WIFI, NFC, Bluetooth, etc. for telephony or data transfer. It will allow us to make or receive a calls / SMS messages and we can send or retrieve data across mobile networks. By using WIFI technology we can pair with other devices using apps. Android has multiple APIs to support location-based services such as GPS. We can perform all data storage related activities by using lightweight database SQLite. It has a wide range of media supports like AVI, MKV,

FLV, MPEG4, etc. to play or record a variety of audio/video and having a different image format like JPEG, PNG, GIF, BMP, MP3, etc. . It has extensive support for multimedia hardware control to perform playback or recording using camera and microphone. It has an integrated open-source WebKit layout based web browser to support HTML5, CSS3. It supports a multi-tasking, we can move from one task window to another and multiple applications can run simultaneously. It will give a chance to reuse the application components and the replacement of native applications. We can access the hardware components like Camera, GPS, and Accelerometer. It has support for 2D/3D Graphics.

In this unit, we have discussed features of Android OS, Architecture, process management, memory management, file system and security aspects in Android operating system.

## 3.10 SOLUTIONS/ANSWERS

---

### Check Your Progress 1:

1) The main Android platform building blocks are:

- **Device hardware:** Android runs on a wide range of hardware configurations including mobile phones, tablets, watches, automobiles, smart TVs, OTT gaming boxes, and set-top-boxes. Android is processor-agnostic, but it takes advantage of some hardware-specific security capabilities such as ARM eXecute-Never.
- **Android operating system:** The core operating system is built on top of the Linux kernel. All device resources, like camera functions, GPS data, Bluetooth functions, telephony functions, and network connections are accessed through the operating system.
- **Android Application Runtime:** Android apps are most often written in the Java programming language and run in the Android runtime (ART). However, many apps, including core Android services and apps, are native apps or include native libraries. Both ART and native apps run within the same security environment, contained within the Application Sandbox. Apps get a dedicated part of the file system in which they can write private data, including databases and raw files.

Android apps extend the core Android operating system. There are two primary sources for apps:

- **Preinstalled apps:** Android includes a set of preinstalled apps including phone, email, calendar, web browser, and contacts. These function as user apps and they provide key device capabilities that can be accessed by other apps. Preinstalled apps may be part of the open source Android platform, or they may be developed by a device manufacturer for a specific device.
- **User-installed apps:** Android provides an open development environment that supports any third-party app. Google Play offers users hundreds of thousands of apps.

Processes can communicate using any of the traditional UNIX-type mechanisms. Examples include the file-system, local sockets, or signals.

However, the Linux permissions still apply.

2) Android also provides new IPC mechanisms:

- **Binder:** A lightweight capability-based remote procedure call mechanism designed for high performance when performing in-process and cross-process calls. Binder is implemented using a custom Linux driver.
- **Services:** Services (discussed above) can provide interfaces directly accessible using binder.
- **Intents:** An Intent is a simple message object that represents an “intention” to do something. For example, if your application wants to display a web page, it expresses its “Intent” to view the URL by creating an Intent instance and handing it off to the system. The system locates some other piece of code (in this case, the Browser) that knows how to handle that Intent, and runs it. Intents can also be used to broadcast interesting events (such as a notification) system-wide.
- **ContentProviders:** A ContentProvider is a data storehouse that provides access to data on the device; the classic example is the ContentProvider that is used to access the user’s list of contacts. An application can access data that other applications have exposed via a ContentProvider, and an application can also define its own ContentProviders to expose data of its own.

While it is possible to implement IPC using other mechanisms such as network sockets or world-writable files, these are the recommended Android IPC frameworks. Android developers will be encouraged to use best practices around securing users’ data and avoiding the introduction of security vulnerabilities.

### **3.11 FURTHER READINGS**

---

1. Barry Burd, *Android Application Development All-in-One for Dummies*, Second Edition, Wiley, 2015.
2. Pradeep Kothari, *Android Application Development*, Black Book, Kindle Edition(Dreamtech Press), 2019.
3. Pratiyush Guleria, *Android for Beginners: Learn Step-by-Step*, BPB Publications, 2018.
4. [developer.android.com](http://developer.android.com)

---

## **UNIT 4 CASE STUDY - iOS**

---

### **Structure**

- 4.0 Introduction
- 4.1 Objectives
- 4.2 Features of iOS
- 4.3 Evolution of iOS
- 4.4 Architecture of iOS
- 4.5 iOS Kernel Architecture
- 4.6 Processes and Threads Management
  - 4.6.1 Threading Packages
  - 4.6.2 Threads Alternatives
- 4.7 Memory Management
  - 4.7.1 Application Memory Management
  - 4.7.2 Virtual Memory Management
  - 4.7.3 Page List in Kernel
  - 4.7.4 Page Fault
- 4.8 File System in iOS
  - 4.8.1 iOS Directories
  - 4.8.2 iCloud Container
  - 4.8.3 Identification of File Type
  - 4.8.4 Security of File System
- 4.9 Summary
- 4.10 Solutions/Answers
- 4.11 Further Readings

---

### **4.0 INTRODUCTION**

---

iPhone operating system (iOS) is a mobile operating system developed by Apple Inc. used for apple handheld devices. It is used in devices like- iPhone, iPad and iPod. It is the second most widely used mobile operating system. It supports features like direct manipulation and can respond to various types of user gestures. It is proprietary and closed source and derived from macOS. Software development kit (SDK) is provided to create applications. It includes interfaces for developing, running and testing applications. Apps can be written using system frameworks and Objective-C programming language.

Initial three versions were introduced with the name iPhone OS. From fourth version, they renamed it to iOS. With each new version, new features and apps were added. iOS 13 is latest version which was released in 2019. Its major feature is dark mode and new Map application with street view capability. It also enhanced its previous apps and features like-Siri, Health map and others. iOS 14 is about to release in 2020.

---

## 4.1 OBJECTIVES

---

After going through this unit, you should be able to:

- Understand the basic functions of iOS Operating System
- Know the history of iOS operating system
- Understand the process management in iOS and can compare with other OS
- Understand the memory management approaches in iOS
- Understand the File management in iOS
- Understand the security features in iOS

---

## 4.2 FEATURES OF IOS

---

iOS is the operating system for iPhone, iPad and other Apple mobile devices. Based on Mac OS, the operating system which runs Apple's line of Mac desktop and laptop computers, Apple iOS is designed for easy, seamless networking between Apple products. iOS support extremely good features and some of the common features are:

- Multitasking – it allows multiple tasks to be executed concurrently. This feature allows various applications to run in background like notifications, VoIP, audio, Bluetooth access, app updates and may more.
- SpringBoard – It is used for managing home screen.
- Gesture recognition
- Wifi, Bluetooth and support for VPN
- Access to Apple App store
- Support for integrated search – it allows files to be search simultaneously
- Safari browser
- Front and rear camera with videos capturing facility
- Siri – it is an intelligent personal assistant feature which can take voice queries and can give voice responses and recommendations, used for setting reminders etc.
- Game center – it is multiplayer gaming network available online.
- Compatible with iCloud – iCloud is cloud service provided by Apple.
- Push email service – Apple's email server allows mails to be delivered as they arrive.
- Accelerometer, gyroscope, and magnetometer – these are sensor interfaces used to listen various events.
- Apple pay – it is payment technology which can store credit card details to pay for services.

- Services like Maps, contacts, web pages, messages, location
- Various security features – face ID, pass code, 2 factor authentication.
- HomePod – it can identify family members by voice and can handoff calls , music etc on other devices.
- HomeKit – it is home automation controlling system.
- CarPlay – this allows interacting with iOS during drive. Also allows access to phone apps.

Apple keeps making iOS 14 and iPadOS 14 even better by adding valuable new capabilities and features. Most recently, Apple released iOS 14.4, adding a new workout to Fitness Plus for Apple Watch owners. It also added a new Unity watch face in February to celebrate Black History Month. The update also included a series of security fixes for vulnerabilities that were actively being exploited.

iOS 14.4 follows the addition of Apple ProRaw photos to the iPhone 12 Pro and 12 Pro Max. Those new features join an already impressive list of capabilities that Apple brought to its mobile devices with the release of iOS 14 in September. iOS 14.5 is currently available in beta and is shaping up to be a significant update for iPhone owners.

### **4.3 EVOLUTION OF IOS**

---

iOS was first introduced with iPhone in Jan 2007 and released in June 2007. At first introduction Steve Jobs claimed it to be running OS X and running desktop class application but during release introduced it with the name “iPhone OS”. Initially, there was no support for third party applications. In March 2008, Apple announced software development kit for iPhone. In July 2008, iOS app store opened with 500 applications which increased to 3000 in Sept 2008 and after successive growth through the years increased to 2.2 million in 2017. It is also estimated to reach 5 million by 2020. iOS has seen a lot of changes since its inception. Following are the important milestones in iOS:

- iOS was first introduced with iPhone in jan 2007 and released in june 2007.
- Apple’s iOS first SDK was released on March 6, 2008.
- The initial release was named iPhone OS which was later changed to iOS on June 7, 2010.
- iPhone OS 1 was released on March 6, 2008, and is the first version of the popular operating system. The support for iPhone OS 1 ended after two years, i.e., 2010.
- iPhone OS 2, as the name suggest, is the 2nd big release for the iOS. The release was done in conjunction with iPhone 3G, and anyone with the previous version can easily upgrade to the latest version. Also, this version introduced the App store, which becomes the hub for installing new apps. New SDK was also released for developers with support ending in 2011.
- The third big release was Apple iOS 3. It came into existence in June 2009 with support ending in late 2012. New features such as copy, paste, etc. are added to the OS.

The next version is iOS 4 and is released on June 21, 2010. Clearly, this is one of the big releases for iOS as it dropped old device support instead of supporting the latest devices with multitasking features.

- iOS 5 was released on June 6, 2011. It brought support for iPad Touch (3rd generation) and iPad (1st generation).
- iOS 6 went live on September 19, 2012, for the 4th generation Apple devices.
- iOS 7 was released for public on September 18, 2013. It supported two new phones by Apple, the Apple iPhone 5S and iPhone 5C.
- Just like the old release, iOS 8 released for public on September 9, 2014, with support for their best phone devices, the iPhone 6 and iPhone 6 Plus. They dropped support for older devices.
- iOS 9 was made public on September 16, 2015. Apple changed how they support legacy hardware and iOS 9 became the first Apple OS that supported 22 devices.
- iOS 10 was announced on June 13, 2016 at WWDC(Worldwide Developers Conference event and was released to public in September, 2016 along with iPhone 7 and iPhone 7 plus.
- iOS 11 was made public on September, 2017 along with iPhone 8 and iPhone 8 Plus. It has dropped 32-bit applications making iOS 11 as a 64-bit OS that only runs 64-bit apps.
- iOS 12 was made public on September 2018 along with iPhone XS, iPhone XS Max, iPhone XR.
- Apple announced iOS 13 and made public on September, 2019. The principal features include Dark Mode and Memoji support. The NFC(Near Field Communication) framework supports reading several types of contactless smartcards and tags.
- Apple released iOS 14 and iPadOS 14 on 9<sup>th</sup> July 2020. All devices that support iOS 13 also support iOS 14. Some new features includes widgets that can now be placed directly on the home-screen, along with the App library which automatically categorizes apps into one page, Picture in Picture, Car-key technology to unlock and start a car with NFC. It also allows the user to have incoming calls shown in banners rather than taking up the whole screen. As of date (March, 2021) 14.1 is available in beta 3 version.

#### **4.4 ARCHITECTURE OF IOS**

iOS architecture is written in Objective-C language and comprised of four layers(layered architecture). It consists of a stack of four layers – Core OS, Core services, media layer, and Cocoa Touch as shown in Figure 1. Apps installed on the system communicate with the iOS which in turn communicates with the hardware. Bottom level layers in the iOS stack are responsible for basic services while the upper layers are responsible for providing interface and graphics designing.

Apple provides system interfaces called **Frameworks** which is a package that stores dynamic shared libraries. It contains various resources like – header files, supported

apps, images. Each layer of iOS contains different set of frameworks that can be used to developers to design apps.

Case Study – iOS



Fig 1.iOS Layered Architecture

Let us learn more about the layered architecture shown in the above figure.

#### 4.4.1 Core OS

It is the lowest layer in the iOS architecture hence responsible for providing basic low level features. The frameworks present in this layer are:

- Security services framework
- Authentication framework
- Bluetooth framework
- External accessory framework
- Accelerate framework

#### 4.4.2 Core Services

It is the layer at the top of core Os layer. The various frameworks available at this layer are:

- Core data Framework - It is used for managing Model View Controller (MVC) app.
- Core Foundation framework - It gives interfaces used to manage data, services and features.
- Address book framework - Used for accessing user's contacts database.
- Cloud Kit framework - Allows movement of data between apps and iCloud.
- Core Location framework - Used to give location and heading information to apps.
- Core Motion Framework - Used to access motion based data and accelerometer based information.
- Healthkit framework - Used to handle health oriented information of user
- Homekit framework - Used to connect and control user's home devices.
- Social framework - Used to handle social media accounts of user.
- StoreKit framework - Used to provide In -App Purchase.

### 4.4.3 Media Layer

This is the third layer from the bottom. It is used for providing audio, video and graphics features.

#### Audio Frameworks

- Media Player Framework - It is used to handle user's playlist.
- AVFoundation - It is used for recording and playback of audio and video.
- OpenAL - It is standard technology for providing audio. Video Frameworks
- AVKit - This interface is used for video presentation.
- AV Foundation - It gives advanced video recording and playback capability.
- Core Media - It is used to describe low level data types and interfaces for operating media.

#### Graphics Frameworks

- Core Graphics framework - It is used for custom 2D vector and image based rendering.
- Core Animation - It is used for adding animation in apps.
- Core Images - It is used for giving controlling video and images
- UIKit Graphics - It is used for designing images and animating content of views.
- OpenGL ES and GLKit - It is used for managing 2D and 3D rendering.

### 4.4.4 Cocoa touch layer

It is the top most layer in iOS architecture. It is used for providing interactive interfaces to user. The various frameworks present in this layer are:

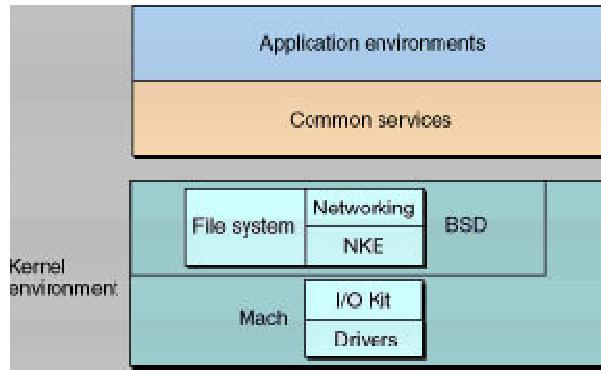
- UIKit Framework – It is used for designing graphical, event-driven apps.
- EventKit framework - It is used for providing system interfaces for viewing and altering calendar related events
- GameKit Framework - It allows users to share game related information online.
- MapKit Framework - It allows maps to be included in user interface.
- PushKitFramework- It provides support for VoIP apps.
- Twitter Framework - It allows access to Twitter service.

---

## 4.5 IOS KERNEL ARCHITECTURE

---

iOS kernel is XNU kernel of Darwin. Initially it was used only for Mac OS and later introduced as free and open source part of Darwin operating system. It is a hybrid kernel which supports both monolithic and microkernel.

**Fig 2: XNU kernel Architecture**

(Source: developer.apple.com)

The foundation layer of Darwin and OS X is composed of several architectural components, as shown in Figure 2. These components form the *kernel environment*. In OS X, however, the kernel environment contains much more than the Mach kernel itself. The OS X kernel environment includes the Mach kernel, BSD, the I/O Kit, file systems, and networking components. These are often referred to collectively as the kernel. Each of these components is described briefly in the following sections. For further details, refer to the specific component chapters or to the reference material listed in the bibliography.

Because OS X contains three basic components (Mach, BSD, and the I/O Kit), there are also frequently as many as three APIs for certain key operations. In general, the API chosen should match the part of the kernel where it is being used, which in turn is dictated by what your code is attempting to do. The remainder of this chapter describes Mach, BSD, and the I/O Kit and outlines the functionality that is provided by those components.

## Mach

Mach manages processor resources such as CPU usage and memory, handles scheduling, provides memory protection, and provides a messaging-centered infrastructure to the rest of the operating-system layers. The Mach component provides untyped interprocess communication (IPC), remote procedure calls (RPC), scheduler support for symmetric multiprocessing (SMP), support for real-time services, virtual memory support, support for pagers and modular architecture.

## BSD

Above the Mach layer, the BSD layer provides “OS personality” APIs and services. The BSD layer is based on the BSD kernel, primarily *FreeBSD*. The BSD component provides file systems, networking (except for the hardware device level), UNIX security model, syscall support, the BSD process model, including process IDs and signals, FreeBSD kernel APIs, many of the *POSIX* APIs, kernel support for *pthreads* (*POSIX* threads).

## Networking

OS X networking takes advantage of BSD’s advanced networking capabilities to provide support for modern features, such as Network Address Translation (*NAT*) and *firewalls*. The networking component provides 4.4BSD TCP/IP stack and socket APIs, support for both IP and DDP (AppleTalk transport), multihoming, routing,

*multicast* support, server tuning, packet filtering, Mac OS Classic support (through filters).

## File Systems

OS X provides support for numerous types of file systems, including *HFS*, *HFS+*, *UFS*, *NFS*, *ISO 9660*, and others. The default file-system type is *HFS+*; OS X boots (and “roots”) from *HFS+*, *UFS*, *ISO*, *NFS*, and *UDF*. Advanced features of OS X file systems include an enhanced Virtual File System (*VFS*) design. *VFS* provides for a layered architecture (file systems are *stackable*). The file system component provides *UTF-8* (Unicode) support and increased performance over previous versions of Mac OS.

## I/O Toolkit

The I/O Kit component provides true plug and play, dynamic device management, dynamic (on-demand) loading of drivers, power management for desktop systems as well as portables and multiprocessor capabilities.

# **4.6 PROCESSES AND THREADS MANAGEMENT**

Every process in an application is created using one or more threads. A thread represents single path of execution. Execution of a process starts with a single thread and can later spawn multiple threads, where each thread performs a specific task.

All threads of a single process have same access rights and also shares same address space (virtual memory). They can also communicate with each other and other processes. Every thread has its own stack of execution and scheduled for execution by kernel separately. iOS has the capability to execute multiple programs parallel but most of the execution is done in background and does not require continuous processing. The application that runs in foreground keeps the processor and other resources busy.

### **4.6.1 Threading Packages**

Applications may require creation of threads. iOS supports thread management and synchronization along with other new technologies. The technologies used to manage thread in iOS can be POSIX threads or Cocoa threads.

POSIX threads are based on C language. This must be used when application needs to be designed for multiple platforms. Here threads are managed using *pthread* library. Communication between threads can be done using ports, shared memory or conditions. For Cocoa applications, threads are created using *NSThread* class. It allows detached thread to be created. Detached thread is the one in which system automatically reclaims thread’s resources when it terminates.

### **4.6.2 Threads Alternatives**

Threads are low level doing concurrency and managing synchronization becomes difficult for application development. Also the use of thread adds processor and memory overheads. iOS hence offers alternatives to thread programming. Execution of concurrent tasks or processes on iOS is managed by asynchronous designing approach like traditional thread approach. Applications should only define specific tasks instead of creating threads as threads are low level and should leave it to system. Threads when

managed by system, gives scalability to applications. The various techniques provided by iOS to manage tasks asynchronously are:

- **Grand Central Dispatch (GCD)**

In this approach user only defines the task to be done and add it to the appropriate dispatch queue. GCD then creates threads as needed and schedules them. Since in this approach thread management and execution is done by system, it is more efficient than traditional threads approach.

- **Operation Queues**

They are similar to dispatch queue and are object-C objects. User defines the task to execute and add it to operation queue. Scheduling and execution is then done by operation queue.

**Dispatch queues:** Dispatch queue are used for execution of customized tasks. It executes the task serially or concurrently in first-in first-out order. Serial dispatcher waits for the task to complete before de-queuing, whereas concurrent dispatcher does not wait for the tasks to finish before starting new tasks.

**Operation Queues:** In operation queues the order of execution of task is dependent upon many factors. One such factor is the dependence of one task on the completion of another task. User when defining a task should also configure dependency.

The various advantages of using dispatch and operation queues in place of threads offer various advantages:

1. No need to store thread stack hence reduces memory requirements
2. User need not to configure and manage threads.
3. User need not to schedule threads.
4. It is easy to write code as compared to threads.

## 4.7 MEMORY MANAGEMENT

For effective and efficient utilization of memory, memory management is required by the iOS. Resource needs to be free up when they are not required. In iOS memory used by applications is managed by maintaining the life cycle of objects and freeing them when not required. To identify that an object is no more required; its object graph is created. The group of objects that are related to each other forms **object graph**. In this, objects can be related by the direct reference or indirect reference.

### 4.7.1 Application Memory Management

Applications memory management can be done by Object - C by two methods:

- i. Manual Retain Release – In this method user can themselves manage memory by keeping track of objects created by them. This is implemented using **Reference Count Model**. (for versions till iOS-5)
- ii. Automatic Reference Counting – In this feature, provided by compiler, system uses Reference counting model by calling methods for user at compile time. (for new versions)

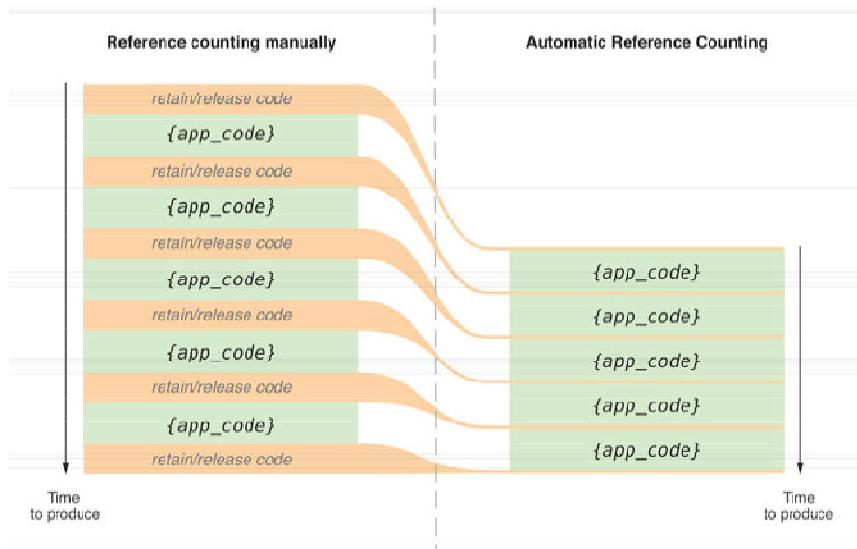


Fig3: Difference between Automatic and Manual Reference Counting

(Source: developer.apple.com)

Memory management using Reference counting is based on Ownership of object. An object can be owned by one or many owners. The object continues to exist till the time it has atleast one owner. The object is destroyed automatically at runtime if has no owner. Hence, **ownership** is the ability of causing object to be destroyed.

#### a. Reference Count Model

Memory is managed by maintaining life cycle of an object. When the objects are not needed, it should be de-allocated. When an object is created or copied, its retain count is set to 1. This retain count can increase with time if ownership interest is expressed by other objects. The retain count can also be decremented if objects relinquish their interest of ownership. The object will be maintained in memory till it's retain count is not zero. The object will be deallocated once it's retain count reaches zero.

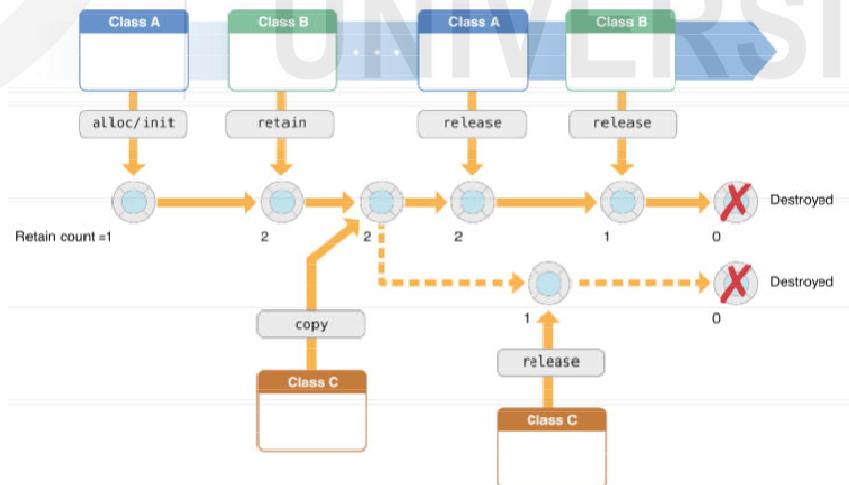


Fig 4: Reference Counting Model (Source: developer.apple.com)

#### b. Automatic Reference Counting

Automatic reference counting is a compiler provided feature that manages memory automatically of Object-C objects. Automatic reference counting is an ownership system which provides convention for management and transfer of ownership. It

the object's lifetime requirements and user need not to remember about retain and releases. It allows object to be pointed by two types of references- strong and weak. An object which is strongly referenced will be preserved and never deleted. The objects having back reference is called weak reference and can be de-allocated (destroyed). When no strong reference to objects is left, the object automatically becomes nil. Hence weak reference does not increase life time of objects. This model also imposes some restrictions to prevent memory faults or issues.

#### **4.7.2 Virtual Memory Management**

Virtual memory overcomes the limitation of physical memory. For each process a logical address space is created by dividing the memory into pages. A page table is maintained by Memory management units to map logical address to physical address. Logical address is provided to each process but if application wants to access a page with no physical address, page fault will occur. Virtual memory system is then responsible for invoking a special program called page fault handler. The page fault handler suspends the currently executing process, identifies free memory location and load the required page from the disk. The corresponding page table entry is then updated and can be used by returning control to the suspended process. This process of loading the page from disk is called Paging. There is no backing store in iOS hence pages cannot be moved out from primary memory (page write) hence, if no free space is available in primary memory than read only pages can be removed from memory which can be later loaded.

Page size in older versions of iOS is 4KB. While the newer version A9 supports 16KB pages.

Efficient use of memory is important for high performance of system. Reducing the amount of memory usage decreases memory footprint of applications and also reduces processor consumption. A fully integrated virtual memory is included with iOS which is always on. For 32-bit system it can provide up to 4 GB addressable space.

Data present on the disk (code pages) which is read only, can be removed from the primary memory and can later be loaded from the disk when needed, whereas, the iOS does not remove the writable data from memory. If the free memory reduces below a certain threshold, the running applications are asked to free up memory to make room for new applications or data voluntarily.

#### **4.7.3 Page List in Kernel**

Kernel maintains three lists of physical memory pages:

- i. Active list - this list contains pages which are recently accessed
- ii. Inactive list - this list contains pages which are not recently accessed but still present in physical memory.
- iii. Free list - this list contains pages which are not currently allocated and is available for use by processes.

The pages that are not accessed are moved from active to inactive list by kernel. Also when the free memory reduces below a threshold, the pages that are unmodified and inactive are flushed by kernel and running applications are asked to free up memory by sending them low memory notification. Applications upon receiving notification remove strong references to as many objects as possible.

#### 4.7.4 Page Fault

It is the process of loading the page into primary memory when needed by a process. This process is required as a result of page fault. The two types of fault that can occur are:

- i. Soft fault - when the desired page is not mapped to the address space of process but it is present in physical memory.
- ii. Hard fault - when the desired page is not present in the physical memory.

Whenever page fault occurs, kernel finds the VM object for accessed region and checks the resident list of VM object. If the required page is found in resident list, then soft fault is generated otherwise hard fault is generated. For handling soft fault, physical memory of page is mapped to the virtual memory and the page is marked as active by kernel. For handling hard fault, pager of VM object finds the page from disk and updates its map entry. The page after loading in primary memory is marked as active.

---

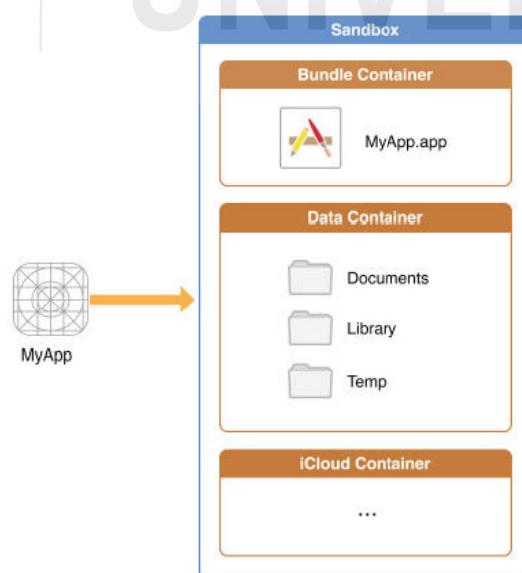
### 4.8 FILE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

---

Storage of data, files, applications, operating system files is managed by file system. The default file system used in iOS is APFS for versions after iOS 10.3. Before this HFS+ was default file system. In iOS user cannot access file system directly but they can access it using applications.

#### 4.8.1 iOS Directories

Applications can interact with file system only its sandbox directory. When the apps are installed, various container directories are created in its sandbox directory. Here every container is created for a specific role. There are two main containers –bundle container and data container. Data container is further divided into subdirectories used to organize app's data. In addition to these containers, apps can also request for additional containers example iCloud container.



**Fig5: Sandbox directory of iOSApp**

(Source: developer.apple.com)

Files outside these containers are generally restricted for use by applications. Use of public system interfaces like contacts and music is exception to this rule. System framework in this case uses helper apps to perform file operations by modifying or reading from appropriate data storage locations.

Some of the commonly used directories in iOS sandbox are –

(i) Appname.app

This directory is created during app's installation. It contains the app's executable data and resources. User should not write to this directory because app may not launch due to change in signature. However, user can get read only access to app's bundle data.

(ii) Documents/

Data generated by user is stored in this directory. Files present in this directory can be accessed by user using file sharing. This directory is also backed up by iCloud and iTune.

(iii) Documents/Inbox

It is a subdirectory within Documents which is required by apps to open files asked by outside entities. Apps can read and delete data from this directory but cannot modify and create new files. Generally email attachments related to apps are placed in this directory by mail program. This directory is also backed up by iCloud and iTune.

(iv) Library/

This subdirectory is used to store data which is not required to be exposed to user. It contains applications support, preferences and cache subdirectories for iOS apps. Custom subdirectories can also be created by user but should not be used for user data. This directory is placed in data bundle. Except cache all the contents of this directory are also backed up.

(v) tmp/

This directory is used to store temporary file i.e. files that are not needed to persist. These file must be deleted by the apps when they are not needed. When apps are not running, system may delete these files. Data in this directory is not backed up.

For proper organization of files, additional subdirectories can be created within Documents, tmp and Library by iOS apps.

#### **4.8.2 iCloud Container**

iCloud service allows user to store their documents, photos, files, etc. to be stored in cloud. Users when require can download these from their devices or share with other users. iOS allows users data be automatically backed up in cloud through this service. This feature is available in iOS 7 onwards. iCloud container is used to store files for apps that use iCloud. Files and folders can be created by apps in the same way as local file folders are created. Files and their attributes are copied to iCloud. Primary iCloud container of apps stores native files. Within each container two subdirectories – documents and data is present. Files present within document subdirectory are visible

to user as separate document which can be individually deleted. Whereas files not within document subdirectory is displayed as single entity in iCloud user interface called data.

### 4.8.3 Identification of File Type

To identify the type of file, two techniques are used in iOS-

**(i) UTIs - Uniform Type Identifier:** UTIs is a string that identifies class entities uniquely. For all types of data and service it provides consistent identifiers. Not only files but they can also represent folders or directories in a flexible manner. They are used for identifying types of pasteboard. Some of the examples are:

- Public.jpeg - it represents a public type UTI identifying jpeg image data.
- com.apple.bundle - it represents an Apple type identifying bundle directory.
- com.apple.application-bundle - it represents an Apple type identifying bundled app.

**(ii) Filename extension :** It is a character string following filename and a period (.). Each extension represents a specific type of file. For example filename with .png represents an image file. Also period is a valid character for filename, hence only the string after last period is considered as extension to identify type.

### 4.8.4 Security of File System

#### (a) Sandbox environment

Applications during installation are automatically placed in a sandbox environment in iOS. Sandbox does not allow apps to write data into locations to which user should not write to. Every sandbox is created with few containers to which user can write. One app cannot write to containers of other apps or most directories outside their sandbox. Hence security of apps and data is maintained by restricting the access.

#### (b) File Access Control

File access control in iOS is maintained by two techniques – ACL & BSD. System assigns ACL and BSD permission to files created by apps.

##### i. Access Control List

- a. Access control list is a list of control details which gives complete information of what operations can or cannot be done to a directory or file and by which users. Hence it allows different level of access writes to different user.

##### ii. BSD

- a. In BSD instead of giving access writes to individual users, it allows access to be given on the basis of class of users. There exist three classes of users – owner of data or file, group of user, all other users.

#### (c) Encryption

iOS allows files on disk to be encrypted. Files that are needed to be encrypted can be designated by apps. When a device containing encrypted data is unlocked

by user, a decryption key is generated by system to enable access to file. Whereas, when user locks the device, to prevent unauthorized access, the decryption key is destroyed by the system.

#### Check Your Progress 1

- 1) Describe the important features of iOS 14.4 version.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

- 2) Describe the features of watchOS 7.3.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

---

## 4.9 SUMMARY

---

In this unit we had studied iOS operating system. iOS is a mobile operating system developed by Apple Inc for iPhone. A description of how process management, memory management, file management, security in iOS is discussed in this unit. Along with various functions of the iOS operating system, its evolution, architecture, and other features were described.

In this course we had studied Operating Systems in general and 4 case studies.

---

## 4.10 SOLUTIONS/ANSWERS

---

#### Check Your Progress 1

1. Apple has released iOS 14.4 for compatible iPhone and iPod touch models. The new iOS update brings an updated Camera app that carries support for smaller QR codes. The latest software also introduces the option to classify Bluetooth devices in Settings and includes a few bug fixes. There are also patches for three vulnerabilities that might have been actively exploited. Apple iPad users have also received iPadOS 14.4 with a similar list of changes that is available for the iPhone users. Separately, Apple has released the HomePod software version 14.4 that brings the anticipated ultra-wideband (UWB) handoff feature specifically to the HomePod mini. The company has also rolled out watchOS 7.3 with the Apple Watch Unity watch face and tvOS 14.4 with security fixes and general stability improvements.

The iOS 14.4 and iPadOS 14.4 updates bring a list of improvements to the compatible iPhone, iPod touch, and iPad models. One of those improvements is smaller QR codes support for the Camera app. This will enhance the existing QR

code recognition functionality of the default app. The latest software updates also include the option to classify Bluetooth device type in Settings to let users identify whether headphones or the built-in speaker will be used for audio notifications.

2. In January 2021, Apple has released watchOS 7.3 that brings the Unity watch face. The update also brings Time to Walk for Apple Fitness+ subscribers and expands the ECG app for the Apple Watch Series 4 and later to Japan, Mayotte, Philippines, and Thailand. The eligible Apple Watch users in Japan, Mayotte, Philippines, Taiwan, and Thailand will also get irregular heart rhythm notifications through the latest watchOS update. Furthermore, watchOS 7.3 fixes the issue that made the Control Centre and Notification Centre unresponsive when Zoom is enabled. The watchOS 7.3 update also patches the vulnerability tracked under CVE-2021-1782 that could be exploited by a bad actor.

---

## 4.11 FURTHER READINGS

---

1. John Ray, *iOS 9 Application Development in 24 Hours*, Sams Teach Yourself, 2019.
2. Jesse Feiler, *iOS App Development for Dummies*, Wiley, 2014
3. Matt Neuburg, *iOS 13 Programming Fundamentals with Swift*, 2019.
4. Rajiv Ramnath, *Beginnnng iOS Programming for Dummies*, Wiley, 2014.
5. <https://developer.apple.com/>

THE PEOPLE'S  
UNIVERSITY